

The minitoc package^{*}

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert, et al.

July 13, 2018

^{*}This document corresponds to minitoc v62, dated 2018/07/12.

Summary

Table of contents	4
List of figures	17
List of tables	18
About this document	20
I User's Manual	22
1 The minitoc package	24
2 Frequently Asked Questions	56
3 Memento	80
4 Examples of documents	90
5 Messages	151
6 Jargon	205
7 Installation	242
8 Postface	248
II Implementation	260
9 Commented code of the minitoc package	262
10 Commented code of the mtcff package	447
11 Commented code of the mtcmess package	464
12 Patch for the memoir class	465
13 Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	467

Summary	3
III Complements	559
Bibliography	561
Changes history	597
Acknowledgments	634

Table of contents

Summary	2
Table of contents	4
List of figures	17
List of tables	18
About this document	20
 I User's Manual	 22
1 The minitoc package	24
1.1 Introduction	25
1.1.1 Important restrictions	26
1.1.2 Version	26
1.2 License	26
1.3 Using the minitoc package	27
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	27
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	27
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	29
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	33
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	34
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	35
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	39
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	39
1.4.7 Position of the titles	39
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	39
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	40
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	40
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles	40
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	41
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	41
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	42
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	42

Table of contents 5

1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	42
1.4.13	Polymorphic entries in the mini-tables	43
1.4.14	Languages for the titles	44
1.4.15	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	44
1.5	Special Features	46
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	46
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	47
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	47
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	49
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	49
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	50
1.6	The notoccite option	52
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	52
1.8	The hints option	52
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	54
1.10	Why several L ^A T _E X runs are required?	55
1.11	The mtcoff package	55
2	Frequently Asked Questions	56
2.0	Introduction	57
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	58
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	58
2.3	A “\” command in a contents line makes an error	58
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	58
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	58
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	59
2.7	Supported document classes	60
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	60
2.9	Other mini-tables	60
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	61
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	61
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	62
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	62
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	62
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	62
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	62
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	62
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	63
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices	63
2.20	Use with the appendix package	64
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	64
2.22	Use with the memoir class	65
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	66
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	66
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	67
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	70
2.27	Use with the abstract package	70
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	70
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	71

2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	72
2.31	Use with packages for captions	72
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	72
2.33	Use with the varsects package	73
2.34	Initial font settings	73
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	75
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	75
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package	75
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	75
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	75
2.40	Use with the romannum package	76
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	76
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	76
2.43	Use with the captcont package	76
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles	76
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable	77
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages	78
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package	79
2.48	Use with the flowfram package	79
3	Memento	80
4	Examples of documents	90
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	91
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	92
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file	93
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file	96
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file	100
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file	105
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file	105
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file	105
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file	110
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file	115
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	119
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file	121
4.13	The mtc-fko.tex document file	121
4.14	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	122
4.15	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	123
4.16	The mtc-gap.tex document file	125
4.17	The mtc-hi1.tex document file	125
4.18	The mtc-hi2.tex document file	125
4.19	The mtc-hia.tex document file	125
4.20	The mtc-hir.tex document file	126
4.21	The mtc-hop.tex document file	127
4.22	The mtc-liv.tex document file	128
4.23	The mtc-mem.tex document file	132
4.24	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	133
4.25	The mtc-mu.tex document file	134
4.26	The mtc-nom.tex document file	136

4.27	The <code>mtc-ocf.tex</code> document file	137
4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	138
4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	140
4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	141
4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	143
4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	144
4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	145
4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	146
4.35	The <code>mtc-tsfc.tex</code> document file	146
4.36	The <code>mtc-vti.tex</code> document file	148
5	Messages	151
5.1	Introduction	151
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	153
5.2.1	Informative messages	153
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	161
5.2.2	Warning messages	165
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	171
5.2.3	Error messages	187
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	201
5.3.1	Warning messages	201
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	204
6	Jargon	205
7	Installation	242
8	Postface	248
8.1	The origins	248
8.2	New design in 1993	249
8.3	Developments in 1994	249
8.4	No developments in 1995	249
8.5	Developments in 1996	250
8.6	Developments in 1997	250
8.7	Developments in 1998	250
8.8	Developments in 1999	250
8.9	Developments in 2000	250
8.10	Developments in 2001	251
8.11	Developments in 2002	251
8.12	Developments in 2003	251
8.13	Developments in 2004	251
8.14	Developments in 2005	252
8.15	Developments in 2006	254
8.16	Developments in 2007	254
8.17	Developments in 2008	258

II	Implementation	260
9	Commented code of the minitoc package	262
9.1	Introduction	266
9.2	Identification code	266
9.3	A file descriptor to write	266
9.4	Indentation and skip	267
9.5	Tests and flags	268
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	269
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	269
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	269
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	270
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	271
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	271
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	272
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	273
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	274
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	274
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	274
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	275
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	278
9.9.15	Check if the <code>floatrow</code> package is loaded	278
9.9.16	Check if the <code>trivfloat</code> package is loaded	278
9.9.17	Check if the <code>rotfloat</code> package is loaded	278
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?	279
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	279
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	281
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	281
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	282
9.15	Section level macros	282
9.16	Corrections for numbering	283
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	283
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	283
9.19	Chapter level macros	284
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	284
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	284

9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	285
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	286
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of L ^A T _E X	287
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	288
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	288
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	291
9.28	Fake tables of contents	294
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	294
9.30	Chapter level commands	294
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	295
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	297
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	297
9.34	The mtc@verse environment	298
9.35	The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands	298
9.35.1	The \minitoc command	298
9.35.2	The \minilof command	302
9.35.3	The \minilot command	305
9.36	Patching the \chapter command, continued	308
9.37	The \addstarred... commands	309
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	309
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	310
9.40	The \dominitoc command and its siblings	311
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	314
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	318
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	318
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	320
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	321
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	323
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	324
9.45	Part level commands	325
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	326
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	326
9.48	The ptc@verse environment	328
9.49	The part level mini-tables: \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot	328
9.49.1	The \parttoc command	329
9.49.2	The \partlof command	331
9.49.3	The \partlot command	334
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	337
9.51	Patching the \part command, continued	338
9.52	The \doparttoc command and its siblings	338
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	340
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	344
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	346
9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	349
9.54	Section-level commands	349
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	350
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	350
9.57	The stc@verse environment	351
9.58	The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands	351
9.58.1	The \secttoc command	351

9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	354
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	357
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	359
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	360
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	361
9.62	End of section-level commands	371
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	371
9.64	Use with <code>\nofiles</code>	372
9.65	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	373
9.66	The horizontal rules and their default values	374
9.67	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	375
9.67.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	375
9.67.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	377
9.67.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	381
9.67.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	382
9.67.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	384
9.67.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	388
9.67.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	391
9.67.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	393
9.67.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	395
9.67.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	397
9.68	Polymorphic entries	398
9.69	The <code>\mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	399
9.70	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	401
9.71	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	403
9.72	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	404
9.73	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	405
9.74	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	406
9.75	The “coffee breaks”	407
9.76	Initialization of counters	407
9.77	Declarations for simple options	407
9.77.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	407
9.77.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	408
9.77.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	408
9.77.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	408
9.77.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	408
9.78	The <code>insection</code> option	408
9.79	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	409
9.80	Language options	409
9.81	The <code>hints</code> option	414
9.81.1	First part: <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	414
9.81.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	415
9.81.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	415
9.81.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	415
9.81.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	415
9.81.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	416
9.81.1.6	Hint about the <code>titlesec</code> package	416
9.81.1.7	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	417
9.81.1.8	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	417
9.81.1.9	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	418

9.81.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	419
9.81.1.11	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	419
9.81.1.12	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	419
9.81.1.13	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	420
9.81.1.14	Hint about the <code>flowfram</code> package	420
9.81.1.15	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	420
9.81.1.15.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	421
9.81.1.15.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	421
9.81.1.15.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	422
9.81.1.16	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands	422
9.81.2	Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	423
9.81.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	423
9.81.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	424
9.81.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	426
9.81.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	428
9.81.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	430
9.81.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	431
9.81.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	431
9.81.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	432
9.81.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	432
9.81.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	433
9.81.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	433
9.81.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	433
9.81.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	434
9.81.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	434
9.81.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	434
9.81.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	435
9.81.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	435
9.81.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	435
9.81.2.19	Final part of the hint about the <code>float</code> package	436
9.81.2.20	Final part of the hint about the <code>floatrow</code> package	436
9.81.2.21	Final part of the hint about the <code>trivfloat</code> package	436
9.81.2.22	Final part of the hint about the <code>rotfloat</code> package	437
9.81.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	437
9.81.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used	439
9.81.2.25	Check if some hints have been written	440
9.82	Processing of options	440
9.82.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	441
9.82.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	442
9.82.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	442
9.82.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	443
9.82.5	Saving the sectionning commands	443
9.83	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	444
9.84	The <code>minitoc-fr.dtx</code> file	445
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	447
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ?	448
10.2	Identification of the package	448

10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	449
10.4	Faking simple commands	452
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	453
10.6	Faking flags	454
10.7	Disabling the internal commands	454
10.8	Disabling the font commands	455
10.9	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	456
10.10	Disabling the <code>\mtcpolym...</code> commands	456
10.11	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	456
10.12	Ignore the obsolete commands	457
10.13	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> and <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> commands	457
10.14	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	457
10.15	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	458
10.16	Disabling the mini-table features commands	458
10.17	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	459
10.18	Caution for some commands	460
10.19	Disabling commands for “coffee”	461
10.20	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	461
10.21	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth</code> internal commands	462
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	462
10.23	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	462
10.24	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixnomenclature</code> command	462
10.25	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	463
11	Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package	464
12	Patch for the memoir class	465
13	Language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	467
13.1	Overview	471
13.2	“Acadian” language: <code>acadian.mld</code>	472
13.3	“Acadien” language: <code>acadien.mld</code>	472
13.4	“Afrikaan” language: <code>afrikaan.mld</code>	473
13.5	“Afrikaans” language: <code>afrikaans.mld</code>	473
13.6	“Albanian” language: <code>albanian.mld</code>	473
13.7	“American” language: <code>american.mld</code>	474
13.8	“Arab” language: <code>arab.mld</code>	474
13.9	“Arab2” language: <code>arab2.mld</code>	475
13.10	“Arabi” language: <code>arabi.mld</code>	475
13.11	“Arabic” language: <code>arabic.mld</code>	476
13.12	“Armenian” language: <code>armenian.mld</code>	476
13.13	“Australian” language: <code>australian.mld</code>	476
13.14	“Austrian” language: <code>austrian.mld</code>	477
13.15	“Bahasa” language: <code>bahasa.mld</code>	477
13.16	“Bahasai” language: <code>bahasai.mld</code>	477
13.17	“Bahasam” language: <code>bahasam.mld</code>	478
13.18	“Bangla” language: <code>bangla.mld</code>	478
13.19	“Basque” language: <code>basque.mld</code>	479
13.20	“Bengali” language: <code>bengali.mld</code>	479
13.21	“Bicig” language: <code>bicig.mld</code>	479

13.22	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld	480
13.23	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld	480
13.24	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld	481
13.25	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld	481
13.26	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld	482
13.27	“Breton” language: breton.mld	482
13.28	“British” language: british.mld	483
13.29	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld	483
13.30	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld	483
13.31	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld	484
13.32	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld	485
13.33	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld	485
13.34	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld	485
13.35	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld	486
13.36	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld	486
13.37	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld	486
13.38	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.ml[d o]	487
13.39	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d o]	487
13.40	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld	487
13.41	“Czech” language: czech.mld	488
13.42	“Danish” language: danish.mld	488
13.43	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld	489
13.44	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld	489
13.45	“English” language: english.mld	490
13.46	“English1” language: english1.mld	490
13.47	“English2” language: english2.mld	491
13.48	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld	492
13.49	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld	492
13.50	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld	492
13.51	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld	493
13.52	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld	493
13.53	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld	494
13.54	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.ml[d o]	494
13.55	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d o]	495
13.56	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld	495
13.57	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld	495
13.58	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld	496
13.59	“Francais” language: francais.mld	496
13.60	“French” language: french.mld	497
13.61	“French1” language: french1.mld	497
13.62	“French2” language: french2.mld	498
13.63	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld	498
13.64	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld	499
13.65	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld	499
13.66	“Galician” language: galician.mld	499
13.67	“German” language: german.mld	500
13.68	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld	500
13.69	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld	501
13.70	“Greek” language: greek.mld	501

13.71 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld	502
13.72 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld	502
13.73 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld	503
13.74 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld	504
13.75 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.ml[d o]	505
13.76 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.ml[d o]	505
13.77 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d o]	506
13.78 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d o]	506
13.79 “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.ml[d o]	507
13.80 “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld.ml[d o]	507
13.81 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.ml[d o]	508
13.82 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.ml[d o]	508
13.83 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld	508
13.84 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	509
13.85 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld	510
13.86 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	510
13.87 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	510
13.88 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	511
13.89 “Indon” language: indon.mld	511
13.90 “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	511
13.91 “Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	512
13.92 “Irish” language: irish.mld	512
13.93 “Italian” language: italian.mld	513
13.94 “Italian2” language: italian2.mld	513
13.95 “Japanese” language: japanese.ml[d o]	514
13.96 “Japanese2” language: japanese2.ml[d o]	514
13.97 “Japanese3” language: japanese3.ml[d o]	515
13.98 “Japanese4” language: japanese4.ml[d o]	515
13.99 “Japanese5” language: japanese5.ml[d o]	516
13.100 “Japanese6” language: japanese6.ml[d o]	516
13.101 “Kannada” language: kannada.mld	517
13.102 “Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld	517
13.103 “Latin” language: latin.mld	517
13.104 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld	518
13.105 “Latinc” language: latinc.mld	518
13.106 “Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld	519
13.107 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld	519
13.108 “Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld	520
13.109 “Letton” language: letton.mld	520
13.110 “Letton2” language: letton2.mld	521
13.111 “Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	521
13.112 “Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld	521
13.113 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	522
13.114 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	522
13.115 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld	523
13.116 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	523
13.117 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	524
13.118 “Malay” language: malay.mld	524
13.119 “Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld	524

13.120 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	525
13.121 “Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld	525
13.122 “Malayalam-mr” language: malayalam-mr.mld	526
13.123 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.ml[d o]	526
13.124 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	527
13.125 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	527
13.126 “Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld	528
13.127 “Manju” language: manju.mld	528
13.128 “Mexican” language: mexican.mld	528
13.129 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	529
13.130 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld	529
13.131 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	530
13.132 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	531
13.133 “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	531
13.134 “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	531
13.135 “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	531
13.136 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	532
13.137 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	532
13.138 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld	533
13.139 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	533
13.140 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	534
13.141 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	534
13.142 “Occitan” language: occitan.mld	535
13.143 “Occitan2” language: occitan2.mld	535
13.144 “Polish” language: polish.mld	536
13.145 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld	536
13.146 “Polski” language: polski.mld	537
13.147 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld	537
13.148 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	537
13.149 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld	538
13.150 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	538
13.151 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	539
13.152 “Russian” language: russian.mld	539
13.153 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	540
13.154 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	541
13.155 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	541
13.156 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	542
13.157 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.ml[d o]	543
13.158 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.ml[d o]	543
13.159 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.ml[d o]	544
13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o]	544
13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o]	544
13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o]	545
13.163 “Samin” language: samin.mld	545
13.164 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	546
13.165 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	546
13.166 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	547
13.167 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	547
13.168 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	548

Table of contents 16

13.169 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	548
13.170 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	549
13.171 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	549
13.172 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	550
13.173 “Swahili” language: swahili.mld	550
13.174 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	551
13.175 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	551
13.176 “Thai” language: thai.ml[d o]	552
13.177 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	552
13.178 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	552
13.179 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	553
13.180 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	553
13.181 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	553
13.182 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	553
13.183 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	554
13.184 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	554
13.185 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	555
13.186 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	555
13.187 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	555
13.188 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	556
13.189 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	556
13.190 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld	557
13.191 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld	557
13.192 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld	558

III Complements 559

Bibliography 561

Changes history 597

Acknowledgments 634

List of figures

1.1	Float barriers	31
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	45
2.1	Three compilations for minitoc	59

List of tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	28
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	30
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	32
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	34
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	36
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	37
1.7	Available languages	38
1.8	Horizontal rules	46
1.9	Page numbers	46
1.10	Features for mini-tables	48
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	55
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	78
3.1	Package options	80
3.2	General commands	81
3.3	Part level commands	82
3.4	Chapter level commands	83
3.5	Section level commands	84
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	85
3.7	Commands for page numbers	85
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	86
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	87
3.10	Adjustment commands	87
3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	88
3.12	Checking if inside a minitable	89
3.13	Commands for polymorphic entries	89
3.14	Obsolete commands	89
5.1	Message identifiers	152
6.1	Category codes	211
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in <code>CJK</code>	212
6.3	Standard document classes	213
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	214
6.5	Various encodings	216
6.6	Most common font encodings	230
6.7	Most common font families	230

List of tables 19

6.8	Most common font series	230
6.9	Most common font shapes	231
6.10	Most common font widths	231
6.11	The five font parameters of some fonts	231
6.12	Author commands for fonts	232
6.13	Some systems derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$	233
7.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), first part	243
7.2	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), second part	244
7.3	List of the graphic files	244
7.4	List of the flag files	244
7.5	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files	247
9.1	Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions	286

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 23):
 - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 24, describes the essential commands to use the package;
 - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 56, may help you to solve some specific problems;
 - the chapter “Memento”, page 80, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
 - the chapter “Examples of documents”, page 90, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
 - the chapter “Messages”, page 151, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages (table 5.1 on page 152 will help you to find the meaning of a message);
 - the chapter “Jargon”, page 205, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
 - the chapter “Installation”, page 242, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
 - the chapter “Postface”, page 248, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 261, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 467, may be useful if you are interested by some language. This chapter contains many maps and illustrations.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 560, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, a list of acknowledgments, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [155], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables; as the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks (with the help of the `hyperref` package [390]), these mini-tables should help you to navigate within the document;
- some hyperlinks, placed in the right margin, contain a message identifier; the link points to the description of the message in the “Messages” chapter; try this one: I0001
- some flags, with hyperlinks to articles (mainly in Wikipedia) about countries or languages;
- the `calc` package [441] to make some computations with comfort;
- the `booktabs` package [165] to format the tables;
- the `doc` [327] and `docstrip` [287] packages to document the code;
- many other packages to improve the presentation of the documentation.

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The minitoc package	24	5	Messages	151
2	Frequently Asked Questions	56	6	Jargon	205
3	Memento	80	7	Installation	242
4	Examples of documents	90	8	Postface	248

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	25
1.1.1	Important restrictions	26
1.1.2	Version	26
1.2	License	26
1.3	Using the minitoc package	27
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	27
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	27
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	29
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	33
1.4	Typesetting of the mini-tables	34
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	35
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	39
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	39
1.4.7	Position of the titles	39
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	39
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	40
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	40
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	40
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	41
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	41
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	42
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	42
1.4.12	Simplified command for mini-table offsets	42
1.4.13	Polymorphic entries in the mini-tables	43
1.4.14	Languages for the titles	44
1.4.15	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	44
1.5	Special Features	46
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	46
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	47
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	47

1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	49
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	49
1.5.5	Special Entries in the TOC	50
1.6	The notoccite option	52
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	52
1.8	The hints option	52
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	54
1.10	Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?	55
1.11	The mtcff package	55

Figures

1.1	Float barriers	31
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	45

Tables

1.1	Commands for a minitoc	28
1.2	Commands for a secttoc	30
1.3	Commands for a parttoc	32
1.4	Adding an entry in the ToC for a starred part, chapter, or section	34
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	36
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	37
1.7	Available languages	38
1.8	Horizontal rules	46
1.9	Page numbers	46
1.10	Features for mini-tables	48
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	55

1.1 Introduction

The minitoc package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 248. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report` [282]) or sections (classes like `article`²) [282]. Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use

¹ The minitoc package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard `proc` class [281], and the `ltxdoc` [116] and `ltnews` [248] classes, load the standard `article` class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the `article` class.

section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions

Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectionning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.



1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #61. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 248) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 597.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L^AT_EX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don't bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and reasoned improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter`

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
```

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the next page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc<N>*, where *<N>* is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is *.mlf<N>* for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt<N>* for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending on the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc<N>*, *document.mlf<N>*, and
document.mlt<N> files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectionning commands; if you modify some sectionning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you are asking for details with a high value for minitocdepth. As an example, I once used a `\afterpage` command (afterpage package [115]) to place the long minilof of chapter 13 on page 467 (so the minilof was forced to begin at the top of the next page).

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [114], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcoffset}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dominitoc</code>	
<code>\dominilof</code>	
<code>\dominilot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\chapter{...}</code>	
<code>\minitoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

`\dosecttoc` The commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, and `\dosectlot` (for mini-tables at the section level) and `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, and `\dopartlot` (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.

`\doparttoc`

`\dopartlof` The `\mtcprepare` command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for *all* the mini-tables.

`\dopartlot`

`\mtcprepare`

`\tableofcontents`

`\listoffigures`

`\listoftables`

All the preparation commands are *ignored* if the `\nofiles` command is invoked in the preamble, to avoid to overwrite the mini-table auxiliary files.

To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must *imperatively be put before* any command analog to the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables` commands, or their `\fake...` siblings.



W0098



It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption`-like command producing an entry in the list of figures (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot` commands); else disorder in the mini-tables might result.



1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. It is often better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add a section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2 on the following page.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58).

`\usepackage` As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

W0056

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent `sectlofs` and `sectlots`. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [15] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{secttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the next page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [288] and [330, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section.

In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [302] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [285].



⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

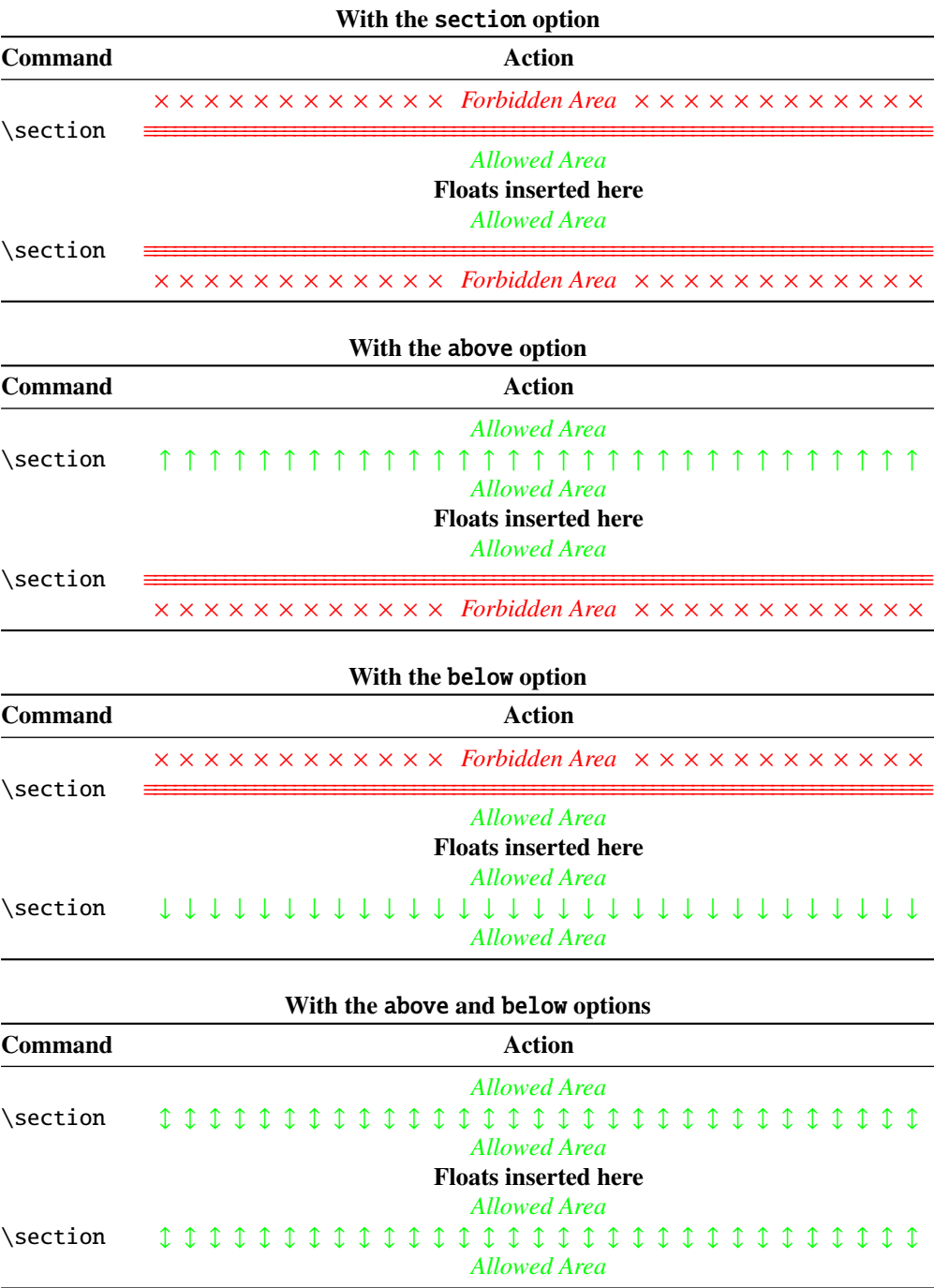


Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcoffset}{0pt}	default	
\mtcsetoffset{parttoc}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.ptc* $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute part number. The suffix is *.plf* $\langle N \rangle$ for partial lists of figures and is *.plt* $\langle N \rangle$ for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 54 and section 2.5 on page 58).

Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a minilof for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a partlof for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (secttoc, sectlof, and sectlot) and to the part-level mini-tables (parttoc, partlof, and partlot).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command



in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 29) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `document.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [130, 132] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

<code>\addcontentsline</code>	NOTE: if using <code>\chapter*</code> and a
<code>\addstarredpart</code>	
<code>\addstarredchapter</code>	<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}</code>
<code>\addstarredsection</code>	

command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:



```
\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}
```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

<code>\addcontentsline</code>	<code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}</code>
-------------------------------	--

So, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```
\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}
```

\adjustptc[n] \adjustmtc[n] \adjuststc[n]

<code>\decrementptc</code>	There are similar commands to <i>decrement</i> or <i>increment</i> by 1 these counters:
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	<code>\decrementptc</code> , <code>\decrementmtc</code> , <code>\decrementstc</code> , <code>\incrementptc</code> , <code>\incrementmtc</code> ,
<code>\decrementstc</code>	and <code>\incrementstc</code> ; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.
<code>\incrementptc</code>	But a more clever way to solve this problem would be using commands similar to:
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	
<code>\incrementstc</code>	
<code>\mtcaddpart</code>	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	
<code>\mtcaddsection</code>	



Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[<i>title</i>]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[<i>title</i>]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[<i>title</i>]</code>

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over several pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default.

`\mtcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. See tables 1.5 to 1.6 on pages 36–37⁹.

`\mlfSfont`
`\mltSfont`

Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence it is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can often be adjusted by changing some fonts.



1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtifont` Titles are typeset in the `\mtifont` (`\large\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\mtctitle`, `\mlftitle` and `\mltttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mltttitle`
`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (the suffix `.mld` means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on page 38 and section 1.4.14 on page 44) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is

`\ptcCfont`
`\ptcSfont`

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

¹⁰ This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [262]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [403]), for instance, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 71.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
*for document classes with <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., book, report).			
**for document classes with no <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., article).			
[†] default for english; changed by the language definition files or <code>\renewcommand</code> .			
All these fonts use <code>\rmfamily</code> , <code>\upshape</code> , and <code>\mdseries</code> by default.			

`\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\ptcSSfont` For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands
`\ptcSSfont` `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default,
`\ptcPfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts.
`\ptcSPfont`

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	Default setting
For the \parttoc entries:		
Chapter*	\ptcCfont*	\normalsize\bfseries*
Section	\ptcSfont	\normalsize\rmfamily* \small\bfseries**
Subsection	\ptcSSfont	(like \ptcfont)
Subsubsection	\ptcSSSfont	(like \ptcfont)
Paragraph	\ptcPfont	(like \ptcfont)
Subparagraph	\ptcSPfont	(like \ptcfont)
For the \minitoc entries:*		
Section	\mtcSfont	\small\bfseries
Subsection	\mtcSSfont	(like \mtcfont)
Subsubsection	\mtcSSSfont	(like \mtcfont)
Paragraph	\mtcPfont	(like \mtcfont)
Subparagraph	\mtcSPfont	(like \mtcfont)
For the \secttoc entries:**		
Subsection	\stcSSfont	\normalsize\bfseries
Subsubsection	\stcSSSfont	(like \stcfont)
Paragraph	\stcPfont	(like \stcfont)
Subparagraph	\stcSPfont	(like \stcfont)
*for document classes with \chapter level (e.g., book, report).		
**for document classes with no \chapter level (e.g., article).		

\plffont Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts \plffont and \pltfont, which
\pltfont are \normalsize\rmfamily by default. There are also \plfSfont and \pltSfont for
\plfSfont sub-figures and sub-tables entries.
\pltSfont

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

\ptifont Titles are typeset in the \ptifont (\LARGE\bfseries by default) font and the text strings
\ptctitle of the titles are defined by \ptctitle, \plftitle and \plttitle, which are the strings
\plftitle “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title commands
\plttitle should be redefined by \renewcommand or \mtcsetttitle for languages other than english.
\mtcsetttitle
\mtcselectlanguage The language definition files like french.mld and english.mld (and many others; for
a complete list, see table 1.7 on the next page) are available. Read also section 1.4.14
on page 44. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see
section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the
\mtcselectlanguage{language} macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

• afrikaan (afrikaans)	• farsi1 ^{c,f,g}	• japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	• portuguese (portuges)
• albanian	• farsi2 ^{c,f,g}	• japanese6 ^{c,d,g}	• romanian38
• arab (arabic) ^c	• farsi3 ^{c,j}	• kannada ^c	• romanian2
• arab2 ^{a,c}	• finnish	• latin	• romanian3
• arabi ^{c,j}	• finnish2	• latin2	• russian ^{b,c}
• armenian ^c	• french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	• latinc	• russianb ^{b,c}
• bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	• french1	• latinc2	• russianc ^{b,c}
• bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	• french2	• latvian (letton) ^e	• russian2m ^{c,e}
• bangla (bengali) ^c	• galician	• latvian2 (letton2) ^c	• russian2o ^{c,e}
• basque	• german (austrian)	• lithuanian	• russian-cca ^{c,g,h}
• bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	• germanb	• lithuanian2 ^{c,h}	• russian-cca1 ^{c,g,h}
• bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	• germanb2	• lowersorbian (lsorbian)	• russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
• bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	• greek ^c	• magyar (hungarian)	• russian-lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
• bithe (manju) ^c	• greek-mono ^{c,e}	• magyar2	• russian-lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
• brazil (brazilian)	• greek-polydemo ^{c,e}	• magyar3	• russian-lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
• breton	• greek-polykatha ^{c,e}	• malayalam-b ^c	• samin
• bulgarian ^c	• guarani ^h	• malayalam-keli ^c	• scottish
• bulgarianb ^c	• hangul1 ^{c,d,g}	• malayalam-keli2 ^c	• serbian
• buryat ^c	• hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	• malayalam-mr ^c	• serbianc ^c
• buryat2 ^c	• hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	• malayalam-omega ^{c,e,g,h}	• slovak
• catalan	• hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	• malayalam-rachana ^c	• slovene
• chinese1 ^{c,g}	• hangul8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	• malayalam-rachana2 ^c	• spanish (castillan, castillian)
• chinese2 ^{c,g}	• hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	• malayalam-rachana3 ^c	• spanish2
• croatian	• hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	• mexican	• spanish3 ^{e,f}
• czech	• hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	• mongol ^c	• spanish4
• danish	• hebrew ^{c,h}	• mongolb (mongolian) ^{c,f,h}	• swahili
• devanagari (hindi) ^c	• hebrew2 ^{c,h}	• ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	• swedish
• dutch	• hindi-modern ^c	• ngermanb2	• swedish2
• english [†] (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	• icelandic ^f	• norsk	• thai ^{c,d,f,g}
• english1	• interlingua	• norsk2	• turkish
• english2	• irish	• nynorsk	• ukrainian (ukraineb) ^{b,c}
• esperant (esperanto)	• italian	• nynorsk2	• uppersorbian (usorbian)
• estonian	• italian2	• occitan	• vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
• ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	• japanese ^{c,d,g}	• occitan2	• welsh
• ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	• japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	• polish	• xalx (khalkha) ^c
	• japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	• polish2 ^{c,e}	• xalx2 ^c
	• japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	• polski ^c	• xalx3 ^c

(^o) The languages between parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

[†] The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory.

^a The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabT_EX package [276, 277] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [60, 61], but russianb [286] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [127, 297, 298].

^e Requires *Lambda* (Λ), the version of L^AT_EX for Omega (Ω).

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The bicig language is also known as uighur.

^j The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the Arabi package [243].

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as `\stcSSfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot`.

More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default.

`\stcPfont` For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\slttitle`, which are the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english.

`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on the preceding page and explained in section 1.4.14 on page 44) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 70). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

`\doparttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof` and `\dopartlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title).

`\parttoc` The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one `parttoc` (or `partlof` or `partlot`), just use such an optional argument with the command `\parttoc` (or `\partlof` or `\partlot`).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

`\dominitoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for “empty” (“no” title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\minitoc` (or `\minilof` or `\minilot`).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, or `[e]` (or `[n]`) for empty (no title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:
`\dopartlof`
`\dopartlot`
`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,
`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,
`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,
`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positionning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`

`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,

`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,

`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`

`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positionning only for the title of the current mini-table.

`\sectlof`

`\sectlot`

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse`
`\tightmtctrue` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight)
`\tightmtcfalse` or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\parskip` But with the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may
`\parsep` sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set
`\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the follow-
ing options depends on the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option,
`parskip` option and variants).

I0043

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight`
`\ktightmtctrue` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the
`\ktightmtcfalse` default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:
`\mtcsettitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectionning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
    {\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlofs`) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Simplified command for mini-table offsets

`\mtcsetoffset` To simplify the redefinition of the offsets for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetoffset` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}
```

For instance,

```
\mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-4em}
```

will set the macro `\mtcoffset` to the given value. This command checks that you set a offset for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its offset).

NOTE: the argument of `\mtcsetoffset` is *not* verified. It must be a length value, without shrink nor stretch part. A positive offset is towards the right, a negative one towards the left.



1.4.13 Polymorphic entries in the mini-tables

The title of a sectionning command can appear in several places: a) at the beginning of the section, of the chapter or of the part; b) in the page header; c) in the main TOC; d) in the minitoc of the chapter (for a section title or lower); e) in the parttoc of the part (for a chapter title or lower). A sectionning command has two arguments: an optionnal one, *OA*, and a mandatory one, *MA*, like in:

```
\section[OA]{MA}
```

OA is taken as *MA* if omitted. Normally, *OA* is used in the TOC and in the minitables, as in the page headers when necessary. *MA* is used as title for the sectionning unit and is the default for *OA*. But, some times, you may need to have a different version (a variant) for a sectionning unit title in a minitable. So, it is now possible to define such variants by detecting if that title is used inside some minitable: the following flags are defined (when meaningful):

Level	Flag:	for tocs,	for lofs,	for lots.
Part		<code>\ifinparttoc</code>	<code>\ifinpartlof</code>	<code>\ifinpartlot</code>
Chapter		<code>\ifinminitoc</code>	<code>\ifinminilof</code>	<code>\ifinminilot</code>
Section		<code>\ifinsecttoc</code>	<code>\ifinsectlof</code>	<code>\ifinsectlot</code>

But these flags are used to build three new commands, to be called from inside the optionnal argument (*OA*) of a sectionning command or that of a caption:

From <i>OA</i> of:	Command	Arg. 1	Arg. 2	Arg. 3	Arg. 4
sect. command	<code>\mtcpolymtoc</code>	<code>{→parttoc}</code>	<code>{→minitoc}</code>	<code>{→secttoc}</code>	<code>{→main toc}</code>
figure caption	<code>\mtcpolymlof</code>	<code>{→partlof}</code>	<code>{→minilof}</code>	<code>{→sectlof}</code>	<code>{→main lof}</code>
table caption	<code>\mtcpolymlot</code>	<code>{→partlot}</code>	<code>{→minilot}</code>	<code>{→sectlot}</code>	<code>{→main lot}</code>

Such entries are “polymorphic”. See the example `mtc-vti.tex`, section 4.36 on page 148, for a short demonstration.

1.4.14 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [60, 61] of Johannes L. BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [276, 277], `Arabi` [243], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [142], `BangTeX` (bangla, bengali) [362], `CervanTeX` (spanish) [47], `Devanāgarī` for `TeX` [364], `ethiop` [44], `guarani` [45], `malayalam` [4] and `omal` [5], `MonTeX` (mongol) [137, 140], `CJK` (chinese, korean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [127, 297, 298], `polksi` [357, 463] (polish), `SLaTeX` [318] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` [162] (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam` [299] — `latvian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* (Λ), i.e., the Omega (Ω) version of `LATeX`, (see [272]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome¹¹. See table 1.7 on page 38.

But for some oriental languages¹², the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹³, not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of `minitoc` package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.



1.4.15 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 on the next page (this figure is adapted from [469]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but `LATeX` commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

- `\@dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- `\@pnumwidth`, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a `LATeX` command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- `\@tocrmarg`, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than `\@pnumwidth`, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the

¹¹I am searching for the titles in corsican, in particular.

¹²Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹³The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

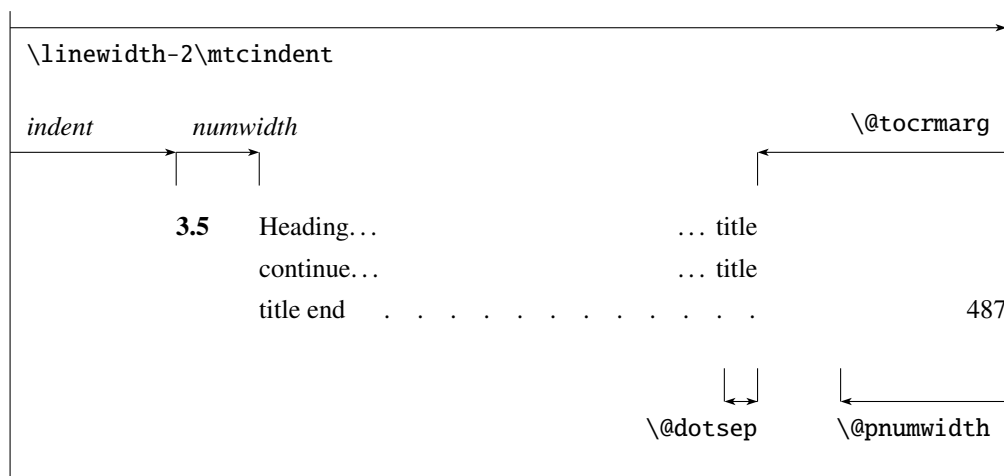


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

“... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

`\mtcsetformat` As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on the specified kinds of mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the `\mtcsetformat` command:

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for `\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long (it prevents most hyphenations).

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
	rules in		no rules in	book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹⁴:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹⁴:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.15 on page 44.

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a `parttoc` (or a `partlof` or a `partlot`), in a `book`- or `report`-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the following page, whose meaning is often obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

¹⁴ `O` and `o` are the letter O, `0` is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\openparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\closeparttoc	\empty
parttoc	\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlof	\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\openpartlof	\empty
partlof	\closepartlof	\empty
partlof	\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlot	\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\openpartlot	\empty
partlot	\closepartlot	\empty
partlot	\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
minitoc	\beforeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\afterminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\openminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\closeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\thispageminitocstyle	\empty
minilof	\beforeminilof	\empty
minilof	\afterminilof	\empty
minilof	\openminilof	\empty
minilof	\closeminilof	\empty
minilof	\thispageminilofstyle	\empty
minilot	\beforeminilot	\empty
minilot	\afterminilot	\empty
minilot	\openminilot	\empty
minilot	\closeminilot	\empty
minilot	\thispageminilotstyle	\empty
secttoc	\beforesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\aftersecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\opensecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\closesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty
sectlof	\beforesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\aftersectlof	\empty
sectlof	\opensectlof	\empty
sectlof	\closesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty
sectlot	\beforesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\aftersectlot	\empty
sectlot	\opensectlot	\empty
sectlot	\closesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty
\mtcsetfeature{ <i>mini-table</i> }{before after open close pagestyle}{ <i>command</i> }		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: `parttoc...` `sectlot`. *keyword* is one of the followings: `before`, `after`, `open`, `close` or `pagestyle`. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁵

`\mtcsetfeature` The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply
`\thispagestyle` a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}` command, because in document classes defining the
`\pagestyle` `\chapter` command (like `book` or `report`), the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages.
`\cleardoublepage` If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour is a consequence from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short theoretical example¹⁶:



```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{pagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

¹⁵This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [29], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the minitoc package.

¹⁶This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

`\firstpartis` **Before version #23 (1994/11/08)** To make the minitoc package work with such documents,
`\addtocounter` you must insert the command:
`\dominitoc` `\firstchapteris{⟨N⟩}`
`\firstchapteris` before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands. `⟨N⟩` is the number of the first chapter.
`\firstsectionis` This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a
 `\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}`
 command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis`
 commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08) These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been
solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they
just produce harmless warnings.

W0003

W0004

W0005

1.5.5 Special Entries in the TOC

If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents
itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the
tocbibind package [472] by Peter R. WILSON (package available from the CTAN archives).



I0046

`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the
`.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl` KOMA-
Script classes [343, 344, 399] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`,
`bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxtotoc`). The solutions are the same ones.

I0043

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the involved
`\tableofcontents` commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.
`\listoffigures`
`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography`
`\bibliography` command.

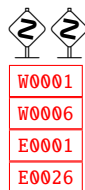
`\printglossary` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just
`\addcontentsline` after the `\printglossary` command:

`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcfixglossary` `\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
 \mtcaddchapter`

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



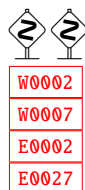
`\printindex` For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printindex` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixindex
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



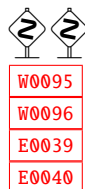
`\printnomenclature` For the nomenclature¹⁷, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printnomenclature` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixnomenclature
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the nomenclature entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. You *must* check the result and, if necessary, adjust the optional argument.



¹⁷If you are using the `nomencl` package [456] or the `nomentbl` package [161] (`nomentbl` calls `nomenc`).

Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index or nomenclature) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc<N>` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 96), `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 100), and `mtc-nom.tex` (see section 4.26 on page 136) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.



1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [14] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run `BIbTEX` using the `unsorted` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`¹⁸. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the `LATEX` run. Under Unix or Linux, you can try:


```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

1.8 The hints option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:



¹⁸This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

<code>\part</code>	• Alteration of some of the following commands ¹⁹ : <code>\part</code> , <code>\@part</code> , <code>\@spart</code> , <code>\chapter</code> , <code>\@chapter</code> , <code>\@schapter</code> , <code>\section</code> , <code>\@sect</code> , and <code>\@ssect</code> . Note that the <code>hyperref</code> (see section 2.17 on page 62) package alters these commands at <code>\begin{document}</code> , hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the <code>hyperref</code> must be loaded <i>before</i> <code>minitoc</code> .	
<code>\@part</code>		
<code>\spart</code>		
<code>\@spart</code>		
<code>\chapter</code>		
<code>\@chapter</code>		
<code>\schapter</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: <code>amsbook</code> (class), <code>memoir</code> (class), <code>appendix</code> , <code>placeins</code> (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), <code>scrbook</code> (class), <code>scrreprt</code> (class), <code>scrartcl</code> (class), <code>tocbibind</code> , and <code>tocloft</code> .	
<code>\@schapter</code>		
<code>\section</code>		
<code>\@sect</code>		
<code>\@ssect</code>	• Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are <i>incompatible</i> with the <code>minitoc</code> package: <code>amsart</code> (class), <code>amspdoc</code> (class), <code>alphanum</code> , <code>flowfram</code> ²⁰ , <code>jura</code> (class), <code>titlesec</code> , and <code>titletoc</code> ²¹ .	W0026 W0027 W0025 W0097 W0029 W0040 W0099
<code>\parttoc</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> ; or the reverse.	
<code>\doparttoc</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>		
<code>\dosectlot</code>	• Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> .	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>		
<code>\listoftables</code>	• Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option).	W0056
<code>\sectlof</code>		
<code>\sectlot</code>	• If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the <code>shorttext</code> package option, see section 1.9 on the following page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the <code>hints</code> package option displays a warning.	W0053 W0054 W0055
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	• If the <code>abstract</code> package [470] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code> , else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment.	I0040
<code>\mtcaddsection</code>		
	• If the <code>sectsty</code> package [319] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.	W0037
	• If the <code>varsects</code> package [437] (by Daniel TAUPIN ⁺) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0038
	• If the <code>fncychap</code> package [301] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0086
	• If the <code>hangcaption</code> package [250] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0092
	• If the <code>quotchap</code> package [442] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package.	W0087

¹⁹The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of \LaTeX , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

²⁰This package has its own system for minitocs.

²¹The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard \LaTeX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally *incompatible*, and it is very sad.

- If the romannum package [480] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0088
 - If the sfheaders package [304] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0089
 - If the alnumsec package [274] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0090
 - If the captcont package [131] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0091
 - If one of the caption [421, 422, 424], caption2²² [423], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [474] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [228] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036
 - If one of the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], or rotfloat [420] packages is used, you must remember that *you can not use* the minitoc facilities for preparing mini-tables of floats of the new defined types. I0053
 - If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 29). I0006
- `\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global `\firstsectionis` hint as reminder. W0003
W0004
W0005
- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS

Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc<N>` extensions will become `.M<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf<N>` and `.mlt<N>` become `.F<N>` and `.T<N>`. The `.ptc<N>` extensions become `.P<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf<N>` and `.plt<N>` become `.G<N>` and `.U<N>`. The `.stc<N>` extensions become `.S<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf<N>` and `.slt<N>` become `.H<N>` and `.V<N>`. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11 on the following page. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 52) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 58.

²²This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.



W0053

W0054

W0055

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$.V $\langle N \rangle$

1.10 Why several \LaTeX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first \LaTeX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third \LaTeX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 59).

1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the *document.log* file. At least two \LaTeX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the *.aux*, *.toc*, *.lof*, and *.lot* files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	57
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	58
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	58
2.3	A “\\” command in a contents line makes an error	58
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	58
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	58
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	59
2.7	Supported document classes	60
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	60
2.9	Other mini-tables	60
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	61
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	61
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	62
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	62
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	62
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	62
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	62
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	62
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	63
2.19	A local TOC for the set of appendices	63
2.20	Use with the appendix package	64
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	64
2.22	Use with the memoir class	65
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	66
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	66
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	67
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	70
2.27	Use with the abstract package	70
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	70
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	71
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	72
2.31	Use with packages for captions	72
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	72

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	73
2.34	Initial font settings	73
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	75
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanumeric</code> package	75
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	75
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	75
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	75
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	76
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	76
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	76
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	76
2.44	Vertical spaces (gaps) for <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	76
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	77
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	78
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	79
2.48	Use with the <code>flowfram</code> package	79

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	59
-----	---	----

Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	78
-----	---	----

2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 61, please upgrade to version #61. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 52), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example [384, 432]¹ (or “MCE”) reproducing the problem; this example should use the `hints` option).

¹ See also: <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=minxampl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [279]. The `needspace` package [468] may also be useful.

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.15 on page 44. There are yet some examples in chapter 4 on page 90, for some layouts, like mini-tables on two or three columns.

2.3 A “\” command in a contents line makes an error

`\\` Use `\protect\linebreak`. The `\\` command should be used only in tabular material
`\protect` (tabular environment and similar, or in the `tabbing` environment) and in math arrays and
`\linebreak` equations, or in the quote-like environments.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

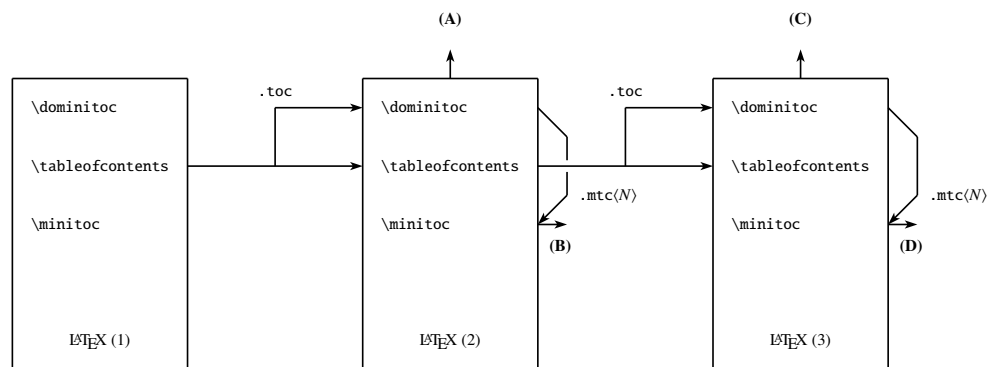
If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute L^AT_EX at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1 on the next page². Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute L^AT_EX at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

² I used the `pict2e` package [178], by Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Rolf NIEPRASCHK and Josef TKADLEC, to prepare this figure.



- (A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.
 (B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.
 (C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.
 (D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

W0053
W0054
W0055

2.6 Playing with the chapter number

`\setcounter` `\chapter` Do not cheat with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like:

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the minitoc package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries in the TOC”, section 1.5.5 on page 50.

Since version #23 (1994/11/08), the numbering of chapters and that of minitocs are independent, so that problem just vanished.

The same remarks apply to the part and section counters.



2.7 Supported document classes

The minitoc package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article” [282]. There are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter” [283], which have not the classical sectionning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectionning commands with other names are not supported³. See also section 2.24 on page 66.

W0017

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make minitoc to work. They got a message like:

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have minilof, minilot and minibbl (mini-bibliographies per part, chapter or section). First, “minibbl” is another problem, strongly related to the Bib_TE_X’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [19], `bibunits` [210], `multibib` [211], `bibtopic` [25], and `splitbib` [314] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic minilofs and minilots. Minibbbls are not the aim of this package⁴.

³ This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectionning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The minitoc package relies on the names of the standard sectionning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

⁴ See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=multibib>

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all minitocs, one for all minilofs, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 29) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the \LaTeX run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with only one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 52.

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the \LaTeX run. If you run \LaTeX via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 55 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [34] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots` for the part level in `book` | `report`-like and `article`-like documents, `secttocs`, `sectlofs` and `sectlots` for the section level in `article`-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an almost unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with L^AT_EX 2.09

`\protect` The more recent version of L^AT_EX 2_ε adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,
`\contentsline` `.lof` and `.lof` files. The version #17 of `minitoc` attempts to be compatible with L^AT_EX 2_ε and L^AT_EX 2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with L^AT_EX 2.09. Versions #18 and later are L^AT_EX 2_ε specific, and no more compatible with L^AT_EX 2.09, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.15 on page 44.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc

Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [390], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, using the work of Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS. Hence the *minitoc-hyper* package [454] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the L^AT_EX run, then re-L^AT_EX the document. There will



be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from minitoc #30 to minitoc #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with minitoc #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* minitoc. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `minitoc-fr.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with minitoc.

2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, `.lot` files of the document, else the first \LaTeX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section [2.17 on the preceding page](#).

2.19 A local TOC for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section [2.25 on page 67](#).

2.20 Use with the `appendix` package

`\addcontentsline` If you use the `appendix` package [471] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with `minitocs` in the `appendices` environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening `\begin{appendices}` hides a `\addcontentsline` command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of `minitocs` or `secttocs`. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a `\adjustmtc` or `\adjuststc` command (depending on the level of the appendices, chapter or section) after *each* `\begin{appendices}` command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble *after* the loading of the `appendix` package:

I0042

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section⁵.

A rather more elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

See also the `mtc-amm.tex` example file (section 4.6 on page 105), which uses the `memoir` class [479, 481, 482], which includes itself the `appendix` package functionality (these packages and this class are from the same author).

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [469].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction⁶, which fortunately

I0047

⁵ In fact, the commands `\partend`, `\chapterend` and `\sectend` should not be used directly by the user, in normal circumstances.

⁶ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

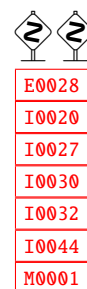
To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the `minitoc` section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The `memoir` class [479, 481, 482] offers basically the functionalities of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. Wilson), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on the preceding page, 1.5.5 on page 50, and 2.21 on the preceding page respectively). If your version of the `memoir` class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the `memoir` class *could be no more compatible* with the `minitoc` package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the `memoir` class is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the `memoir` class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsetttitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package).



If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the `memoir/tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsettitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsettitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\sltttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter` Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are *incompatible* with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

W0026
W0027
I0041

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

`mtchideinmaintoc` It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 63. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```
1 \(*mtc-apx)
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4   [2007/03/22]%
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
9 \begin{document}
10 \doparttoc \dominitoc % prepare the mini-tables
11 \tableofcontents
12 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
13 \chapter{First}
14 \minitoc
15 First chapter
16 \section{First section} \lipsum[1]
17 \section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
18 \chapter{Second}
19 \minitoc
20 Second
21 \section{First section of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
22 \section{Second section of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
23 \appendix % begins the appendices
24 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
25 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
26 \mtcsettitle{parttoc}{List of Appendices} % changes the parttoc title
27 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
28 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the appendices in the main TOC,
29 % % but chapter-level entries would be still visible in the main TOC
30 % % if you use 0 in place of -1 as optional argument.
31 \chapter{First appendix}
32 \minitoc
33 First appendix
34 \section{First section} \lipsum[5]
```

```

35 \section{Second section} \lipsum[6]
36 \chapter{Second appendix}
37 \minitoc
38 Second appendix
39 \section{First section of second appendix} \lipsum[7]
40 \section{Second section of second appendix} \lipsum[8]
41 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
42 \end{document}
43 </mtc-apx>

```

`mtchideinmainlof` Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.

Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):



<pre> 44 <*mtc-hi1> 45 \documentclass{report} 46 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}% 47 [2007/01/04]% 48 \usepackage% 49 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 50 \begin{document} 51 \dominilof \listoffigures 52 \dominilot \listoftables 53 \chapter{First} 54 \minilof \minilot 55 \begin{figure} 56 \caption{AAAA1} </pre>	<pre> 57 \end{figure} 58 \begin{figure} 59 \caption{AAAA2} 60 \end{figure} 61 \begin{table} 62 \caption{TAAAA1} 63 \end{table} 64 \begin{table} 65 \caption{TAAAA2} 66 \end{table} 67 \chapter{Second} 68 \minilof \minilot 69 %%----- </pre>
--	---

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 70 \begin{mtchideinmainlof} 71 \begin{mtchideinmainlot} 72 \begin{figure} 73 \caption{BBBB1} 74 \end{figure} 75 \begin{figure} 76 \caption{BBBB2} 77 \end{figure} </pre>	<pre> 78 \begin{table} 79 \caption{TBBBB1} 80 \end{table} 81 \begin{table} 82 \caption{TBBBB2} 83 \end{table} 84 \chapter{Third} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

<pre> 85 \end{mtchideinmainlot} 86 \end{mtchideinmainlof} 87 %%----- </pre>	<pre> 88 \minilof \minilot 89 \begin{figure} 90 \caption{CCCC1} </pre>
---	--

<pre> 91 \end{figure} 92 \begin{figure} 93 \caption{CCCC2} 94 \end{figure} 95 \begin{table} 96 \caption{TCCCC1} </pre>	<pre> 97 \end{table} 98 \begin{table} 99 \caption{TCCCC2} 100 \end{table} 101 \end{document} 102 \end{mtc-hi} </pre>
--	--

`\mtchideinmainlof` But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):

<pre> 103 *mtc-hi2 104 \documentclass{report} 105 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}% 106 [2007/01/04] 107 \usepackage% 108 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc} 109 \begin{document} 110 \dominilof \listoffigures 111 \dominilot \listoftables 112 \chapter{First} 113 \minilof \minilot 114 \begin{figure} 115 \caption{AAAA1} </pre>	<pre> 116 \end{figure} 117 \begin{figure} 118 \caption{AAAA2} 119 \end{figure} 120 \begin{table} 121 \caption{TAAAA1} 122 \end{table} 123 \begin{table} 124 \caption{TAAAA2} 125 \end{table} 126 \chapter{Second} 127 \minilof \minilot </pre>
---	--

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.

<pre> 128 \begin{figure} 129 \mtchideinmainlof % <-- 130 \caption{BBBB1} 131 \end{figure} 132 \begin{figure} 133 \caption{BBBB2} </pre>	<pre> 134 \endmtchideinmainlof % <-- 135 \end{figure} 136 \begin{table} 137 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 138 \caption{TBBBB1} 139 \end{table} </pre>
--	---

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.

<pre> 140 \begin{table} 141 \caption{TBBBB2} 142 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 143 \end{table} 144 \chapter{Third} 145 \minilof \minilot </pre>	<pre> 146 \begin{figure} 147 \caption{CCCC1} 148 \end{figure} 149 \begin{figure} 150 \caption{CCCC2} 151 \end{figure} </pre>
---	--



<pre> 152 \begin{table} 153 \caption{TCCCC1} 154 \end{table} 155 \begin{table} </pre>	<pre> 156 \caption{TCCCC2} 157 \end{table} 158 \end{document} 159 </mtc-hi2> </pre>
---	---

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is much more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own .mld file

<pre> \mtcsettitle \mtcselectlanguage </pre>	<p>First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via <code>\renewcommand</code> or better via <code>\mtcsettitle</code>. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the <i>language</i>[.mld-.mlo] pairs of language definition files.</p>
--	---

2.27 Use with the abstract package

<pre> \mtcaddchapter \mtcaddsection \chapter abstract </pre>	<p>If the <code>abstract</code> package [470] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code>, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the <code>hints</code> option and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px; color: red;">I0040</div>
--	---	---

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

<p>If the <code>sectsty</code> package [319] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded <i>before</i> the <code>minitoc</code> package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the <code>hints</code> option detects this problem.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px; color: red;">W0037</div>
--	---

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

<code>\l@part</code>	The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like <code>\l@part</code> ,
<code>\l@chapter</code>	<code>\l@chapter</code> , <code>\l@section</code> , etc.
<code>\l@section</code>	
<code>\l@subsection</code>	The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which
<code>\l@subsubsection</code>	are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the <code>report</code> and
<code>\l@paragraph</code>	<code>book</code> classes) and lower levels, these commands are (<code>book</code> class, <code>book.cls</code>) by default:
<code>\l@subparagraph</code>	
<code>\renewcommand</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}</code>
<code>\@dottedtocline</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}</code>
<code>\mtcsetfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<code>\renewcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}</code>
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of

`\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes [282], the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends on the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 37), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.



There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section` ... `\l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a @ in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [469] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see *also* section 2.21 on page 64.



- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 41) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 37), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is *necessary* to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages. 
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectioning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence 

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [421, 422, 424], `caption2`⁷ [423], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [474] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [228] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0033
W0034
W0035
W0036

2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [390] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [479, 481, 482], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

⁷ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the varsects package [437] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0038

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the parttoc as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁸:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the minitoc package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the parttoc, partlofs, and partlots. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

In the initialization of the minitoc package, we have a sequence of commands:



```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a parttoc (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the parttoc, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

⁸ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

Note that if you say:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

after loading the minitoc package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a minitoc font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 50. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

I0043

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are *incompatible* with `minitoc`.



W0029

W0025

2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [60, 61], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
  \addto\captionslanguage1{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for `babel` and *language2* the language name for `minitoc`; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, for instance).

2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the `fncychap` package [301] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0086

2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the `quotchap` package [442] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0087

2.40 Use with the `romannum` package

If the `romannum` package [480] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0088

2.41 Use with the `sfheaders` package

If the `sfheaders` package [304] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0089

2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [274] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0090

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [131] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0091

2.44 Vertical spaces (gaps) for `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles

These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the `book` and `report` document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:



```
160 \*mtc-gap
161 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
162 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}[2007/01/04]%
```

We use the `vruler` package (by Zhuhan JIANG) to display a vertical ruler showing the position of the titles:

```
163 \usepackage{txfonts,vruler} % vertical graduation to note positions (Zhuhan Jiang)
164 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
165 \begin{document}
166 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][] % with vruler package
167 \doparttoc \faketableofcontents
168 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
169 \parttoc
170 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
171 \part{Second part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We set large gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.
`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
172 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
173 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
174 \parttoc
175 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
176 \part{Third part}
```

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We set small gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.
`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
177 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
178 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
179 \parttoc
180 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
181 \end{document}
182 </mtc-gap>
```

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend on the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1 on the next page.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A} \section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a `minitoc` without page numbers as I wanted.

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in minitocs). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [469, pages 45-56]; XXX is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
183 <*mtc-tlo>
184 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
185 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}[2007/06/13]%
```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```
186 \usepackage{tocloft}
187 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
188 \begin{document}
```

`\mtcsetfont` We define the global font for the `minitoc` entries:

```
189 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
190 \frontmatter
191 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
```

`\cftpagenumbersoff` For the section entries in the `minitocs`, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by using commands from the `tocloft` package:

`\cftsecfont`

```
192 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
193 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
194 \mainmatter
195 \chapter{First Chapter} \minitoc
196 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
197 \chapter{Second Chapter} \minitoc
198 \section{Section A} \section{Section B}
199 \end{document}
200 </mtc-tlo>
```

2.47 Use with the `hangcaption` package

If the `hangcaption` package [250] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

W0092

2.48 Use with the `flowfram` package

The `flowfram` package [433, 434], which has its own system of `minitocs`, is hence *incompatible* with `minitoc`.



W0097

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables

3.1	Package options	80	3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	87
3.2	General commands	81	3.10	Adjustment commands	87
3.3	Part level commands	82	3.11	Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc	88
3.4	Chapter level commands	83	3.12	Checking if inside a minitable	89
3.5	Section level commands	84	3.13	Commands for polymorphic entries	89
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	85	3.14	Obsolete commands	89
3.7	Commands for page numbers	85			
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	86			

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the <i>document.log</i> file. Useful to detect some problems. Option nohints is inadvisable.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 38. Default: english.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <code>language.mld</code> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{offset}</code>	Changes the offset for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Part level commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>parttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\plfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\pltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>partlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{parttoc partlof partlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Chapter level commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minitocs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mlfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilofs. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for minilots. Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{minitoc minilof minilot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mlttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Section level commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>secttocs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\slfoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>sectlofs</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\sltoffset</code>	Horizontal offset for <code>sectlots</code> . Command. Default: 0pt.
<code>\mtcsetoffset{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{offset}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: [x] is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of *x* are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\openparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\openpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlof file.
<code>\openpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a partlot file.
<code>\closeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a parttoc file.
<code>\closepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlof file.
<code>\closepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a partlot file.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\openminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\openminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilof file.
<code>\openminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a minilot file.
<code>\closeminitoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minitoc file.
<code>\closeminilof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilof file.
<code>\closeminilot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a minilot file.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\opensecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\opensectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\opensectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\closesecttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a secttoc file.
<code>\closesectlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlof file.
<code>\closesectlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after inserting a sectlot file.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after open close pagestyle}{commands}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominiloof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\miniloof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument p , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument p has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by n .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by n .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by n .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the index in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixnomenclature[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for the nomenclature in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands* to hide entries in the main list of tables.

*: recommended form.

Table 3.11: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	53	[470]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	54	[274]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	75	[103]
* C	amsart	\mathcal{AMS}	66	[8]
C	amsbook	\mathcal{AMS}	66	[8]
* C	amsproc	\mathcal{AMS}	66	[8]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	64	[471]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	54	[131]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	54	[421, 422, 424]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	54	[423]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	54	[474]
P	float	Anselm LINGNAU	54	[302]
P	floatrow	Olga G. LAPKO	54	[285]
* P	flowfram	Nicola L. C. TALBOT	79	[433, 434]
P	fncychap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	75	[301]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	79	[250]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	62	[348, 352–354, 387, 390, 391]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	75	[103]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	54	[228]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	65	[479, 481, 482]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	52	[14]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	29	[15]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	53	[442]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	54	[480]
P	rotfloat	Sebastian RAHTZ and Leonor BARROCA	54	[420]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and scrreprt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	75	[343, 344, 399]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	70	[319]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	76	[304]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	33	[132]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	33	[130]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	53	[46]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	53	[46]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	50	[472]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	64, 78	[469]
P	trivfloat	Joseph A. WRIGHT	54	[484]
P	varsects	Daniel TAUPIN [†]	53	[437]

*: *Incompatible* with minitoc. C: Class. P: Package.

Any class not defining the main standard sectionning commands is *incompatible* with minitoc.

Table 3.12: Checking if inside a minitable

Level	Flag	for tocs,	for lofs,	for lots.
Part		<code>\ifinparttoc</code>	<code>\ifinpartlof</code>	<code>\ifinpartlot</code>
Chapter		<code>\ifinminitoc</code>	<code>\ifinminilof</code>	<code>\ifinminilot</code>
Section		<code>\ifinsecttoc</code>	<code>\ifinsectlof</code>	<code>\ifinsectlot</code>

Table 3.13: Commands for polymorphic entries

From OA of:	Command	Arg. 1	Arg. 2	Arg. 3	Arg. 4
sect. command	<code>\mtcpolymtoc</code>	<code>{→parttoc}</code>	<code>{→minitoc}</code>	<code>{→secttoc}</code>	<code>{→main toc}</code>
figure caption	<code>\mtcpolymlof</code>	<code>{→partlof}</code>	<code>{→minilof}</code>	<code>{→sectlof}</code>	<code>{→main lof}</code>
table caption	<code>\mtcpolymlot</code>	<code>{→partlot}</code>	<code>{→minilot}</code>	<code>{→sectlot}</code>	<code>{→main lot}</code>

Table 3.14: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	<i>N</i> is the number of the first section.
These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).	

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

4.1	The <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> document file	91	4.19	The <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> document file	125
4.2	The <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> document file	92	4.20	The <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> document file	126
4.3	The <code>mtc-3co.tex</code> document file	93	4.21	The <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> document file	127
4.4	The <code>mtc-add.tex</code> document file	96	4.22	The <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> document file	128
4.5	The <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> document file	100	4.23	The <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> document file	132
4.6	The <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> document file	105	4.24	The <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> document file	133
4.7	The <code>mtc-apx.tex</code> document file	105	4.25	The <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> document file	134
4.8	The <code>mtc-art.tex</code> document file	105	4.26	The <code>mtc-nom.tex</code> document file	136
4.9	The <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> document file	110	4.27	The <code>mtc-ocf.tex</code> document file	137
4.10	The <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> document file	115	4.28	The <code>mtc-ofs.tex</code> document file	138
4.11	The <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> document file	119	4.29	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	140
4.12	The <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> document file	121	4.30	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	141
4.13	The <code>mtc-fko.tex</code> document file	121	4.31	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	143
4.14	The <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> document file	122	4.32	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	144
4.15	The <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> document file	123	4.33	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	145
4.16	The <code>mtc-gap.tex</code> document file	125	4.34	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	146
4.17	The <code>mtc-hi1.tex</code> document file	125	4.35	The <code>mtc-tsf.tex</code> document file	146
4.18	The <code>mtc-hi2.tex</code> document file	125	4.36	The <code>mtc-vti.tex</code> document file	148

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of some specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 67, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 68, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 69, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 76, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 79,

Note that the `lipsum` package [212] is often used to provide filling text.

4.1 The mtc-2c.tex document file

`\mtcindent` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the multicol standard package [325] and its multicol environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a minitoc is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

<pre> 201 \<mtc-2c> 202 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]% 203 {report} 204 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}% 205 [2007/01/04] 206 \usepackage{multicol} 207 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 208 \usepackage% 209 [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc} 210 \usepackage[latin]{babel} 211 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} 212 \begin{document} 213 \dominitoc \tableofcontents </pre>
---	---

`multicols` Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a minitoc on one full width column, then the
`\minitoc` body of the chapter on two columns:

<pre> 214 \chapter{Primum capitulum} 215 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 216 \section{Prima sectio} 217 \lipsum[1-2] 218 \section{Secunda sectio} 219 \lipsum[3-4] 220 \end{multicols} 221 \chapter{Secundum capitulum} </pre>	<pre> 222 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc] 223 \section{Prima sectio} 224 \lipsum[5-6] 225 \section{Secunda sectio} 226 \lipsum[7-8] 227 \section{Tertia sectio} 228 \lipsum[9-10] 229 \end{multicols} </pre>
---	---

`multicols` A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the minitoc are in the first
`\minitoc` column:

<pre> 230 \begin{multicols}{2} 231 \chapter{Tertium capitulum} 232 \minitoc 233 \section{Prima sectio} 234 \lipsum[11-12] </pre>	<pre> 235 \section{Secunda sectio} 236 \lipsum[13-14] 237 \section{Tertia sectio} 238 \lipsum[15-16] 239 \end{multicols} </pre>
--	---

`multicols` A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the minitoc and the chapter body
`\minitoc` on two columns (the minitoc is in the first column):

<pre> 240 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum} 241 \begin{multicols}{2} 242 \minitoc 243 \section{Prima sectio} 244 \lipsum[16-17] 245 \section{Secunda sectio} </pre>	<pre> 246 \lipsum[18-19] 247 \section{Tertia sectio} 248 \lipsum[20-21] 249 \end{multicols} 250 \end{document} 251 \</mtc-2c> </pre>
---	--

4.2 The mtc-2nd.tex document file

This document tests the french2.mld minitoc language definition file (section 13.62 on page 498) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the french2 minitoc package language option¹:

```

252 \*mtc-2nd
253 %% Test de french2.mld:
254 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
255 %% compilez 3 fois.
256 \documentclass{report}
257 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
258 [2007/01/04]
259 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
260 \usepackage[french]{babel}
261 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
262 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
263 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
264 \usepackage{mypatches}
265 \begin{document}

```

\ifmtcsecondpart We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

266 \ifmtcsecondpart
267 Il n'y a que 2 parties: seconde.
268 \else
269 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
270 \fi
271 \clearpage

```

\doparttoc The body of the document, with two parts:
\fakeableofcontents

```

\dparttoc 272 \doparttoc
          273 \fakeableofcontents
          274 \part{P1}
          275 \parttoc
          276 \chapter{P1C1}
          277 \chapter{P1C2}
          278 \part{P2}
          279 \parttoc
          280 \chapter{P2C1}
          281 \chapter{P2C2}

```

¹ The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.

```

282 %% Commentez la ligne suivante puis recompilez 2 ou 3 fois.
283 \end{document}
284 \part{P3}
285 \parttoc
286 \chapter{P3C1}
287 \chapter{P3C2}
288 \end{document}
289 </mtc-2nd>

```

```
\part*{Partie étoilée}
\mtcaddpart[Partie étoilée]
\adjustptc[-2] % IMPORTANT <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
\parttoc
\chapter*{Premier chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Premier chapitre étoilé]
\chapter*{Second chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Second chapitre étoilé]
```

4.3 The mtc-3co.tex document file

First, we will use a wide paper format (A3) to set the text on two columns and the main TOC on three columns, with the `multitoc` package [414] (by Martin SCHRÖDER).

```

290 \*mtc-3co}
291 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
292 \ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
293   [2007/02/19]
294 \usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
295 \usepackage{lipsum}
296 \usepackage{multicol}
297 \usepackage{toc}{multitoc}
298 \renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{3}

```

```

\mtcindent Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for
\mtcsetformat the minitocs. We alter the mtc@verse environment to add a multicols environment2:
\multicolumnmtc
\mtc@verse 299 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
\endmtc@verse 300 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
multicols 301 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
302 \mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
303 \newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
304 \makeatletter
305 \let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
306 \let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
307 \def\mtc@verse#1{\SV@mtc@verse#1\removelastskip%
308 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
309 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
310 \def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
311 \makeatother
312 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the `lipsum` package [212] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```

313 \begin{document}
314 \dominitoc
315 \tableofcontents
316 \chapter{First chapter}
317 \minitoc
318 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used `\mtcsetformat` to avoid hyphenations).

```

319 \section{First section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
320 \section{Second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
321 \section{Third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
322 \section{Fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
323 \section{Fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
324 \section{Sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
325 \section{Seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
326 \section{Eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
327 \section{Ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
328 \section{Tenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
329 \section{Eleventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
330 \section{Twelfth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
331 \section{Thirteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
332 \section{Fourteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
333 \section{Fifteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
334 \section{Sixteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
335 \section{Seventeenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
336 \section{Eighteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

² Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```

337 \section{Nineteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
338 \section{Twentieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
339 \section{Twenty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
340 \section{Twenty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
341 \section{Twenty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
342 \section{Twenty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
343 \subsection{A very long subsection title, for the fun in
344 a multicolumn table of contents} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
345 \section{Twenty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
346 \section{Twenty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
347 \section{Twenty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
348 \section{Twenty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
349 \section{Twenty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
350 \section{Thirtieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
351 \section{Thirty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
352 \section{Thirty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
353 \section{Thirty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
354 \section{Thirty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
355 \section{Thirty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
356 \section{Thirty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
357 \section{Thirty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
358 \section{Thirty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
359 \section{Thirty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
360 \section{Fortieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
361 \section{Forty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
362 \section{Forty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
363 \section{Forty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
364 \section{Forty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
365 \section{Forty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
366 \section{Forty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
367 \section{Forty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
368 \section{Forty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
369 \section{Forty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
370 \section{Fiftieth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
371 \section{Fifty-first section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
372 \section{Fifty-second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
373 \section{Fifty-third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
374 \section{Fifty-fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
375 \section{Fifty-fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
376 \section{Fifty-sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
377 \section{Fifty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
378 \section{Fifty-eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
379 \section{Fifty-ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
380 \end{multicols}
381 \clearpage
382 \end{document}
383 </mtc-3co>

```

4.4 The mtc-add.tex document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the tocbibind package [\[472\]](#).

```

384 <*mtc-add>
385 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
386 %% \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
387 \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
388 [2007/01/04]
389 \usepackage{url}
390 \usepackage{tocbibind}
391 \usepackage{makeidx}
392 \makeatletter
393 \newif\ifscan@allowed
394 \scan@allowedtrue
395 \makeatother
396 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
397 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
398           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%

```

Load the minitoc package, or mtcoff.

```

399 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
400 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}

401 \makeindex
402 \begin{document}

```

\dominitoc We call the mini-table preparation commands:

\dominilof

\dominilot 403 \dominitoc \dominilof \dominilot

\tableofcontents We are using the tocbibind package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in [section 1.5.5 on page 50](#):

\mtcaddchapter

\listoffigures

\listoftables

```

404 \tableofcontents \mtcaddchapter
405 \listoffigures \mtcaddchapter
406 \listoftables \mtcaddchapter

```

\chapter For a chapter, we want a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

\minitoc

\minilof

```
407 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
```

\minilot

```
408 \minitoc \mtcskip
```

\mtcskip

```
409 \minilof \mtcskip
```

```
410 \minilot
```


Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

411 \section{First section}
412
413 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
414 \begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}
415
416 \section{Second section}
417 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
418 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
419 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
420 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
421 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
422 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
423 \index{would}\index{yes}%
424 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
425 But I imagine that he would, yes.\\
426 \hbox{}\hfill
427 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
428 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
429
430 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
431 \begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}

```

`\chapter*` A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

432 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
433 \index{chapter!starred}
434 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
435 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
436 %% \mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
437 %% \addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
438 %% %%%%%%%%%%%
439 %% \mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
440 %% \mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
441 %% %%%%%%%%%%%
442 \index{tests}
443
444 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
445 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
446 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
447 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
448 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
449 and at this chapter.
450 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
451 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
452 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
453 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
454 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%

```

```

455 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
456 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
457 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
458 \index{variations}\index{you}%
459 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
460
461 \chapter{Third chapter}
462 \index{chapter!normal}
463 \minitoc \mtcskip
464 \minilof \mtcskip
465 \minilot
466 \section{Third section}
467
468 \begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
469 \begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}
470
471 \section{Fourth section}
472
473 \begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
474 \begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

`\bibliography`

`\adjustmtc`

```

475 \nocite*
476 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
477 \bibliographystyle{plain}
478 \bibliography{mtc-add}
479 \adjustmtc

```

`\printindex` As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

`\mtcfixindex`

```

480 \printindex
481 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
482 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
483 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
484 %% \mtcaddchapter
485 %%
486
487 \appendix
488 \chapter{App.~1}
489 \index{chapter!appendix}
490 \minitoc \mtcskip
491 \minilof \mtcskip
492 \minilot
493 \section{Fifth section}
494
495 \begin{figure} \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}

```

```

496 \begin{table} \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}
497
498 \section{Sixth section}
499
500 \begin{figure} \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
501 \begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

502 \chapter{App.~2}
503 \index{chapter!appendix}
504 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
505 \minitoc \mtcskip
506 \minilof \mtcskip
507 \minilot
508 \section{Seventh section}
509 \begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
510 \begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
511
512 \section{Eighth section}
513
514 \begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
515 \begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
516
517 \end{document}
518 </mtc-add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [157]:

```

519 <*mtc-addbib>
520 @MISC{minitoc,
521   TITLE="The {\textsf{minitoc}} package",
522   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
523   NOTE="{\url{http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
524   MONTH=jul,
525   YEAR=2008}
526

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [156]:

```

527 @MISC{minitoc-fr,
528   TITLE="Le paquetage {\textsf{minitoc}}",
529   AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
530   NOTE="{\url{http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc-fr.pdf}}",
531   MONTH=jul,
532   YEAR=2008}
533

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [155]:

```

534 @MISC{shorttoc,
535     TITLE="The {\textsf{shorttoc}} package",
536     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
537     NOTE="{\url{http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf}}",
538     MONTH=aug,
539     YEAR=2002}
540

```

- a novel [24] from which a short citation is taken:

```

541 @BOOK{dark,
542     TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
543     AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
544     PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
545     ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
546     YEAR=1993}
547 </mtc-addbib>

```

But the database created this way must be trimmed of some spurious lines; on Unix-like systems, do³:

```
cat mtc-add.bib | grep -v '^%%' > addbib;mv addbib mtc-add.bib
```

4.5 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocbibind package [472] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

548 (*mtc-ads)
549 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
550 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
551 [2007/01/04]
552 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
553 \makeatletter \newif\ifscan@allowed \scan@allowedtrue \makeatother
554 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
555 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
556     \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
557 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
558 %% \usepackage{mtcoff}
559 \makeindex

```

³ Note that we should use no preamble for this file in minitoc.ins; nevertheless, some spurious lines are still generated. This problem is not yet corrected now, so we keep the solution.

```

\doarttoc The preparation commands:
\doartlof
\doartlot 560 \begin{document}
\dosecttoc 561 \doarttoc \doartlof \doartlot
\dosectlof 562 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot
\dosectlot

\setcounter The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we
\tableofcontents use the tocbibind package, we must add some \mtcaddsection commands:
\mtcaddsection
\listoffigures 563 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
\listoftables 564 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
565 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
566 \tableofcontents \mtcaddsection
567 \listoffigures \mtcaddsection
568 \listoftables \mtcaddsection

\parttoc The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their
\partlof section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.
\partlot
\secttoc 569 \part{Part~1}
\sectlof 570 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
\sectlot 571
\mtcskip 572 \section{First section}
573 \index{section!normal}
574 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
575 \subsection{First subsection}
576
577 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{First figure} \end{figure}
578 \begin{table}[tp] \caption{First table} \end{table}
579
580 \subsection{Second subsection}
581 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
582 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
583 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
584 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
585 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
586 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
587 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
588 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
589 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
590 \hbox{\hfill Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}}%
591 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
592 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Second figure} \end{figure}
593 \begin{table} \caption{Second table} \end{table}

\section* Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several
\mtcaddsection solutions (good or bad).

594 \section*{Second section, starred}
595 \index{section!starred}

```

```

596%% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
597\mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
598%% \mtcaddsection[] % BAD
599%% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
600%% \mtcaddsection % BAD
601%%%%%%%%%%
602\index{tests}
603
604This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
605the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
606only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
607\verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
608For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
609and at this section.
610\index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
611\index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
612\index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
613\index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
614\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
615\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
616\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
617\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
618\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
619\index{variations}\index{you}%
620I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
621
622\section{Third section}
623\index{section!normal}
624\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
625\subsection{Third subsection}
626
627\begin{figure} \caption{Third figure} \end{figure}
628\begin{table} \caption{Third table} \end{table}
629
630\subsection{Fourth subsection}
631
632\begin{figure} \caption{Fourth figure} \end{figure}
633\begin{table} \caption{Fourth table} \end{table}
634
635\subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
636\subsubsection{And yet another one}
637
638\part{Part~2}
639\parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
640
641\section{Fourth section}
642\index{section!normal}
643\secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
644\subsection{Fifth subsection}
645
646\begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Fifth figure} \end{figure}
647\begin{table}[tp] \caption{Fifth table} \end{table}
648
649\subsection{Sixth subsection}

```

```

650 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
651 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
652 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
653 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
654 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
655 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
656 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
657 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
658 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
659 \hbox{}\hfill
660 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks} (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
661 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
662
663 \begin{figure}[tp] \caption{Sixth figure} \end{figure}
664 \begin{table} \caption{Sixth table} \end{table}
665
666 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
667 \index{section!starred}
668 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
669 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
670 %% \mtcaddsection[] % OK
671 %% \mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
672 %% \mtcaddsection % OK
673 %%%
674 \index{tests}
675
676 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
677 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
678 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
679 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
680 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
681 and at this section.\index{a}%
682 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
683 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
684 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
685 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
686 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
687 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
688 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
689 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
690 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
691 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
692 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
693
694 \section{Sixth section}
695 \index{section!normal}
696 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
697 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
698
699 \begin{figure} \caption{Seventh figure} \end{figure}
700 \begin{table} \caption{Seventh table} \end{table}
701
702 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
703

```

```

704 \begin{figure} \caption{Eighth figure} \end{figure}
705 \begin{table} \caption{Eighth table} \end{table}

```

`\bibliographystyle` The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [472] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

706 \nocite*
707 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
708 \bibliographystyle{plain}
709 \bibliography{mtc-add}
710 \adjuststc

```

`\printindex` The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [472] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```

711 \printindex
712 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
713 %% \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
714 %% \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
715 %% \mtcaddsection
716
717 \appendix
718 \section{App.~1}
719 \index{section!appendix}
720 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
721 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
722
723 \begin{figure} \caption{Ninth figure} \end{figure}
724 \begin{table} \caption{Ninth table} \end{table}
725
726 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
727
728 \begin{figure} \caption{Tenth figure} \end{figure}
729 \begin{table} \caption{Tenth table} \end{table}
730
731 \section{App.~2}
732 \index{section!appendix}
733 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
734 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
735 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
736
737 \begin{figure} \caption{Eleventh figure} \end{figure}
738 \begin{figure} \caption{Twelfth figure} \end{figure}
739
740 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
741
742 \begin{figure} \caption{Thirteenth figure} \end{figure}
743 \begin{figure} \caption{Fourteenth figure} \end{figure}
744
745 \end{document}
746 </mtc-ads>

```


4.6 The `mtc-amm.tex` document file

`\dominitoc` This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document
`\tableofcontents` when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

<pre> \adjustmtc \minitoc 747 \<mtc-amm> 748 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir} 749 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}% 750 [2007/08/29] 751 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text 752 \usepackage{hyperref} 753 \usepackage{memhfixc} 754 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} </pre>	<pre> 755 \begin{document} 756 \dominitoc \tableofcontents 757 \adjustmtc 758 \chapter{First chapter} 759 \minitoc 760 \lipsum[1] 761 \section{First section} 762 \lipsum[2] </pre>
---	---

`appendices` The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with
`\addappheadtotoc` `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

<pre> \chapter \minitoc 763 \begin{appendices} 764 \addappheadtotoc 765 \adjustmtc %correction! 766 \chapter{Afterthoughts} 767 \minitoc 768 \lipsum[3] 769 Afterthoughts appendix 770 \section{Further remarks} 771 \lipsum[4] 772 \chapter{Last wills} 773 \minitoc 774 \section{Testament} 775 \lipsum[5] </pre>	<pre> 776 \end{appendices} 777 \chapter{Conclusion} 778 \minitoc 779 \section{Bye} 780 \lipsum[6] 781 \chapter{Back from Hell} 782 \minitoc 783 \section{Not dead yet!} 784 \lipsum[7] 785 \section{I will survive} 786 \lipsum[8] 787 \end{document} 788 \</mtc-amm> </pre>
---	--

4.7 The `mtc-apx.tex` document file

The `mtc-apx.tex` document file is described in section [2.25 on page 67](#).

4.8 The `mtc-art.tex` document file

`\stcindent` This is a basic document using the `minitoc` package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it
`\stcfont` must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its
`\stcSSfont` preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

789 \<mtc-art>
790 %% mtc-art.tex

```

```

791%% This file contains a set of tests for minitoc
792%% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
793%% article (\section must be defined)
794 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
795 \ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
796   [2007/06/06]
797 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
798%% \usepackage{hyperref}      % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
799 \usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
800 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5}   % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
801 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}     % depth of table of contents
802 \setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
803 %%                           % font for secttocs, default
804 \renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
805 %%                           % font for secttocs, subsections
806%% \renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sfont}%
807%%                           % you can make experiments with
808%%                           % \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
809%%                           % but it is ‘fontomania’...
810 \raggedbottom                 % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent on the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

811%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
812%% resetting section number in each part
813%% \makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
814%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
815 \begin{document}
```

```

\dosecttoc  The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot  816 \dosecttoc
\doparttoc  817 \dosectlof[c]           % center titles of the sectlofs
\dopartlof  818 \dosectlot
\dosectlot  819 \doparttoc           % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
            820 \dopartlof           % added in version #15
            821 \dopartlot           % added in version #15

```

```

\fakeableofcontents  It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.
\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableoftables  822 \fakeableofcontents           % or \tableofcontents
                   823 \fakeableoftables           % to check compatibility
                   824 \fakeableoftables           % to check compatibility

```

`\part` There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a
`\parttoc` parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:
`\partlof`
`\partlot` 825 `\part{First Part} \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot`

`\section` A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section
`\secttoc` contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).
`\sectlof`

```
\mtcskip 826 \twocolumn\sloppy           % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
827                                     % but works. Ideas to make it better?
828 \section{AAAAA}                     % a section with a lot of sections
829 \secttoc[r]                          % secttoc title on the right
830 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
831 \lipsum[1]
832 \subsection{S1} \lipsum[2]
833 \subsection{S2} \lipsum[3]
834 \subsection{S3} \lipsum[4]
835 \subsection*{S4}
836 %% \addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}
837 \lipsum[5]
```

A lot of subsections:

838 \subsection{S5} \lipsum[6]	851 \subsection{S18} \lipsum[19]
839 \subsection{S6} \lipsum[7]	852 \subsection{S19} \lipsum[20]
840 \subsection{S7} \lipsum[8]	853 \subsection{S20} \lipsum[21]
841 \subsection{S8} \lipsum[9]	854 \subsection{S21} \lipsum[22]
842 \subsection{S9} \lipsum[10]	855 \subsection{S22} \lipsum[23]
843 \subsection{S10} \lipsum[11]	856 \subsection{S23} \lipsum[24]
844 \subsection{S11} \lipsum[12]	857 \subsection{S24} \lipsum[25]
845 \subsection{S12} \lipsum[13]	858 \subsection{S25} \lipsum[26]
846 \subsection{S13} \lipsum[14]	859 \subsection{S26} \lipsum[27]
847 \subsection{S14} \lipsum[15]	860 \subsection{S27} \lipsum[28]
848 \subsection{S15} \lipsum[16]	861 \subsection{S28} \lipsum[29]
849 \subsection{S16} \lipsum[17]	862 \subsection{S29} \lipsum[30]
850 \subsection{S17} \lipsum[18]	863 \subsection{S30} \lipsum[31]

`\FloatBarrier` We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are
`\section*` subsections and figures). The insection package option should ensure that floating objects
`\mtcaddsection` (like figures) do not drift outside their section.

```
\sectlof
\sectlot 864 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
865 \section{BBBBB}
866 \secttoc
867 \mtcskip                             % put some skip here
868 \sectlof                             % a sectlof
869 \lipsum[32]
870 \subsection{T1} \lipsum[33]
871 \begin{figure}[t]                     % tests compatibility with floating bodies
872 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
```

```

873 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
874 \caption{F1}           % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
875 \end{figure}
876 \FloatBarrier
877 \subsubsection[tt1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectioning command
878 \lipsum[34]
879 \paragraph{TTT1} \lipsum[35]
880 \subparagraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[36]
881 \begin{figure}[t]
882 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
883 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
884 \caption{f2}{F2}       % tests optional arg. of a caption
885 \end{figure}
886 \FloatBarrier
887 \subsection{T2} \lipsum[37]
888 \section*{CCCCC}      % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
889 %% \addstarredsection{CCCCC}
890 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
891 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
892 \lipsum[38]
893 \subsection{U1} \lipsum[39]
894 \subsubsection{UU1} \lipsum[40]
895 \paragraph{UUU1} \lipsum[41]
896 \subparagraph{UUUU1} \lipsum[42]
897 \subsection{U2} \lipsum[43]
898 \part{Second Part}
899 \parttoc
900 \partlof[c]
901 \partlot
902 %%                      % the following section should have no secttoc,
903 \section{DDDDD}         % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
904 %% \secttoc
905 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
906 %                      % the secttoc appears
907 \lipsum[44]
908 \subsection{V1} \lipsum[45]
909 \subsubsection{VV1} \lipsum[46]
910 \paragraph{VVV1} \lipsum[47]
911 \subparagraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[48]
912 \begin{figure}[t]       % tests compatibility with floating bodies
913 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
914 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
915 \caption{F3}           % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
916 \end{figure}
917 \FloatBarrier
918 \lipsum[49] \subsection{V2} \lipsum[50]

```

```

\mtcskip We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):
\section
\chapter 919 \section{EEEEEE} % this section should have a secttoc
\secttoc 920 {% % left brace, see below
\sectlof 921 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
\sectlot 922 % try with different values.
\FloatBarrier 923 \secttoc
\part 924 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
\parttoc 925 } % right brace
\partlof 926 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change on secttocdepth.
\partlot 927 \lipsum[51]
928 \subsection{W1} % with the given depth
929 \lipsum[52]
930 \subsubsection{WW1} \lipsum[53]
931 \paragraph{WWW1} \lipsum[54]
932 \begin{figure}[t] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
933 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
934 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
935 \caption{F4} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
936 \end{figure}
937 \FloatBarrier
938 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
939 \subparagraph{WWW1} \lipsum[55]
940 \subsection{W2} \lipsum[56]
941 % no chapter in article class \chapter*{}
942 \part{Appendices}
943 \parttoc \mtcskip
944 \partlof \mtcskip
945 \partlot
946 \FloatBarrier
947 \appendix
948 \section{Comments} \lipsum[57]
949 \secttoc
950 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
951 \subsection{C1} \lipsum[58]
952 \subsection{C2} \lipsum[59]
953 \subsection{C3} \lipsum[60]
954 \begin{figure}[hb] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
955 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
956 \begin{picture}(100,50) \end{picture}
957 \caption{F5} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
958 \end{figure}
959 \FloatBarrier
960 \subsection{C4} \lipsum[61]
961 \FloatBarrier
962 \section{Evolution}
963 \secttoc
964 \sectlof % empty
965 \sectlot % empty
966 \lipsum[62]
967 \subsection{D1} \lipsum[63] \subsection{D2} \lipsum[64]
968 \subsection{D3} \lipsum[65] \subsection{D4} \lipsum[66]
969 \end{document}
970 </mtc-art>

```

4.9 The mtc-bk.tex document file

`\setcounter` This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a
`\mtcindent` book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can
`\mtcfont` alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble
`\mtcSfont` follows:
`\mtcSSfont`

```

971 <*mtc-bk>
972 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
973 % mtc-bk.tex
974 % This file contains a set of tests for minitoc package file.
975 % You can alter most of parameters to test.
976 % Class: book/report (\chapter must be defined).
977 % You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc commands and parameters.
978 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
979 % \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
980 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
981 [2007/06/06]
982 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
983 % \usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
984 % \usepackage{mtcoff}
985 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
986 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
987 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
988 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
989 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
990 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
991 % \renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
992 % you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
993 % but it is "fontomania"...
994 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent on the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

995 %% TEST: uncomment the next line to test resetting chapter number in each part
996 % \makeatletter \@addtoreset{chapter}{part} \makeatother
997 %% END TEST

```

`\mtcpagenumbers` We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence
`\noptcrule` of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

998 \begin{document}
999 \mtcpagenumbers
1000 \noptcrule
1001 % \nomtcrule % suppresses minitoc rules
1002 % \nomtcpagenumbers % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1003 % \nomlfpagenumbers % ----- minilof ----
1004 % \nomltpagenumbers % ----- minilot ----

```

```

\dominitoc The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:
\dominilof
\dominilot 1005 \dominitoc
\doparttoc 1006 \dominilof[c] % centers title of minilof's
\dopartlof 1007 \dominilot
\dopartlot 1008 \doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
          1009 \dopartlof % added in version #15
          1010 \dopartlot % added in version #15

```

```

\tableofcontents It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.
\listoffigures
\fakeinfoftables 1011 \tableofcontents % or \faketableofcontents
                  1012 \listoffigures % or \fakelistoffigures
                  1013 \fakeinfoftables % or \infoftables

```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```
1014%% \addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0
```

```

\part There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:
\parttoc
\partlof 1015 \part{First Part}
\partlot 1016 \parttoc \partlof[r] \partlot[r]

```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```

1017 \twocolumn\sloppy % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1018 \chapter{AAAAA} % a chapter with a lot of sections
1019 \minitoc[r] % minitoc title on the right
1020 \lipsum[1]
1021 \section{S1} \lipsum[2]
1022 \section{S2} \lipsum[3]
1023 \section{S3} \lipsum[4]

```

```

\section* A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:
\addtocontentsline
1024 \section*{S4}
1025 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
1026 \lipsum[5]

```

A lot of subsections:

1027 \section{S5} \lipsum[6]	1031 \section{S9} \lipsum[10]
1028 \section{S6} \lipsum[6]	1032 \section{S10} \lipsum[11]
1029 \section{S7} \lipsum[7]	1033 \section{S11} \lipsum[12]
1030 \section{S8} \lipsum[9]	1034 \section{S12} \lipsum[13]

1035 \section{S13} \lipsum[14]	1045 \section{S23} \lipsum[24]
1036 \section{S14} \lipsum[15]	1046 \section{S24} \lipsum[25]
1037 \section{S15} \lipsum[16]	1047 \section{S25} \lipsum[26]
1038 \section{S16} \lipsum[17]	1048 \section{S26} \lipsum[27]
1039 \section{S17} \lipsum[18]	1049 \section{S27} \lipsum[28]
1040 \section{S18} \lipsum[19]	1050 \section{S28} \lipsum[29]
1041 \section{S19} \lipsum[20]	1051 \section{S29} \lipsum[30]
1042 \section{S20} \lipsum[21]	1052 \section{S30} \lipsum[31]
1043 \section{S21} \lipsum[22]	1053 \subsection{S1} \lipsum[32]
1044 \section{S22} \lipsum[23]	1054 \section{S31} \lipsum[33]

\chapter We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

\minitoc
\minilof 1055 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
\minilot 1056 \chapter{BBBBB}
\mtcskip 1057 \minitoc
1058 \mtcskip                             % put some skip here
1059 \minilof                             % a minilof
1060 \mtcskip                             % put some skip here
1061 \minilot                             % a minilot
1062 \lipsum[34]
1063 \section{T1} \lipsum[35]
1064 \begin{figure}[t]                    % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1065 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1066 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1067 \end{picture}
1068 \caption{F1}                         % (tables are similar)
1069 \end{figure}
1070 \begin{table}[b]                     % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1071 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1072 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1073 \end{picture}
1074 \caption{T1}                         % (tables are similar)
1075 \end{table}
1076 \clearpage
1077 \subsection{tt1}{T1}                 % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1078 \lipsum[36]
1079 \subsubsection{TTT1} \lipsum[37]
1080 \paragraph{TTTT1} \lipsum[38]
1081 \begin{figure}
1082 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1083 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1084 \end{picture}
1085 \caption[f2]{F2}                     % tests optional arg. of a caption
1086 \end{figure}
1087 \section{T2} \lipsum[39]

```

\chapter* A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning commands must also be starred.

```

\addstarredchapter
\addcontentsline
  \section* 1088 \chapter*{CCCCC}         % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
\paragraph* 1089 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
  \part
  \parttoc
  \partlof

```



```

1090 \lipsum[40]
1091 \section*{U1}
1092 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1093 \lipsum[41]
1094 \subsection*{UU1}
1095 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
1096 \lipsum[42]
1097 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
1098 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1099 \lipsum[43]
1100 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1101 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1102 \lipsum[44]
1103 \section*{U2}
1104 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1105 \lipsum[45]
1106 \part{Second Part}
1107 \parttoc
1108 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1109 %%                                % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1110 \chapter{DDDDD}                    % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1111 %% \minitoc                        % the minitoc appears
1112 \lipsum[46]
1113 \section{V1} \lipsum[47]
1114 \subsection{VV1} \lipsum[48]
1115 \subsubsection{VVV1} \lipsum[49]
1116 \paragraph{VVVV1} \lipsum[50]
1117 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1118 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1119 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1120 \end{picture}
1121 \caption{F3}                        % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1122 \end{figure}
1123 \lipsum[51]
1124 \section{V2} \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1125 \chapter{EEEE}                    % this chapter should have a minitoc
1126 {%                                % left brace, see below
1127 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}        % depth of mini table of contents;
1128                                     % try with different values.
1129 \minitoc
1130 }                                    % right brace
1131 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1132 %% on minitocdepth.
1133 \lipsum[53]
1134 \section{W1}                        % with the given depth
1135 \lipsum[54]

```

```

1136 \subsection{WW1} \lipsum[55]
1137 \subsubsection{WWW1} \lipsum[56]
1138 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1139 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1140 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1141 \end{picture}
1142 \caption{F4}              % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1143 \end{figure}
1144 \lipsum[57]
1145 \paragraph{WWWW1} \lipsum[58]
1146 \subparagraph{WWWWW1} \lipsum[59]
1147 \section{W2} \lipsum[60]

```

`\appendix` Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its
`\part`
`\parttoc` `parttoc`:

```

1148 \appendix
1149 \part{Appendices}
1150 \parttoc

```

`mtchideinmaintoc` Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional
`\chapter` argument:
`\minitoc`

```

1151 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1152 \chapter{Comments}
1153 \minitoc
1154 \section{C1} \lipsum[61]
1155 \section{C2} \lipsum[62]
1156 \section{C3} \lipsum[63]
1157 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1158 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1159 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1160 \end{picture}
1161 \caption{F5}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1162 \end{figure}
1163 \section{C4}
1164 \chapter{Evolution}
1165 \minitoc
1166 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1167 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1168 \section{D1} \lipsum[64]
1169 \section{D2} \lipsum[65]
1170 \section{D3} \lipsum[66]
1171 \section{D4} \lipsum[67]

```

`mtchideinmaintoc` We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this
`\addtocontents` `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1172 %% this line closes the omitted part

```

```

1173 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1174 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
1175 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1176 \lipsum[68]
1177 \end{document}
1178 </mtc-bk>

```

4.10 The mtc-bo.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the tocloft package [469]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a minitoc and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads the geometry package [447], which defines the global page layout, the multicol package [325], the color package [120], because we want a colored background for the minitoc, the tocloft package [469], to change some parameters of the minitoc, and, at least, the minitoc package itself:

```

1179 <*mtc-bo>
1180 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1181 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1182 [2007/04/17]
1183 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1184 lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1185 \usepackage{multicol}
1186 \usepackage{color}

```

```

\setlength We use the tocloft package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the
\addtolength minitoc:
\cftsecindent
\cftsecnumwidth 1187 \usepackage{tocloft}
\cftsubsecindent 1188 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
\cftsubsecnumwidth 1189 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
\cftsubsubsecindent 1190 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
\cftsubsubsecnumwidth 1191 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1192 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1193 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1194 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

\cftpagenumbersoff Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands from tocloft:

```

1195 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1196 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

```

\mtcindent We load the minitoc package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the
\nomtcrule minitoc title. The hyperref package [391] can also be loaded (after minitoc).
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mtctitle 1197 \usepackage[francais,tight]{minitoc}
1198 \usepackage{hyperref}
1199 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1200 \nomtcrule % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1201 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1202 % (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1203 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

We load also some packages for the french language (some are local):

```

1204 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1205 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1206 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1207 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1208 \usepackage{mypatches}

```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```

1209 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1210 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT « RENCONTRE » AU LIEU DE « CHAPITRE » %
1211 % Sans saut de ligne (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ) %
1212 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1213 \makeatletter
1214 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1215   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1216   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1217    \interlinepenalty\@M
1218    \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1219     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1220     \fi
1221     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1222     \vskip 10\p@
1223   }}
1224 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1225   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1226   {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1227    \interlinepenalty\@M
1228    \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1229    \vskip 10\p@
1230   }} \makeatother

```

We define an environment (pageUn) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a multicols environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```

1231 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1232 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES %

```

```

1233 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1234 % param1: date de la rencontre
1235 % param2: nombre de périodes
1236 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1237 % param4: messages
1238 % param5: lecture
1239 % param6: exercices
1240 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1241 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1242 \parindent = 0.0in
1243 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1244 \begin{multicols}{2}
1245     {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1246     \textit{(#2)}}
1247     \vfill\columnbreak
1248     \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1249     #1
1250 \end{multicols}
1251 \vspace{-18pt}
1252 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1253
1254 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt} \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1255 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1256
1257 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1258 \colorbox[cmk]{.1,0,0,0}{%
1259     \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1260         \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1261         \minitoc%
1262     }}
1263 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1264
1265 \mtcskip
1266
1267 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1268
1269 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1270 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1271
1272 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1273
1274 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1275 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1276
1277 %: LECTURE
1278 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1279
1280 % EXERCICES
1281 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1282
1283 %\newpage
1284 \end{multicols}%
1285 }
1286 %{\newpage}

```

```

1287 {\hrule}
1288
1289 %\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1290
1291 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1292 %\parindent = 0.0in
1293 \parskip = 0.1in
1294
1295 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1296 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS %
1297 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1298 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1299 %\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1300

```

The body of the document:

```

1301 %%%%%%%%%%
1302 %: BEGIN %
1303 %%%%%%%%%%
1304 \begin{document}
1305 \dominitoc \faketableofcontents
1306 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1307 %\minitoc
1308 \begin{pageUn}
1309         {%1      Date du cours
1310                lundi 25 août
1311                }
1312         {%2      Durée du cours
1313                2 périodes
1314                }
1315         {%3      Liste des documents à~distribuer
1316                \item Plan de cours
1317                \item Fiche d'identification
1318                \item Grille horaire
1319                \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1320                }
1321         {%4      Ne pas oublier
1322                \item Acheter le livre de référence
1323                \item Apporter une disquette
1324                }
1325         {%5      Lecture
1326                Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp
1327                }
1328         {%6      Exercice
1329                Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1330                }
1331 \end{pageUn}
1332
1333 %%%%%%%%%%
1334 \section{Titre de la section} %
1335 %%%%%%%%%%
1336

```

```

1337 Texte dans la section
1338
1339 %%
1340 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1341 %%
1342 Bla bla bla
1343
1344 %%
1345 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1346 %%
1347 Bla bla bla
1348
1349
1350 %%%%%%%%%%%
1351 \section{Titre d'une autre section} %
1352 %%%%%%%%%%%
1353
1354 Texte dans la section
1355
1356 %%
1357 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1358 %%
1359 Bla bla bla
1360
1361 %%
1362 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1363 %%
1364 Bla bla bla
1365
1366 %%%%%%%%%%%
1367 \section{Encore une autre section} %
1368 %%%%%%%%%%%
1369
1370 Texte dans la section
1371
1372 \end{document}
1373 </mtc-bo>

```

4.11 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

`\dominitoc` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

`\tableofcontents`

```

1374 <*mtc-ch0>
1375 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1376 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1377 [2007/01/04]
1378 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1379 \begin{document}
1380 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`\chapter*` The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC
`\mtcaddchapter` for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:
`\minitoc`

```
1381 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1382 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1383 \minitoc
1384 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1385 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1386 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1387 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1388
1389 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1390 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1391 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1392 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1393 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1394 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1395 things by halves around here.
1396
1397 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1398 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1399 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1400 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1401
1402 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1403 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1404 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1405 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1406 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1407 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1408 things by halves around here.
```

`\chapter` The second chapter is normal:
`\minitoc`

```
1409 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1410 \minitoc
1411 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1412 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1413 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1414 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1415
1416 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1417 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1418 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1419 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1420 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1421 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1422 things by halves around here.
1423 \end{document}
1424 </mtc-ch0>
```


4.12 The `mtc-cri.tex` document file

```

\mtcsetdepth This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and
\doarttoc    starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented:
\dominitoc   just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file.
\tableofcontents
  \part* 1425 (*mtc-cri)
\mtcaddpart 1426 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
  \adjustptc 1427 {report}
  \parttoc 1428 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}%
  \chapter* 1429 [2007/01/04]
\mtcaddchapter 1430 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
  \chapter 1431 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
  \minitoc 1432 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
  \section 1433 \usepackage%
  1434 [french2,tight]%
  1435 {minitoc}
  1436
  1437 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}
  1438
  1439 \begin{document}
  1440 \doarttoc \dominitoc
  1441 \tableofcontents
  1442 \part*{Présentation générale}
  1443 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale]
  1444 \adjustptc[-2]
  1445 \parttoc
  1446
  1447 Texte de la
  1448 présentation générale\ldots
  1449
  1450 \chapter*{Les auteurs}
  1451 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs]
  1452 Présentation des auteurs\ldots
  1453
  1454 \chapter*{Les lecteurs}
  1455 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs]
  1456 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots
  1457
  1458 \part{Première partie}
  1459 \parttoc
  1460 \chapter*{Introduction}
  1461 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
  1462 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
  1463 \minitoc
  1464 \section{Première section~A}
  1465 \section{Deuxième section~A}
  1466 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
  1467 \minitoc
  1468 \section{Première section~B}
  1469 \section{Deuxième section~B}
  1470
  1471 \part{Deuxième partie}
  1472 \parttoc
  1473 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
  1474 \minitoc
  1475 \section{Première section~C}
  1476 \section{Deuxième section~C}
  1477 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
  1478 \minitoc
  1479 \section{Première section~D}
  1480 \section{Deuxième section~D}
  1481 \end{document}
  1482 \end{mtc-cri}

```

4.13 The `mtc-fko.tex` document file

This is a document using the `scrbook` class. Without any precaution, some entries in the minitocs are not in the right font (bold sans serif) like in the main table of contents; moreover, the language of the minitoc titles is not correct because the options of the `babel` package are not transferred to the minitoc package. To solve the language problem, we just set “*german*” as a *global* option in the `\documentclass` command (`babel` and `minitoc` will hence use this global option).

```

1483 <*mtc-fko>
1484 \documentclass[german,a4paper,oneside]{scrbook}
1485 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fko.tex}%
1486 [2007/02/19]

```

`\mtcindent` Then we load the packages and set some parameters:

```

1487 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
1488 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1489 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt} % optional

```

`\mtcsetfont` Then we set explicitly the fonts for the entries⁴ and the font of the titles of the minitocs, knowing that the font command `\sectfont` is defined in `scrbook.cls`; we change also the title for the minitocs:

`\mtcsetttitle`

```

1490 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\sectfont\small}
1491 \mtcsetttitlefont{minitoc}{\sectfont\large}
1492 \mtcsetttitle{minitoc}{Inhalt}

```

`\dominitoc` Then the body of the document, with a chapter (with a minitoc) containing a section. The section entry did not appear in bold sans serif in the original document (before the corrections).

`\tableofcontents`

`\chapter`

```

\minitoc 1493 \begin{document}
1494 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1495 %
1496 \chapter{Ein serifenloses Kapitel}
1497 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
1498 \section{Dieser Text ist in minitoc serifenlos}
1499 Auch der Text \glqq Inhaltsangabe\grqq\ will
1500 so wie koma es definiert.
1501 \end{document}
1502 </mtc-fko>

```

4.14 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

`\doparttoc` This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

`\dominitoc`

`\tableofcontents`

```

\part 1503 <*mtc-fo1>
1504 \documentclass{report}
1505 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
1506 [2007/01/04]
1507 \usepackage{lipsum}

```

⁴ Here we only gave the commands for the section entries in the minitocs, but analog commands may be used for lower entries.

```

1508 \usepackage{txfonts}
1509 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1510 \begin{document}
1511 \doparttoc \dominitoc \tableofcontents
1512 \part{Introduction} \clearpage

```

`\parttoc` A first copy, with default fonts:

```

1513 \parttoc \clearpage

```

`\mtcsetfont` A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

`\parttoc`

```

1514 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1515 \parttoc \clearpage

```

`\mtcsetfont` A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

`\parttoc`

```

1516 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1517 \parttoc \clearpage

```

`\mtcsetfont` A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

`\parttoc`

`\chapter` 1518 `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}`

`\minitoc` 1519 `\parttoc \clearpage`

`\section` 1520 `\chapter{A very short chapter}`

`\subsection` 1521 `\minitoc`

1522 `\lipsum[1]`

1523 `\section{First section} \lipsum[2]`

1524 `\subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3]`

1525 `\subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]`

1526 `\section{Second section} \lipsum[5]`

1527 `\subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6]`

1528 `\subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]`

1529 `\end{document}`

1530 `</mtc-fo1>`

4.15 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of mtc-fo1.tex (see [section 4.14 on the preceding page](#)).

```

1531 <*mtc-fo2>
1532 \documentclass{report}

```

```

1533 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1534 [2007/01/04]
1535 \usepackage{lipsum}
1536 \usepackage{txfonts}
1537 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

```

\ptcfont We declare the fonts with the old method:
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont 1538 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
\ptcPfont 1539 \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
\ptcSPfont 1540 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
\plffont 1541 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
\plfSfont 1542 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
\pltfont 1543 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
\pltSfont 1544 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
\doparttoc 1545 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
1546 \begin{document}
\dominitoc 1547 \doparttoc \dominitoc
\tableofcontents 1548 \tableofcontents
\part 1549 \part{Introduction}
1550 \clearpage

```

\parttoc A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```

1551 \parttoc \clearpage

```

\mtcsetfont A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```

\parttoc
1552 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1553 \parttoc \clearpage

```

\mtcsetfont A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```

\parttoc
1554 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1555 \parttoc \clearpage

```

\mtcsetfont A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```

\parttoc
1556 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1557 \parttoc \clearpage
1558 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1559 \minitoc
1560 \lipsum[1]
1561 \section{First section} \lipsum[2]
1562 \subsection{Alpha} \lipsum[3] \subsection{Beta} \lipsum[4]
1563 \section{Second section} \lipsum[5]
1564 \subsection{Gamma} \lipsum[6] \subsection{Delta} \lipsum[7]

```

```
1565 \end{document}
1566 </mtc-fo2>
```

4.16 The mtc-gap.tex document file

The mtc-gap.tex document file is described in section 2.44 on page 76.

4.17 The mtc-hi1.tex document file

The mtc-hi1.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 68.

4.18 The mtc-hi2.tex document file

The mtc-hi2.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 69.

4.19 The mtc-hia.tex document file

`\dosectlot` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some
`\listoftables` tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class.

`\section`

`\sectlot`

```
1567 <*mtc-hia>
1568 \documentclass%
1569 [oneside,a4paper]{article}
1570 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}%
1571 [2007/01/04]
1572 \usepackage{lipsum}
1573 \usepackage%
1574 [tight,insection]%
1575 {minitoc}
1576 \dosectlot
1577 \begin{document}
1578 \listoftables
```

```
1579 \section{First section}
1580 \sectlot
1581 \lipsum[1]
1582 \begin{table}[hb]
1583 \caption{My first visible table}
1584 \end{table}
1585 \lipsum[2]
1586 \begin{table}[ht]
1587 \caption{A second visible table}
1588 \end{table}
1589 \lipsum[3]
```

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:
`\section`
`\sectlot`



<pre> 1590 \begin{table}[hb] 1591 \mtchideinmainlot 1592 \caption{My first hidden table} 1593 \end{table} 1594 \lipsum[4-6] 1595 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1596 \caption{A second hidden table} 1597 \end{table} 1598 \lipsum[7] 1599 \section{Second section} 1600 \sectlot 1601 \lipsum[8] </pre>
---	--

`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

<pre> 1602 \begin{table}[hb] 1603 \caption{My last hidden table} 1604 \endmtchideinmainlot 1605 \end{table} 1606 \lipsum[9] 1607 \begin{table}[ht] 1608 \caption{A third visible table} 1609 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1610 \lipsum[10] 1611 \begin{table}[hb] 1612 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1613 \end{table} 1614 \lipsum[11] 1615 \end{document} 1616 </mtc-hia> </pre>
---	--



4.20 The mtc-hir.tex document file

`\dominilot` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some
`\listoftables` tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the report class.

`\chapter`

`\minilot`

<pre> 1617 < *mtc-hir> 1618 \documentclass[a4paper]{report} 1619 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}% 1620 [2007/01/04] 1621 \usepackage{lipsum} 1622 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} 1623 \dominilot 1624 \begin{document} 1625 \listoftables 1626 \chapter{First chapter} </pre>	<pre> 1627 \minilot 1628 \lipsum[1] 1629 \begin{table}[hb] 1630 \caption{My first visible table} 1631 \end{table} 1632 \lipsum[2] 1633 \begin{table}[ht] 1634 \caption{A second visible table} 1635 \end{table} 1636 \lipsum[3] </pre>
---	--

`\mtchideinmainlot` For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

`\chapter`

`\minilot`

<pre> 1637 \begin{table}[hb] 1638 \mtchideinmainlot % <-- 1639 \caption{My first hidden table} 1640 \end{table} 1641 \lipsum[4-6] 1642 \begin{table}[ht] </pre>	<pre> 1643 \caption{A second hidden table} 1644 \end{table} 1645 \lipsum[7] 1646 \chapter{Second chapter} 1647 \minilot 1648 \lipsum[8] </pre>
--	--



`\endmtchideinmainlot` For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

<pre> 1649 \begin{table}[hb] 1650 \caption{My last hidden table} 1651 \endmtchideinmainlot % <-- 1652 \end{table} 1653 \lipsum[9] 1654 \begin{table}[ht] 1655 \caption{A third visible table} 1656 \end{table} </pre>	<pre> 1657 \lipsum[10] 1658 \begin{table}[hb] 1659 \caption{A fourth visible table} 1660 \end{table} 1661 \lipsum[11] 1662 \end{document} 1663 \end{mtc-hir} </pre>
--	---



4.21 The `mtc-hop.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of class `scrbook`.

```

1664 (*mtc-hop)
1665 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1666 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1667   [2007/01/04]
1668 \usepackage{lipsum}
1669 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1670 \begin{document}

```

```

\dominitoc We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF
\dominilof file is prepared):
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 1671 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
                1672 \dominilof \fakelistoffigures

```

```

\part* A starred part with its entry in the TOC:
\mtcaddpart
                1673 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
                1674 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

```

\chapter Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:
\minitoc
\minilof 1675 \chapter{Chapter 1}
          1676 \minitoc \minilof
          1677 \section{Section one of first chapter} \lipsum[1]
          1678 \begin{figure}
          1679   \centering Test
          1680   \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
          1681 \end{figure}
          1682
          1683 \section{Section two of first chapter} \lipsum[2]

```

```

1684 \begin{figure}
1685     \centering Test
1686     \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1687 \end{figure}
1688
1689 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1690 \minitoc \minilof
1691
1692 \section{Section one of second chapter} \lipsum[3]
1693 \begin{figure}
1694     \centering Test
1695     \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1696 \end{figure}
1697 \cleardoublepage
1698 \section{Section two of second chapter} \lipsum[4]
1699 \begin{figure}
1700     \centering Test
1701     \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1702 \end{figure}
1703 \end{document}
1704 </mtc-hop>

```

4.22 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1705 <{*mtc-liv}
1706 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1707 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
1708 [2007/01/04]

```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine \cleardoublepage:

```

1709 \makeatletter
1710 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1711 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
1712 \if@twoside
1713 \ifodd\c@page\else
1714 \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
1715 \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
1716 \fi
1717 \fi
1718 }%
1719 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1720 \makeatother

```


We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```
1721 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1722 \usepackage[T1,T1]{fontenc}
```

We load two packages, `tocloft` [469], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [319], to customize the sectionning commands:

```
1723 \usepackage{tocloft}
1724 \usepackage{sectsty}
```

We load the minitoc package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```
1725 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
1726 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
1727 \usepackage{franc,frnew,mypatches}
1728 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}
```

```
\addtolength We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the
\cftsubsecindent minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:
\cftsetrmarg
\setcounter 1729 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
\chapterfont 1730 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
\thesection 1731 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
\sectionfont 1732 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
\raggedright 1733 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
1734 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
1735 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
1736 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)
```

Some informations for the title page:

```
1737 \title{Systèmes d'occultation} \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}
```

```
\dominitoc And the document body5:
\tableofcontents
\chapter 1738 \begin{document}
\minitoc 1739
\section 1740 \maketitle
\subsection 1741
\subsection* 1742 \dominitoc \tableofcontents
\subsubsection 1743
\addcontentsline 1744 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}%
1745 \label{chap+controle}
1746 \minitoc
```

⁵ The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

1747
1748 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
1749 \index{taylorisme}
1750 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
1751 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
1752 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
1753 industrielle.
1754
1755 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
1756 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
1757 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
1758 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
1759 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
1760 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
1761
1762 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
1763 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
1764 son destinataire.
1765
1766 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
1767 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
1768 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
1769 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
1770 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
1771 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
1772 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
1773
1774 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
1775 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
1776 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
1777
1778 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
1779 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
1780 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
1781 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
1782
1783 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}
1784 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
1785 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
1786 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]
1787
1788 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
1789 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
1790 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
1791 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
1792
1793 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}
1794 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
1795 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
1796 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
1797 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les
1798 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]
1799
1800 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}

1801 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un
1802 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de
1803 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent
1804 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]

1805

1806 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}
1807 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne
1808 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]

1809

1810 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}
1811 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion
1812 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]

1813

1814 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}
1815 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons
1816 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup
1817 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du
1818 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]

1819

1820 \chapter{Le travail informatique}
1821 \minitoc

1822

1823 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}

1824

1825 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}
1826 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin
1827 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des
1828 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,
1829 on pensait~[...]

1830

1831 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}
1832 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du
1833 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus
1834 au sujet de la programmation.

1835

1836 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
1837 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres principes.
1838 Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la préserver~[...]

1839

1840 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}

1841 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}

1842

1843 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
1844 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
1845 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre
1846 préoccupation.

1847

1848 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
1849 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
1850 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires
1851 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
1852 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]

1853

1854 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}

```

1855 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
1856 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
1857 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
1858
1859 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
1860 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
1861 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
1862 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
1863 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
1864
1865 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
1866 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
1867 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
1868 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
1869
1870 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
1871 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
1872 modèle~[...]
1873 \end{document}
1874 </mtc-liv>

```

4.23 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

<pre> 1875 (*mtc-mem) 1876 \documentclass% 1877 [oneside]{memoir} 1878 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}% 1879 [2007/01/04] 1880 \usepackage{lipsum} </pre>	<pre> 1881 %% \usepackage{hyperref} 1882 %% \usepackage{memhfixc} 1883 \usepackage% 1884 [tight]{minitoc} 1885 %% \usepackage{mtcoff} 1886 \begin{document} </pre>
--	--

\dominitoc We use the starred form \tableofcontents* specific of the memoir class. Note that the the
\tableofcontents* \chapter command has *two* optional arguments in the memoir class.

<pre> \chapter \minitoc \section 1887 \dominitoc 1888 \tableofcontents* 1889 1890 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC} 1891 \minitoc 1892 \lipsum[1] \newpage \lipsum[2] 1893 \section{S-1-one} \lipsum[3] 1894 \section{S-1-two} \lipsum[4] </pre>	<pre> 1895 1896 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC} 1897 \minitoc 1898 \lipsum[4] \newpage \lipsum[5] 1899 \section{S-2-one} \lipsum[6] 1900 \section{S-2-two} \lipsum[7] 1901 \end{document} 1902 </mtc-mem> </pre>
---	---

4.24 The mtc-mm1.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the necessary adaptations for fonts. First, the preamble:

```
1903 <*mtc-mm1>
1904 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
1905 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
1906 [2007/01/04]
1907 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
```

\providecommand We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```
\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1908 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 1909 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
```

\renewcommand Then we redefine them:

```
\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1910 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
1911 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
```

\mtcsetfont We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, but without any success:

```
1912 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
1913 %% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref}\usepackage{memhfixc}
1914 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1915 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
1916 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape
```

\providecommand But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```
\cftsecfont
\cftsubsecfont 1917 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
\empty 1918 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
\renewcommand 1919 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
1920 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
```

\mtcsetttitlefont But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```
\mtcsetttitle
1921 \mtcsetttitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
1922 %% this is working beautifully ->
1923 \mtcsetttitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}
```

```
\dominitoc The document body:
\tableofcontents*
\chapter
\minitoc
\section
```

```

1924 \begin{document}
1925 \dominitoc \tableofcontents*
1926
1927 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
1928 \minitoc
1929 \section{This section} \lipsum[1]
1930 \section{Second section} \lipsum[2]
1931 \section{Third section} \lipsum[3]
1932 \end{document}
1933 </mtc-mm1>

```

4.25 The mtc-mu.tex document file

`\mtcindent` This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted
`\dominitoc` in the text with the wrapfig package [18].
`\tableofcontents`

```

1934 <{*mtc-mu>
1935 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
1936 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
1937 [2007/01/04]
1938 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1939 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1940 \usepackage{wrapfig}
1941 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
1942 \begin{document}
1943 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`wrapfigure` A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the
`minipage` half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:
`\chapter`
`\linewidth` 1944 \chapter{Mulspreen}\label{chapter+mulspreen}
`\vspace` 1945 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
`\baselineskip` 1946 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
`\minitoc` 1947 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
1948 \minitoc
1949 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
1950 \end{minipage}
1951 \end{wrapfigure}

The remaining of the text:

```

1952 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
1953 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
1954 These gulfs were often created when programing environments used
1955 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
1956 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand

```

1957 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
 1958 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
 1959 notations helped users understand programs.
 1960 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
 1961 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
 1962 programming gulfs.
 1963 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
 1964 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
 1965 programming gulfs.
 1966
 1967 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspreen.
 1968 Mulspreen was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
 1969 benefits of multiple notations.
 1970 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
 1971 similar to conventional code.
 1972 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
 1973 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
 1974 This is programming using dual notations.
 1975 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
 1976 Mulspreen's language signature is `\LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}`.
 1977
 1978 Papers describing Mulspreen have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
 1979 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.
 1980
 1981 \section{section 1}
 1982 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
 1983 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
 1984 \section{section 3}
 1985 \section{section 4}
 1986 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
 1987 bla bla bla bla bla}

thebibliography I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

\bibitem

1988 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
 1989 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
 1990 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
 1991 \newblock Mulspreen: a multiple language simulation programming
 1992 environment.
 1993 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
 1994 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
 1995 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
 1996
 1997 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
 1998 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
 1999 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.
 2000 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
 2001 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
 2002 Australia, 2005.
 2003 Australian Computer Society, Inc.
 2004 \end{thebibliography}
 2005 \end{document}
 2006 \end{mtc-mu}

4.26 The mtc-nom.tex document file

This document⁶ shows the interaction of the minitoc package with the nomencl package [456], when this package uses its option intoc.

```
2007 <*mtc-nom>
2008 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2009 \ProvidesFile{mtc-nom.tex}%
2010 [2007/04/02]
```

`\makenomenclature` We load the packages and prepare the nomenclature:

```
2011 \usepackage[intoc]{nomencl}
2012 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2013 \makenomenclature
2014 \begin{document}
```

`\dominitoc` We prepare the minitocs and the table of contents:
`\tableofcontents`

```
2015 \dominitoc
2016 \tableofcontents
```

`\chapter` A first chapter, with its minitoc, a section and some entries for the nomenclature:
`\minitoc`

```
\section 2017 \chapter{Angels}
\nomenclature 2018 \minitoc
2019 \section{Main equations}
2020 \begin{equation}
2021 a=\frac{N}{A}
2022 \end{equation}%
2023 \nomenclature{$a$}{The number of angels per unit area}%
2024 \nomenclature{$N$}{The number of angels per needle point}%
2025 \nomenclature{$A$}{The area of the needle point}%
2026 The equation  $\sigma = m a$ %
2027 \nomenclature{$\sigma$}{The total mass of angels per unit area}%
2028 \nomenclature{$m$}{The mass of one angel}
2029 follows easily.
```

`\printnomenclature` We print the nomenclature; but that adds a chapter entry in the TOC because of the intoc
`\mtcfixnomenclature` option of the nomencl, hence we add a correction with `\mtcfixnomenclature` (try to remove the correction and look at the result: the next minitocs are wrong):

```
2030 \printnomenclature \mtcfixnomenclature
```

⁶ It is derived from the example given in the documentation of nomencl.

`\chapter` A second chapter, with its minitoc, a section, and an entry in the nomenclature. This entry will
`\minitoc` be present in the nomenclature printed above.
`\section`
`\nomenclature` 2031 `\chapter{Demons}`
2032 `\minitoc`
2033 `\section{False equations}`
2034 `\begin{equation} i=\sqrt{-1} \end{equation}`
2035 `\nomenclature{i}{The imaginary unit}%`
2036 `\end{document}`
2037 `</mtc-nom>`

4.27 The mtc-ocf.tex document file

This document shows the use of the `open` and `close` features of the `minitoc` package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [144] is used to have a wide text area.

```

2038 <*mtc-ocf>
2039 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
2040 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ocf.tex}%
2041 [2007/04/02]
2042 \usepackage{multicol} % to make multi-columns.
2043 \usepackage[french]{babel}
2044 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2045 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
2046 \usepackage{fullpage}
2047 % to allow a page breaks before a section
2048 \let\osection\section \def\section{\penalty-1\relax\osection}
2049 %
2050 \usepackage[french,tight]{minitoc}

\mtcsetfeature The “open” feature for minitocs opens a multicol environment, with 3 columns:
multicols
2051 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\vspace{-1ex}\begin{multicols}{3}}

\mtcsetfeature The “close” feature for minitocs close the multicol environment:
multicols
2052 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\vspace{-1.5ex}}

As the multicol environment adds some vertical spacing before and after it, we added some
corrections.

\mtcsetfeature As the number of sections is not a multiple of three (or some entries are long), we can-
\raggedcolumns not always balance the columns nicely, so we use ragged columns, using the “before” and
\flushcolumns “after” features:

```

```
2053 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2054 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}
```

```
\dominitoc And the body of the document, a chapter with many sections, listed in a minitoc:
\tableofcontents
\chapter 2055 \begin{document}
\minitoc 2056 \dominitoc
\section 2057 \tableofcontents
2058 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
2059 \minitoc
2060 % A lot of sections
2061 \section{Alfa}
2062 \section{Bravo}
2063 \section{Charlie}
2064 \section{Delta}
2065 \section{Echo}
2066 \section{Fox-Trot}
2067 \section{Golf}
2068 \section{Hotel}
2069 \section{India}
2070 \section{Juliet}
2071 \section{Kilo}

2072 \section{Lima}
2073 \section{Mike}
2074 \section{November}
2075 \section{Oscar}
2076 \section{Papa}
2077 \section{Quebec}
2078 \section{Romeo}
2079 \section{Sierra}
2080 \section{Tango}
2081 \section{Uniform}
2082 \section{Victor}
2083 \section{Whiskey}
2084 \section{X-Ray}
2085 \section{Yankee}
2086 \section{Zulu}
2087 \end{document}
2088 \end{mtc-ocf}
```

4.28 The mtc-ofs.tex document file

This document shows the use of the `\mtcsetoffset` command to shift a minitoc to the left, trying to put it along the left margin of the text. The open and close features of the minitoc package are also used to prepare the minitoc on three columns. The old package `fullpage` [144] is used to have a wide text area.

```
2089 <{*mtc-ofs}
2090 \documentclass[a4paper]{book}
2091 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ofs.tex}%
2092 [2007/04/17]
2093 \usepackage{lipsum}
2094 \usepackage{multicol}
2095 \usepackage{fullpage}
2096 %\usepackage[a4paper]{geometry}
2097 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

```
\setlength We remove the minitoc indentation and set up the open and close features:
\mtcindent
\mtcsetfeature 2098 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
\raggedcolumns 2099 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{open}{\kern1sp\vspace*{-.1ex}\begin{multicols}{4}[\kern-2.5ex]}
\flushcolumns 2100 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{close}{\end{multicols}\kern-2.5ex}
multicols 2101 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{before}{\raggedcolumns}
2102 \mtcsetfeature{minitoc}{after}{\flushcolumns}
```

```

\dominitoc We begin the document with a chapter and its minitoc:
\fakeableofcontents
  \chapter 2103 \begin{document}
  \minitoc 2104 \dominitoc \fakeableofcontents
           2105 \chapter{Introduction}
           2106 \minitoc

\mtcsetoffset As the minitoc is not aligned on the left margin of the text, we set a negative offset and print
\mtcskip again the minitoc:
\minitoc
           2107 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-1.75em}
           2108 \mtcskip \minitoc

\mtcsetoffset But then the minitoc does not use the full width of the text; it would be better to modify both
\setlength the offset and the indentation, each by the half of the total correction:
\mtcindent
  \mtcskip 2109 \mtcsetoffset{minitoc}{-0.875em}
  \minitoc 2110 \setlength{\mtcindent}{-0.875em}
           2111 \mtcskip \minitoc

\section Then a lot of sections, with some text:

2112 \section{Alfa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2113 \section{Bravo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2114 \section{Charlie} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2115 \section{Delta} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2116 \section{Echo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2117 \section{Fox-Trot} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2118 \section{Golf} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2119 \section{Hotel} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2120 \section{India} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2121 \section{Juliet} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2122 \section{Kilo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2123 \section{Lima} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2124 \section{Mike} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2125 \section{November} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2126 \section{Oscar} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2127 \section{Papa} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2128 \section{Quebec} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2129 \section{Romeo} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2130 \section{Sierra} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2131 \section{Tango} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2132 \section{Uniform} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2133 \section{Victor} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2134 \section{Whiskey} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2135 \section{X-Ray} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2136 \section{Yankee} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2137 \section{Zulu} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
2138 \end{document}
2139 </mtc-ofs>

```

Note: if you add a sub-section in this example, the corresponding entry in the minitoc may stick out if it appears in the last column, and the offset and the indentation should then be corrected again.



4.29 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

`\l@subfigure` This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures
`\@dottedxxxline` (here with the subfigure package [130]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their
`\ext@subfigure` depth.

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
2140 <*mtc-sbf>
2141 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2142 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2143 [2007/01/04]
2144 \usepackage{subfigure}
2145 \makeatletter
2146 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{\@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2147 \makeatother
```

We load the varioref [326] package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```
2148 \usepackage{varioref}
2149 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

`\newcommand` We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:
`\goodap`
`\subfigtopskip` 2150 `\newcommand{\goodap}{%`
`\subfigbottomskip` 2151 `\hspace{\subfigtopskip}%`
`\setcounter` 2152 `\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}`
2153 `\setcounter{lofdepth}{2}`
2154 `\begin{document}`

`\mtcsetdepth` We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:
`\mtcsetfont`

```
2155 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2156 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2157 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2158 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2159 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2160 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2161 %% no tables in this document
2162 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2163 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```

2164 %% \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2165 %% \mtcsetfont{minilof}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

```

\dominilof We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 2166 \dominilof \listoffigures \tableofcontents

```

```

\chapter A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:
\minilof
\mtcskip 2167 \chapter{First Chapter}
\mtcsetdepth 2168 \minilof \mtcskip
2169 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1} \minilof

```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```

2170 \begin{figure}
2171 \centering
2172   \fbox{%
2173     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2174       \raggedright
2175       \begin{center}
2176         \subfigure[First]{%
2177           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2178           \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2179         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2180           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2181         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2182           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2183         \caption{Three subfigures.}\label{3figs}%
2184       \end{center}
2185       \vspace{4pt}%
2186       This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2187       Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2188     \end{minipage}}
2189 \end{figure}
2190 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
2191 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2192 \end{document}
2193 \end{mtc-sbf}

```

4.30 The mtc-scr.tex document file

\setcounter This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class [343, 344, 399], screpr. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2194 (*mtc-scr)
2195 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2196 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2197 [2007/01/04]
2198 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2199 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2200 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2201 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The hyperref package, if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc:

```

2202 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

`\pagenumbering` With a KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399], use the k-tight package option in place of
`\dominitoc` tight; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:
`\tableofcontents`

```

2203 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2204 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2205 \begin{document}
2206 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2207 \dominitoc \tableofcontents

```

`\listoftables` In this document class, with the liststotoc class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a
`\mtcaddchapter` chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```

2208 \listoftables \mtcaddchapter

```

`\pagenumbering` With the bibtotoc class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after
`\chapter` `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the tocbind
`\setcounter` package.

`\appendix`

`\minitoc` 2209 \clearpage

`\section` 2210 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits

2211 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1

2212

2213 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}

2214

2215 Text.

2216

2217 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}

2218

2219 \begin{table}

2220 \centering

2221 \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}

2222 \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft

2223 \\\

2224 \underline{Ausbildender} & Hammer \\\

2225 Ausbildungsstätte & XXXXX Ort

2226 \end{longtable}

```

2227 \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2228 \end{table}
2229
2230 Text.
2231
2232 \appendix
2233 \chapter{Dokumente}
2234 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2235
2236 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2237 Text.\
2238 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2239 \end{document}
2240 </mtc-scr>

```

4.31 The mtc-syn.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

`\dominitoc` We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2241 <*mtc-syn>
2242 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2243 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2244 [2007/01/04]
2245 \usepackage{minitoc}
2246 \begin{document}
2247 \dominitoc

```

`\chapter*` Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument `\mtcaddchapter` is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2248 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2249 \mtcaddchapter % Added for a starred chapter
2250 % without entry in the ToC
2251 Dedication goes here
2252
2253 \chapter*{Abstract}
2254 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2255 % with an entry in the ToC
2256 Abstract goes here
2257
2258 \chapter*{Declaration}
2259 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2260 % with an entry in the ToC
2261 Declaration goes here

```

`\tableofcontents` The table of contents comes here. Looking at the *document.log* file shows that the minitoc files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

2262 `\tableofcontents \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)`

`\chapter` The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

`\minitoc`

`\section` 2263 `\chapter{Chapter One}`

2264 `\minitoc`

2265 `\section{Section 1} Some text.`

2266 `\section{Section 2} Some text.`

2267

2268 `\chapter{Chapter Two}`

2269 `\minitoc`

2270 `\section{Another Section 1}`

2271 `Some more text.`

2272 `\section{Another Section 2}`

2273 `Some more text.`

2274 `\end{document}`

2275 `</mtc-syn>`

4.32 The `mtc-tbi.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [472].

2276 `<*mtc-tbi>`

2277 `\documentclass[a4paper]{report}`

2278 `\ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}%`

2279 `[2007/01/04]`

`\dominitoc` We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option nottoc for the tocbibind package:

`\tableofcontents`

2280 `\usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind}`

2281 `\usepackage[tight]{minitoc}`

2282 `\begin{document}`

2283 `\dominitoc \tableofcontents`

`\mtcaddchapter` As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction⁷:

2284 `%% tocbibind compatibility`

2285 `%% not used if nottoc option :`

2286 `%% \mtcaddchapter[]`

`\chapter*` A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;

`\mtcaddchapter`

2287 `\chapter*{Introduction}`

2288 `\mtcaddchapter[Introduction]`

⁷ It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

<code>\chapter</code> Some normal chapters: <code>\minitoc</code> <code>\section</code> 2289 <code>\chapter{Title of chapter~1}</code> 2290 <code>\minitoc</code> 2291 <code>\section{as1} \section{as2}</code> 2292 <code>\chapter{Title of chapter~2}</code> 2293 <code>\minitoc</code> 2294 <code>\section{bs1} \section{bs2}</code>		2295 <code>\chapter{Title of chapter~3}</code> 2296 <code>\minitoc</code> 2297 <code>\section{cs1} \section{cs2}</code> 2298 <code>\chapter{Title of chapter~4}</code> 2299 <code>\minitoc</code> 2300 <code>\section{ds1} \section{ds2}</code>
<code>\chapter*</code> Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC: <code>\mtcaddchapter</code> 2301 <code>\chapter*{Conclusion}</code>		2302 <code>\mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]</code>
<code>\chapter*</code> Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC: <code>\mtcaddchapter</code> <code>\minitoc</code> <code>\section*</code> 2303 <code>\chapter*{Appendices}</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> 2304 <code>\mtcaddchapter[Appendices]</code> 2305 <code>\minitoc</code> 2306 <code>\section*{first appendix}</code> 2307 <code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}%</code>		2308 <code>{first appendix}</code> 2309 <code>\section*{second appendix}</code> 2310 <code>\addcontentsline{toc}{section}%</code> 2311 <code>{second appendix}</code>
<code>\listoffigures</code> The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the <code>tocbibind</code> package), so a correction must be applied: <code>\mtcaddchapter</code> 2312 <code>%% tocbibind compatibility</code>		2313 <code>\listoffigures \mtcaddchapter</code>
<code>thebibliography</code> The <code>tocbibind</code> package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the recommended correction: <code>\bibitem</code> <code>\adjustmtc</code> 2314 <code>\begin{thebibliography}{3}</code> 2315 <code>\bibitem {s1}{title ...}</code> 2316 <code>\end{thebibliography}</code> 2317 <code>%% tocbibind compatibility</code>		2318 <code>\adjustmtc</code> 2319 <code>\end{document}</code> 2320 <code></mtc-tbi></code>

4.33 The `mtc-tlc.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of the `article` class. It is the example of [330, page 58], modernized.

<pre>2321 *mtc-tlc) 2322 \documentclass{article}</pre>	<pre>2323 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}% 2324 [2007/01/04]</pre>
---	---

<pre>\setlength Dimensions of the text on the page: \textwidth \textheight 2325 \setlength{\textwidth}% 2326 {124.20126pt}</pre>	<pre>2327 \setlength{\textheight}% 2328 {19\baselineskip}</pre>
--	---

<pre>\setlength We load the minitoc package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for \stcindent the secttocs: \mtcsetfont \mtcsetdepth 2329 \usepackage{minitoc} 2330 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt} 2331 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%</pre>	<pre>2332 {\footnotesize} 2333 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}</pre>
---	---

<pre>\dosecttoc We prepare the secttocs, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed: \fakeableofcontents \section 2334 \begin{document} \secttoc 2335 \dosecttoc[e] \fakeableofcontents \subsection 2336 \subsubsection 2337 \section{Afghanistan} \secttoc 2338 \subsection{Geography} 2339 \subsubsection{Total area} 2340 647,500 km2 2341 \subsubsection{Land area} 2342 647,500 km2 2343 \subsection{History} \ldots</pre>	<pre>2344 2345 \section{Albania} \secttoc 2346 \subsection{Geography} 2347 \subsubsection{Total area} 2348 28,750 km2 2349 \subsubsection{Land area} 2350 27,400 km2 2351 \subsection{History} \ldots 2352 \end{document} 2353 \end{mtc-tlc}</pre>
--	--

4.34 The mtc-tlo.tex document file

The mtc-tlo.tex document file is described in section 2.46 on page 79.

4.35 The mtc-tsf.tex document file

This document⁸ shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfig package [132]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth. The old package fullpage [144] is used to have a wide text area.

⁸ It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the subfig package [132].

The preamble loads the subfig package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2354 <*mtc-tsf>
2355 \documentclass{report}
2356 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}[2008/04/03]%
2357 \usepackage{fullpage}
2358 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2359 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2360 \newdimen\testtemp
2361 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2362   \testtemp #1%
2363   \advance\testtemp .5pt \divide\testtemp 2%
2364   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2365     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2366   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2367   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2368     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt}\hfil}}
2369 %%
2370 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2371 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2372   \fbox{\vbox to 1in{%
2373     \vfil\hbox to 2in{\parbox{2in}{\centering #1}}\vfil
2374     \vbox to 0pt{\vss\hbox to 2in{\hfil\ru{1.1in}\hfil}}}}}

```

`\setcounter` The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and
`\dominilof` the list of figures:
`\listoffigures`

```

2375 \begin{document}
2376 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2} \dominilof \listoffigures
2377 \newpage

```

`\chapter` A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print its minilof twice, with different depths:
`\minilof`

```

\mtcskip 2378 \chapter{Reference Test}
\mtcsetdepth 2379 \minilof \mtcskip
2380 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2381 \minilof
2382
2383 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2384   \centering
2385   \subfigure{%
2386     \label{fig+A}\figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\(no opt)}}
2387   \quad
2388   \subfigure[]{}%
2389     \label{fig+B}\figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\(empty opt)}}\\
2390

```

```

2391 \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2392   \label{fig+C}\figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\(opt)}}
2393 \quad
2394 \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2395   \label{fig+D}\figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\(empty opt and opt)}}
2396 \quad
2397 \subfigure[][]{%
2398   \label{fig+E}\figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\(both empty opt)}}\\
2399
2400 \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2401   \label{fig+F}\figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\(both opt)}}
2402 \quad
2403 \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][]{%
2404   \label{fig+G}\figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\(opt and empty opt)}}
2405
2406 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2407 \label{fig+main}%
2408 \end{figure}
2409
2410 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2411 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2412 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2413 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2414 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2415
2416 \section{Centering Test}
2417 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2418 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2419 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2420 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2421 have centered labels.
2422 \end{document}
2423 \end{mtc-tsfc}

```

4.36 The mtc-vti.tex document file

The `mtc-vti.tex` example shows how to change the sectionnal titles when they appear in a mini-table: a section title (or a chapter title) can have variants in a parttoc or in a minitoc (similar effects are possible with figure ou table titles). Such entries are said “polymorphic” (section 1.4.13 on page 43). First, the preamble of the document, with utility packages:

```

2424 \documentclass[10pt,a4paper,oneside]{book}
2425 \ProvidesFile{mtc-vti.tex}[2008/06/26]%
2426 \usepackage{lipsum}
2427 \usepackage{txfonts}
2428 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2429 \begin{document}

```

`\parttoc` For the demonstration, we will use a `parttoc` and a `minitoc`, so we must prepare them:
`\minitoc`

```
2431 \dominitoc
2432 \doparttoc
```

`\ifinparttoc` We will use a multi-form title for the first section: a form to appear in the `parttoc` (“Alfa in parttoc”), a form to appear in the `minitoc` of the chapter (“Alfa in minitoc”), a form to appear elsewhere (“Alfa out subtoc”), and a form as title at the beginning of the section (“Alfa the first section”). So we define a command `\alfati` using the flags `\ifinparttoc` and `\ifinminitoc` to select which title is used in each of its instances.

```
2433 \newcommand\alfati{\ifinparttoc Alfa in parttoc
2434                               \else\ifinminitoc Alfa in minitoc
2435                               \else Alfa out subtoc
2436                               \fi
2437                               \fi}
```

`\ifinparttoc` But we can define a more general macro, `\varsecti`, with three arguments for the three
`\ifinminitoc` variants of a section title ⁹:
`\ifinsecttoc`

```
\DeclareRobustCommand 2438 \DeclareRobustCommand{\varsecti}[3]%
2439                     {\ifinparttoc{#1}\relax
2440                      \else\ifinminitoc{#2}\relax
2441                      \else{#3}\relax
2442                      \fi
2443                      \fi}
```

Then the document with a table of contents, a part with its `parttoc` and a chapter with its `minitoc`. And an other chapter. You can verify that the entry for the “Alfa” section varies in the main toc, the `parttoc`, the `minitoc` and the effective title of the section. Note that the variable title (here `\alfati`) should be defined *before* any use, like in the main toc or any minitable.



`\protect`

```
2444 \tableofcontents
2445 \part{Part~A}
2446 \parttoc
2447
2448 \chapter{One}
2449 \minitoc
2450 \section[\protect\alfati]{Alfa the first section}
2451 \lipsum[1]
```

We can use the more general macro `\varsecti` ¹⁰, with its three arguments given when the section begins; but that macro must be *protected* (or look at the `makerobust` [350] package by



⁹ You will eventually need to define similar macros for other sectioning commands or for figures or table titles; proceed with care from this model.

¹⁰ This macro is not part of the `minitoc` package, it is just an example.

Heiko OBERDIEK), or declared “robust” by `\DeclareRobustCommand` as above:

```
2452 \section[\varsecti{Bravo in parttoc}%
2453                      {Bravo in minitoc}%
2454                      {Bravo out of subtoc}]]% % in maintoc and headers
2455          {Bravo the second section}    % local title
2456 \lipsum[2]
```

`\mtcpolymtoc` But is is even easier to use a “polymorphic” entry in the optionnal argument ¹¹:

```
2457 \chapter{Two}
2458 \minitoc
2459 \section[\mtcpolymtoc%
2460          {Charlie in parttoc}%
2461          {Charlie in minitoc}%
2462          {Charlie in secttoc}}% % <- see/voir note
2463          {Charlie out subtoc}]]%
2464          {Charlie}
2465 \lipsum[3]
2466 \end{document}
2467 </mtc-vti>
```

¹¹They are no secttocs in a book-class document, but all the four arguments of `\mtcpolymtoc` must be specified, even empty!

Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

5.1	Introduction	151
5.2	Messages from the minitoc package	153
5.2.1	Informative messages	153
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	161
5.2.2	Warning messages	165
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	171
5.2.3	Error messages	187
5.3	Messages from the mtcoff package	201
5.3.1	Warning messages	201
5.4	Message from the mtcpachmem package	204

Tables

5.1	Message identifiers	152
------------	----------------------------	------------

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and is associates, mtcoff and mtcpachmem¹. The table 5.1 on the following page lists all messages; in this table, you can click on a message identifier to find quickly its meaning.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation,

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may vary.

Table 5.1: Message identifiers (click on a message identifier to see its meaning).

E0001	E0002	E0003	E0004	E0005	E0006	E0007	E0008	E0009	E0010
E0011	E0012	E0013	E0014	E0015	E0016	E0017	E0018	E0019	E0020
E0021	E0022	E0023	E0024	E0025	E0026	E0027	E0028	E0029	E0030
E0031	E0032	E0033	E0034	E0035	E0036	E0037	E0038	E0039	E0040
E0041	E0042	E0043							
F0001	F0002	F0003	F0004	F0005	F0006	F0007	F0008	F0009	
I0000									
I0001	I0002	I0003	I0004	I0005	I0006	I0007	I0008	I0009	I0010
I0011	I0012	I0013	I0014	I0015	I0016	I0017	I0018	I0019	I0020
I0021	I0022	I0023	I0024	I0025	I0026	I0027	I0028	I0029	I0030
I0031	I0032	I0033	I0034	I0035	I0036	I0037	I0038	I0039	I0040
I0041	I0042	I0043	I0044	I0045	I0046	I0047	I0048	I0049	I0050
I0051	I0052	I0053							
M0001									
W0001	W0002	W0003	W0004	W0005	W0006	W0007	W0008	W0009	W0010
W0011	W0012	W0013	W0014	W0015	W0016	W0017	W0018	W0019	W0020
W0021	W0022	W0023	W0024	W0025	W0026	W0027	W0028	W0029	W0030
W0031	W0032	W0033	W0034	W0035	W0036	W0037	W0038	W0039	W0040
W0041	W0042	W0043	W0044	W0045	W0046	W0047	W0048	W0049	W0050
W0051	W0052	W0053	W0054	W0055	W0056	W0057	W0058	W0059	W0060
W0061	W0062	W0063	W0064	W0065	W0066	W0067	W0068	W0069	W0070
W0071	W0072	W0073	W0074	W0075	W0076	W0077	W0078	W0079	W0080
W0081	W0082	W0083	W0084	W0085	W0086	W0087	W0088	W0089	W0090
W0091	W0092	W0093	W0094	W0095	W0096	W0097	W0098	W0099	

but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).

- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L^AT_EX does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.
- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but L^AT_EX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.

- *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
- *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
- *COMMAND* The name of the command.
- *COUNTER* The name of a \LaTeX counter.
- *document* The name of your document, without its `.tex` extension.
- *EXTENSION* The extension part of the name of a file.
- *FILE* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the `document.toc` file, the `document.lof` file, or the `document.lot` file).
- *INTERNAL_NAME* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
- *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
- *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
- *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
- *NEW_TITLE* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsetttitle`.
- *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
- *OFFSET* The new value of an offset redefined by `\mtcsetoffset`.
- *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
- *SEQUENCE* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
- *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
- *VALUE* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 464.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

I0000

Package: minitoc 2015/07/13 v61 Package minitoc (JPFD/et al.)

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFD” are my initials. This message has no real identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`, but, for indexing it, we use `I0000`.

I0001

```
Package minitoc Info: I0001
(minitoc)          *** minitoc package, version 61 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

I0002

```
Package minitoc Info: I0002
(minitoc)          Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

I0003

```
Package minitoc Info: I0003
(minitoc)          chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0004

```
Package minitoc Info: I0004
(minitoc)          chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

I0005

```
Package minitoc Info: I0005
(minitoc)          compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the `hyperref` package.

I0006

```
Package minitoc Info: I0006
(minitoc)             document.EXTENSION is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

I0007

```
Package minitoc Info: I0007
(minitoc)             Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0008

```
Package minitoc Info: I0008
(minitoc)             Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0009

```
Package minitoc Info: I0009
(minitoc)             Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)             Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document.maf* file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 52. This option is the default since version #48.

I0010

```
Package minitoc Info: I0010
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)             on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

I0011

```
Package minitoc Info: I0011
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)           on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

I0012

```
Package minitoc Info: I0012
(minitoc)           Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

I0013

```
Package minitoc Info: I0013
(minitoc)           \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)           "COUNTER" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0014

```
Package minitoc Info: I0014
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)           "\SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *INTERNAL_NAME* with the given *SEQUENCE*.

I0015

```
Package minitoc Info: I0015
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "macro" as "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *SEQUENCE* of font commands.

I0016

```
Package minitoc Info: I0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

I0017

```
Package minitoc Info: I0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "NEW_TITLE" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

I0018

```
Package minitoc Info: I0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)          "\INTERNAL_NAME" as
(minitoc)          "SEQUENCE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\INTERNAL_NAME` macro which the given sequence *SEQUENCE*.

I0019

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0019
(minitoc(hints))   No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))   in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

I0020

```
Package minitoc Info: I0020
(minitoc)          old version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

I0021

```
Package minitoc Info: I0021
(minitoc)           Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0022

```
Package minitoc Info: I0022
(minitoc)           Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

I0023

```
Package minitoc Info: I0023
(minitoc)           part level macros available.
```

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

I0024

```
Package minitoc Info: I0024
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINITOCs FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *FILE*.

I0025

```
Package minitoc Info: I0025
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *FILE*.

I0026

```
Package minitoc Info: I0026
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *FILE*.

I0027

```
Package minitoc Info: I0027
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

I0028

```
Package minitoc Info: I0028
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

I0029

```
Package minitoc Info: I0029
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

I0030

```
Package minitoc Info: I0030
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.
```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

I0031

```
Package minitoc Info: I0031
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

I0032

```

Package minitoc Info: I0032
(minitoc)           This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)           a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)           incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)           We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

I0033

```

Package minitoc Info: I0033
(minitoc)           Writing document.EXTENSION.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

I0034

```

Package minitoc Info: I0034
(minitoc)           PREPARING MINILOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *FILE*.

I0035

```

Package minitoc Info: I0035
(minitoc)           PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *FILE*.

I0036

```

Package minitoc Info: I0036
(minitoc)           PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM FILE on input line LINE.

```

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *FILE*.

I0037

```
Package minitoc Info: I0037
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominilot` command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *FILE*.

I0038

```
Package minitoc Info: I0038
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dopartlot` command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *FILE*.

I0039

```
Package minitoc Info: I0039
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM FILE on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosectlot` command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *FILE*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

I0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0040
(minitoc(hints))      The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))      loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))      You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))      documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.27 on page 70](#).

I0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0041
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.24 on page 66](#).

I0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0042
(minitoc(hints))      --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 64.

I0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0043
(minitoc(hints))      --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 50. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] compatible with `minitoc`.

I0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0044
(minitoc(hints))      --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))      for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `memoir` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 65.

I0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0045
(minitoc(hints))      The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))      has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))      on input line LINE.
```

A `minitoc` preparation command has been invoked more than once.

I0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0046
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section [1.5.5 on page 50](#).

I0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0047
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section [2.21 on page 64](#).

I0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0048
(minitoc(hints))          Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))          hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))          because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))          commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))          without any previous check.
```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

I0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: I0049
(minitoc(hints))          ==> You requested the hints option.
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints are eventually given below.
```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

I0050

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0050
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0051

```

Package minitoc Warning: I0051
(minitoc)                The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                The "LANGUAGE" language option will not be available.
(minitoc)                Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* file has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

I0052

```

Package minitoc Info: I0052
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset redefines the offset
(minitoc)                "OFFSET" as "VALUE" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetoffset` macro changes the value of the specified offset and forces it to *VALUE*.

I0053

```

Package minitoc Info: I0053
(minitoc)                You have loaded the PACK package;
(minitoc)                please be aware that the minitoc package
(minitoc)                facilities can not be used for new types
(minitoc)                of floats defined by the PACK package
```

The minitoc package does not manage new types of floats defined via the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484] and rotfloat [420] packages³.

³ As the trivfloat and rotfloat packages load the float package, this message will then appear twice!

5.2.2 Warning messages

W0001

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0001
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0002

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0002
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0003

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0003
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0004

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0004
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0005

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0005
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete (ignored)
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0006

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0006
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0007

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0007
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0008

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0008
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0009

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0009
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0010

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0010
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0011

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0011
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0012

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0012
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command.
Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0013

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0013
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                PARTTocs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command.
Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0014

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0014
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command.
Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0015

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0015
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0016

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0016
(minitoc)                No file FILE.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *FILE* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

W0017

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0017
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.
```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

W0018

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0018
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.
```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

W0019

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0019
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.
```


The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

W0020

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0020
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

W0021

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0021
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the minitoc package will still try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.



W0022

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0022
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation as soon as possible.



W0093

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0093
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                The full list of the missing language files
(minitoc)                is given in the W0094 warning message.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The full list of the missing language files is given in the W0094 warning message.

I0050

I0051

W0094

W0094

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0094
(minitoc)               Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)               ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

W0095

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0095
(minitoc)               \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)               Cannot use \mtcfixnomenclature without
(minitoc)               optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

W0096

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0096
(minitoc)               \mtcfixnomenclature can only be used
(minitoc)               with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)               which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

W0098

```
Package minitoc Warning: W0098
(minitoc)               --- You have used the \nofiles command
(minitoc)               in your preamble; all preparation commands
(minitoc)               in the body of the document will be ignored.
```

You have used the `\nofiles` command in the preamble of your document; hence the preparation commands will be ignored in your document. Please verify that the mini-table auxiliary files are in their final state. See page 28.

5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

W0023

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0023
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 62.

W0024

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0024
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))          in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the `document.log` file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

W0025

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0025
(minitoc(hints))          --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the alphanum package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0026

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0026
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the amsart document class which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0027

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0027
(minitoc(hints))      --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0028

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0028
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \chapter command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0029

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0029
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0030

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0030
(minitoc(hints))      --- The \part command is altered
                        after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0031

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0031
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))      loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))      You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))      ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



W0032

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0032
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))      too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))      dated of 2005/04/18 at least.

```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

W0033

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0033
(minitoc(hints))      The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 72.

W0034

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0034
(minitoc(hints))      The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `caption2` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 72. Note that the `caption2` package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the `caption` package.

W0035

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0035
(minitoc(hints))             The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.31 on page 72](#).

W0036

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0036
(minitoc(hints))             The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.31 on page 72](#).

W0037

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0037
(minitoc(hints))             The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.28 on page 70](#).

W0038

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0038
(minitoc(hints))             The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.33 on page 73](#).

W0039

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0039
(minitoc(hints))             --- The \section command is altered
                                after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

W0040

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0040
(minitoc(hints))      --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package. See note [21 on page 53](#).



W0041

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0041
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0042

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0042
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0043

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0043
(minitoc(hints))      You have attempted to insert
                      empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0044

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0044
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0045

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0045
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0046

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0046
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0047

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0047
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0048

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0048
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0049

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0049
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

W0050

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0050
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

W0051

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0051
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

W0052

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0052
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
                               command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

W0053

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0053
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section [1.9 on page 54](#).

W0054

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0054
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section [1.9 on page 54](#).

W0055

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0055
(minitoc(hints))           You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))           and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section [1.9 on page 54](#).

W0056

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0056
(minitoc(hints))           You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))           \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))           option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page [29](#).

W0057

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0057
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

W0058

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0058
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

W0059

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0059
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

W0060

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0060
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

W0061

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0061
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

W0062

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0062
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

W0063

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0063
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

W0064

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0064
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

W0065

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0065
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

W0066

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0066
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0067

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0067
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0068

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0068
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0069

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0069
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0070

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0070
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0071

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0071
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0072

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0072
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

W0073

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0073
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

W0074

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0074
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

W0075

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0075
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0076

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0076
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0077

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0077
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0078

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0078
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0079

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0079
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

W0080

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0080
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

W0081

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0081
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))           but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

W0082

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0082
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

W0083

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0083
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))           but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

W0084

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0084
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))           with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))           but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))           which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))           Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))           use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0085

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0085
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is *incompatible* with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol.



W0086

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0086
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 75.

W0087

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0087
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 75.

W0088

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0088
(minitoc(hints))      The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `romannum` package alters the numbering of some sectioning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.40 on page 76.

W0089

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0089
(minitoc(hints))           The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.41 on page 76](#).

W0090

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0090
(minitoc(hints))           The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.42 on page 76](#).

W0091

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0091
(minitoc(hints))           The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The captcont package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.43 on page 76](#).

W0092

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0092
(minitoc(hints))           The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The hangcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section [2.47 on page 79](#).

W0097

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0097
(minitoc(hints))           --- The flowfram package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))           with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the flowfram package which is *incompatible* with the minitoc package, because it has its own definitions for minitocs. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.



W0099

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: W0099
(minitoc(hints))      --- The titlesec package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))      It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))      with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the titlesec package, but it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. See note [21 on page 53](#).



5.2.3 Error messages

E0001

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0001
(minitoc)      But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixglossary macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0002

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0002
(minitoc)      But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the \mtcfixindex macro; even \part is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0003

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0003
(minitoc)      Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

E0004

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0004
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

E0005

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0005
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

E0006

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0006
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0007

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0007
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

E0008

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0008
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0009

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0009
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0010

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0010
(minitoc) \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0011

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0011
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc) (ARG1).
(minitoc) It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc) (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0012

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0012
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc) (ARG2).
(minitoc) It should be a feature param
(minitoc) (before, after, open, close, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, `open`, `close`, or `thispagestyle`.

E0013

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0013
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

E0014

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0014
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

E0015

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0015
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, `...`, `sectlot`).

E0016

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0016
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)          pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

E0017

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0017
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)          argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0018

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0018
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)          argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```


The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists⁴:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

E0019

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0019
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0020

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0020
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists⁴:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

⁴ O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

E0021

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0021
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0022

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0022
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

E0023

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0023
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are *incompatible*. You should verify them.



E0024

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0024
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

E0025

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0025
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are *incompatible*. One is likely to be misspelt.



E0026

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0026
(minitoc)          The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)          is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0027

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0027
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0028

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0028
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.
```

Your version of the memoir class is really *incompatible* with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.



E0029

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0029
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

E0030

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0030
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

E0031

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0031
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

E0032

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0032
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

E0033

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0033
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

E0034

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0034
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

E0035

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0035
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

E0036

```

! Package minitoc Error: E0036
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue

```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

E0037

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0037
(minitoc)                The \COMMAND command is incompatible
(minitoc)                with the document class.
```

See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
 Type H <return> for immediate help.
 ...

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (`\COMMAND`) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

E0038

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0038
(minitoc)                Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)                A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)                We will try to continue with
(minitoc)                current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory `LANGUAGE.mld` language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

E0039

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0039
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixnomenclature not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

E0040

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0040
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixnomenclature
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixnomenclature` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

E0041

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0041
(minitoc)                \mtcsetoffset attempts to use
(minitoc)                an undefined mini-table type (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You are trying to set the offset for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

E0042

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0042
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

E0043

```
! Package minitoc Error: E0043
(minitoc)          \mtcsetoffset: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetoffset` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

5.3 Messages from the `mtcoff` package

The `mtcoff` package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

5.3.1 Warning messages

F0001

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0001
(mtcoff)          \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)          by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)          on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0002

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0002
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0003

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0003
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0004

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0004
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

F0005

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0005
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

F0006

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0006
(mtcoff)      \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)      by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)      on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

F0007

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0007
(mtcoff)      You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)      file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)      to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)      DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)      document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)      \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)      and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the *document.log* file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

F0008

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0008
(mtcoff)      The macro \kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)      should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)      on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

F0009

```
Package mtcoff Warning: F0009
(mtcoff)      The macro \STRINGoffset
(mtcoff)      should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)      on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\STRINGoffset` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the horizontal position of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: M0001

Package `mtcpatchmem` Info: `mtcpatchmem` package to patch the `memoir` class.

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter [12 on page 465](#).

Chapter 6

Jargon

Contents

“.”	206	E	215	J	220	O	232	T	238
A	207	F	215	K	220	P	233	U	240
B	209	G	218	L	220	Q	235	V	240
C	210	H	218	M	222	R	235	W	240
D	214	I	219	N	229	S	236	X	241

Tables

6.1	Category codes	211	6.8	Most common font series	230
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	212	6.9	Most common font shapes	231
6.3	Standard document classes	213	6.10	Most common font widths	231
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	214	6.11	The five font parameters of some fonts	231
6.5	Various encodings	216	6.12	Author commands for fonts	232
6.6	Most common font encodings	230	6.13	Some systems derived from T _E X and L ^A T _E X	233
6.7	Most common font families	230			

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages (often from the abstract), and from [4, 5, 137, 140, 266, 282, 289–291, 309, 310, 315, 330, 343, 344, 355, 356, 458].



.aux	The suffix of the name for an <i>auxiliary</i> file of a \LaTeX document. It carries some information from a \LaTeX run to the next.
.cls	The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via <code>\documentclass</code> .
.dtx	The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a \LaTeX package or class. This file is often associated with a <code>.ins</code> file to generate the package or class. Compiling a <code>.dtx</code> file with \LaTeX generates the documentation.
.F	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Fnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.G	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Gnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.H	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Hnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.ins	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a \LaTeX package or class. When compiled with \LaTeX , it extracts the files of the package or class from an <code>.dtx</code> file.
.lof	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
.log	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
.lot	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
.M	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Mnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.maf	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
.mld	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
.mlf	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mlfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.mlo	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <code>.mld</code> file; hence the <code>.mld</code> file must load a <code>.mlo</code> file.
.mlt	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mltnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.mtc	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.mtcnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.P	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Pnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.

.plf	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.plfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.plt	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.pltmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.ptc	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.ptcnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.S	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Snn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
.slf	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.slfnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.slt	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.sltmn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.
.stc	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.stcnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
.sty	The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via <code>\usepackage</code> .
.T	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Tnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.tex	The suffix of the name of a T _E X or L ^A T _E X normal source file.
.toc	The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
.U	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Unn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.V	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <code>.Vnn</code> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.

A

absolute numbering The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

abstract The abstract package [470] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

I0040

adjustment Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`,

`\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `\mtcfixnomenclature`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

afterpage The `afterpage` [115] package is used to add code to be executed *after* the next page break.

alnumsec The `alnumsec` package [274] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. Its output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [103]), but you can use the standard \LaTeX sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.42 on page 76).

W0090

alphanum The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [103], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0025

\mathcal{AMS} The American Mathematical Society ¹. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.

W0026

W0027

I0041

amsart, **amsart.cls** A document class for articles [8], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0026

amsbook, **amsbook.cls** A document class for books [8], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the `minitoc` package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 66.

I0041

amsproc, **amsproc.cls** A document class for conference proceedings [8], provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0027

Antomega `Antomega` [272] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* (Λ), based on the original `omega.sty` file of the *Omega* project (Ω). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (.mld) use titles taken from `Antomega`: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The `appendix` package [471] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for instance, for per chapter/section appendices. If this

I0042

¹ <http://www.ams.org>

package is used with minitoc, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 64).

Arabi *Arabi* [243] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in *arabi.mld* and *farsi3.mld* come from the *arabic.ldf* and *farsi.ldf* files of this system.

ArabT_EX *ArabT_EX* [276, 277] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in *arab.mld* (or *arabic.mld*), *arab2.mld* and *hebrew.mld* come from *ArabT_EX*, while those of *hebrew2.mld* come from *babel* [60, 61].

ArmT_EX *ArmT_EX* [142] is a package (prepared by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare L^AT_EX documents in the armenian language. The titles in *armenian.mld* come from *ArmT_EX*.

article A standard L^AT_EX document class [282]. It has sectionning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the unavailable chapter level).

\AtBeginDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

\AtEndDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

autoconfiguration Since version #28, minitoc detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

auxiliary During the preparation of a document, the L^AT_EX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are *document.aux* (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), *document.toc* for the table of contents, *document.lof* for the list of figures, and *document.lot* for the list of tables. The minitoc package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are *document.extension*, the table 1.11 on page 55 lists the possible extensions. See also the `.maf` extension above.

B

babel The *babel* package [60, 61] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write L^AT_EX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come directly from the *babel* package.

- BangTeX** A package for typesetting documents in the bangla (bengali) language using the TeX/LaTeX systems; see [362].
- before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.
- BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in LaTeX documents. Distributed with LaTeX. See [315, 366, 367, 417].
- bibtopic** A LaTeX package [25] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.
- bibunits** The bibunits package [210] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `natbib` [145, 146], `overcite` [17] and KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399].
- book** A standard LaTeX document class [282]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).
- booktabs** This nice package [165] helps to the preparation of better tables, *without* vertical rules nor double rules.

C

- calc** The `calc` [441] package makes easier the numeric computations (on counters and dimensions) when preparing a LaTeX document.
- cappuccino** See “minutes” below.
- captcont** The `captcont` package [131] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [132] in particular. W0091
- caption** The `caption` package [421, 422, 424] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages. W0033
- caption2** The² `caption2` package [423] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular `caption` package [421, 422, 424] and has been superseed by the new release of the regular `caption` package version 3.0 in December 2003. `caption2` is still W0034

² This text comes from the documentation of the `caption` package. The `caption` and `caption2` packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

Table 6.1: Category codes

	Category	Meaning
0	Escape character	(\ usually)
1	Beginning of group	{ usually)
2	End of group	} usually)
3	Math shift	(\\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab	(& usually)
5	End of line	(<i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter	(# usually)
7	Superscript	(^ usually)
8	Subscript	(_ usually)
9	Ignored character	(<i>null</i> usually)
10	Space	($_$ usually)
11	Letter	(A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character	(none of the above or below)
13	Active character	(~ usually)
14	Comment character	(% usually)
15	Invalid character	(<i>delete</i> usually)

some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the `caption` package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the `caption2` package should be used instead of the `caption` package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

catcode Short for “category code”. In³ the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that \TeX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that \TeX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The \TeX book*” led you to believe that there were just two types — the escape character and the others — and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The `ccaption` package [474] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

W0035

³ This definition is taken from “*The \TeX book*” [263, 265].

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

chnpage The `chnpage` package (by Peter R. WILSON) provides commands to change the page layout in the middle of a document, and to robustly check for typesetting on odd or even pages.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the `minitoc` package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and `co.`). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in `minitoc` version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 49.

chapterbib The `chapterbib` package [19] allows multiple bibliographies in a \LaTeX document, including items `\cite'd` in more than one bibliography. Despite the name “chapterbib”, *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.77.2 on page 408.

CJK The CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare \LaTeX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into \TeX since some of the values used for the encodings’ second bytes are reserved for control characters: ‘{’, ‘}’, and ‘\’. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in \LaTeX ; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [309, 310]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the `minitoc` package uses the `.mlo` files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.14 on page 44.

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article [282]	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
proc [281]	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc [116]	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltnews [248]	For preparing the announcement of a L ^A T _E X release; analog to the article class.
report [282]	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
book [282]	For real books.
letter [283]	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides [324]	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT _E X ^a instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

^a <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

class The **class**⁴ is the first information L^AT_EX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes [282]. The L^AT_EX 2_ε distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 60.

close A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately after (*close*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 137.

cmk An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.

CMR For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in english.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [262] designed by Donald E. KNUTH for T_EX. Initially they were built with METAFONT [149, 264] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

⁴ This note is extracted from [356], then adapted.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

counter A \TeX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in \TeX , but \LaTeX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from \TeX , $\varepsilon\text{\TeX}$ [105], allows more counters. Omega (Ω) also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the \TeX related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. See <http://ctan.org>.

D

dblaccnt I needed to use the dblaccnt [328] package to typeset “The pdf \TeX Program” entry [204] in the bibliography, because its author’s first name contains a double accent (Thế Thành HàN).

de.comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about \TeX and \LaTeX , in german.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the secnumdepth counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the tocdepth counter; see table 6.4 for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the parttocs, minitocs, and secttocs, using the values of the parttocdepth, minitocdepth, and secttocdepth counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like partlofdepth, partlotdepth, minilofdepth, minilotdepth, sectlofdepth, and sectlotdepth.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For \TeX (and \LaTeX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for T_EX* (Devanāgarī) package [364] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with T_EX. Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for T_EX.

E

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the minitoc package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 10 on page 245.

en-mtc.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [196] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended T_EX). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [128, 151, 448]), etc. See table 6.5 on the following page and [292, 323].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

ε-T_EX ε-T_EX [105] is an extented version of T_EX, with much more registers and many new primitives; it supports also left-to-right and right-to-left writing.

ethiop A L^AT_EX package [44] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [60, 61].

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *entension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 54 and 2.5 on page 58. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

F

farsi.sty See FarsiT_EX below.

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
ansinew	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
applemac	Macintosh encoding.
ascii	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
cp1250	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
cp1251	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
cp1252	Synonym for ansinew.
cp1257	Windows 1257 (Baltic) code page.
cp437	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
cp437de	IBM 437 code page (German version).
cp850	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
cp852	IBM 852 code page.
cp855	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
cp865	IBM 865 code page.
cp866	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
decmulti	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
latin1	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
latin2	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
latin3	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, latin5 is the preferred character set for Turkish.
latin4	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
latin5	Is essentially the same as latin1, except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
next	Next encoding.

FarsiTeX A package [162] to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L^AT_EX2.09. See also sections 13.54 on page 494 and 13.55 on page 495.

features A feature (for the minitoc package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Five features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the whole mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the whole mini-table), a “open” feature, executed just before inserting the mini-table file, a “close” feature, executed just after inserting the mini-table file, and a “pagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

filecontents A special \LaTeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.14 on page 44) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 49.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

float This package [302] (by Anselm LINGNAU) improves the interface for defining floating objects such as figures and tables in \LaTeX . It adds the notion of a ‘float style’ that governs appearance of floats. New kinds of floats may be defined using a `\newfloat` command analogous to `\newtheorem`. This package also incorporates the functionality of David P. CARLISLE’s package [here](#), giving floating environments a [H] option which means ‘PUT IT HERE’ (as opposed to the standard [h] option which means ‘You may put it here if you like’).

I0053

\FloatBarrier A macro from the `placeins` package [15]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

floatrow This package [285] (by Olga G. LAPKO) is an extension of the `float` package [302] (by Anselm LINGNAU), reusing its code, with extensions from the `rotfloat` package [420] (by Axel SOMMERFELDT).

I0053

flowfram This package [433, 434] is designed to enable you to create text *frames* in a document such that the contents of the `document` environment flow from one frame to the next in the order that they were defined. This is useful for creating posters or magazines or any other form of document that does not conform to the standard one or two column layout. As this package defines its own system of `minitocs`, it is *incompatible* with the `minitoc` package.

W0097

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `fmk` must have been run previously. See item 10 on page 245.

fncychap The `fncychap` package [301] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.38 on page 75).

W0086

fr.comp.text.tex The Usenet newsgroup about \TeX and \LaTeX , in french.

franc.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

frbib.sty A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fr-mtc.bst A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [196] tool to add an URL field.

frnew.sty A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

G

geometry The geometry package [447] provides a flexible and complete user interface to page dimensions. You can specify them by using intuitive parameters to get your desired page layout. For instance, if you want to set margins (the left, right, top and bottom margins) to 2cm from each edge of the paper, what you need is just:

```
\usepackage[margin=2cm]{geometry}
```

This powerful (and recommended) package is used in some example documents and in this documentation.

guarani A \LaTeX package to compose text in Guaraní, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [45] and section 13.74 on page 504.

H

hangcaption The hangcaption package [250] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, \LaTeX 2.09).

W0092

Hindi For the Hindi language, see the Devanāgarī package [364] above. The minitoc package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available. See also [148] about the Hindi language.

hint An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).

hints An option of the minitoc package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some minitoc commands, the consistency between main minitoc commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).

H_ΛT_EX A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* (Λ) (see below). Written by Un KOAUNGHI [266, in korean]. It uses special Hangûl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.

hyperlink In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.

hyperref The hyperref package [390] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in L^AT_EX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for HyperT_EX dvi processors, for embedded pdfmark commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (dvips and dvipsone), for dviwindo, for pdfT_EX, for T_EX4ht, and for VTEX's pdf and HTML backends.

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperT_EX project, described in [371]. It extends the functionality of all the L^AT_EX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

W00023

W00028

W00030

W00039

I

ifmtarg The ifmtarg package [483] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty ("empty" meaning zero or more spaces only).

ifthen The ifthen package [118] implements an `\ifthenelse` command for L^AT_EX 2_ε.

imk An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 10 on page 245.

insection The insection package option loads the placeins package [15] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use `sectlofs` or `sectlots` in your document. See section 1.2 on page 30.

W00056

insertion The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are (see table 3.9 on page 87):

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 242.

J

\jobname A \TeX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by \TeX (or \LaTeX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The jura class [103], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents.

W0029

K

Kannada \TeX A project [485] to use \LaTeX for typesetting in the Kannada language. See section 13.101 on page 517.

k-loose A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the loose package option for standard classes.

k-tight A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the tight package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [343, 344, 399] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (scrartcl, scrbook, scrlettr, scrlltr2, and scrreprt) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

I0043

The scrbook, scrreprt, and scrartcl classes are compatible with the minitoc package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 50). The scrlettr and scrlltr2 have no sectionning commands, so the minitoc package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the \LaTeX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard \LaTeX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes book, report, and article. There is also a replacement for the standard class letter.

L

Lambda The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega (Ω) is called “*Lambda*” (Λ).

- Lamed** The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph (ℵ) is called “*Lamed*” (ל).
- \LaTeX** \LaTeX [279] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. \LaTeX uses \TeX [263, 265] as its formatting engine (from [356]).
- In fact, \LaTeX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. \LaTeX was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [279]. It uses the \TeX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days \LaTeX is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.
- In 1994 the \LaTeX package was (deeply) updated by the \LaTeX 3 team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of \LaTeX 2.09 some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called \LaTeX 2_ε.
- \LaTeX is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to \LaTeX in an ASCII environment, you type LaTeX. \LaTeX 2_ε is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed LaTeX2e.
- \LaTeX 2.09** An obsolete version of the \LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it⁵. Use the current version of \LaTeX 2_ε, which is supported and much more efficient.
- \LaTeX 2_ε** The current version of the \LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.
- \LaTeX 3** The future version of \LaTeX , whose development is still in progress.
- leaders** A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regularly spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).
- letter** A standard document class [283] to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectionning commands nor structure, the minitoc package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.
- lipsum** The lipsum package [212] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).
- listfiles** An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the \LaTeX run) in the *document.maf* file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 52.
- LOF, LoF** An acronym for “list of figures”.
- lofdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

⁵ Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.



loose An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.

LOT, LoT An acronym for “list of tables”.

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

ltxdoc A standard \LaTeX document class [116], for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

ltnews A standard \LaTeX document class [248], for preparing the announcement of a \LaTeX release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

M

\makeatletter and **\makeatother** Many⁶ internal commands of \LaTeX , of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands *should never be used in a package or class file*.

makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

mcaption The `mcaption` package [228] provides a `margincap` environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

MCE A minimal [complete] example is the smallest possible complete document that illustrates a problem. A minimal example file should not include any packages or code that do not contribute to the problem, but must include a document class and the `document` environment (from [432]). See also [384], <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=minxmpl> and <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=askquestion> for good advices.

⁶ Informations from [330, page 843].



memoir, memoir.cls A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [479, 481, 482]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 65.

mini-bibliography See **minibbl** below.

mini-list Synonym for “mini-table” below.

mini-lof See “minilof” below.

mini-lot See “minilot” below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectionning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only tables of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See “minitoc” below.

minibbl Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 60.

minilof A list of figures for a chapter.

minilofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

minilot A list of tables for a chapter.

minilotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

minitoc A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

minitoc-fr.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the minitoc package.

minitoc-fr.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the minitoc package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `minitoc-fr.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `minitoc-fr.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc-fr.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc-fr.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc-fr.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

E0028
I0020
I0027
I0030
I0032
I0044
M0001

- minitoc-fr.ps** The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` script).
- minitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.bug** A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 56.
- minitocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.
- minitoc.dtx** The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.
- minitoc-hyper.sty** A special version [454] of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE, Didier VERNA and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS to work with the powerful `hyperref` package [390]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with `hyperref`. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package [454] is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*
- minitoc.ins** The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with \LaTeX produces most of the files of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.l** A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in `minitoc.l` are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.
- minitoc.lan** A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.pdf** The english documentation in PDF format.
- minitoc.pre** This file contains a \LaTeX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.ps** The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` scripts).
- minitoc.sty** This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.sum** A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 80.
- minitoc.tds.zip** A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.
- minutes** The minutes package [300] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter! ⁷

⁷ The little cups ☕ come from the `marvosym` package [227].



MonTeX MonTeX [137, 140] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russienc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [139]. See also:

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_writing_systems
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_language
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mongolian_script
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Clear_script
<http://www.indiana.edu/~mongsoc/mong/language.htm>
<http://www.viahistoria.com/SilverHorde/main.html?research/MongolScripts.html>
http://www.krysstal.com/writing_evolution.html
<http://mongolxel.webz.cz/qaguchin/index.htm>

The following description is extracted from [140].

MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian.

Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, \xalx{H/h}) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mon-

golian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root `bicig` whereas the Manju commands have the name root `bithe`.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [138] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personnal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of file-names with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

mtc-2c.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout. See section 4.1 on page 91.

mtc-2nd.tex An example of document using the minitoc package and its `french2` language option. See section 4.2 on page 92.

mtc-add.bib A small bibliographic data base for the `mtc-add.tex` and `mtc-ads.tex` example documents. See section 4.4 on page 96.

mtc-3co.tex An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.3 on page 93.

mtc-add.tex An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the `tocbibind` package [472] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 96.

mtc-ads.tex An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the `tocbibind` package [472] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 100. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.

mtc-amm.tex An example file showing the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document with the minitoc package. See section 4.6 on page 105.

mtc-apx.tex An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices. See section 2.25 on page 67.

mtc-art.tex An example of document (article class) using the minitoc package. See section 4.8 on page 105.

mtc-bk.tex An example of document (book or report class) using the minitoc package. See section [4.9 on page 110](#).

mtc-bo.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout and using the tocloft package [\[469\]](#). See section [4.10 on page 115](#).

mtc-ch0.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred first chapter. See section [4.11 on page 119](#).

mtc-cri.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with starred parts and chapters. See section [4.12 on page 121](#).

mtc-fko.tex An example file showing the problem of fonts in minitocs when using the scrbook class. See section [4.13 on page 121](#).

mtc-fo1.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section [4.14 on page 122](#).

mtc-fo2.tex Another example file showing the use of the minitoc package with changing some fonts. See section [4.15 on page 123](#).

mtc-gap.tex An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands. See section [2.44 on page 76](#).

mtc-hi1.tex An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments. See section [2.25 on page 68](#).

mtc-hi2.tex An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:

- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
- `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.

See section [2.25 on page 69](#).

mtc-hia.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an article class document. See section [4.19 on page 125](#).

mtc-hir.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a report class document. See section [4.20 on page 126](#).

mtc-hop.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the scrbook document class. See section [4.21 on page 127](#).

mtc-liv.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a book with customized table of contents and minitocs. See section [4.22 on page 128](#).

mtc-mem.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class. See section [4.23 on page 132](#).

mtc-mm1.tex An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class, if you want to change some fonts. See section [4.24 on page 133](#).

mtc-mu.tex A document using a minitoc set in a `wrapfigure` environment with the `wrapfig` package [\[18\]](#). See section [4.25 on page 134](#).

- mtc-nom.tex** A document showing an interaction between the minitoc package and the nomencl package [456]. See section 4.26 on page 136.
- mtc-ocf.tex** A document using the open and close features to prepare a minitoc on three columns. See section 4.27 on page 137.
- mtc-ofs.tex** A document using the open and close features to prepare a minitoc on three columns and \mtcsetoffset to shift the minitoc to align it on the left. See section 4.28 on page 138.
- mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [130]. See section 4.29 on page 140.
- mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399], scrreprt. See section 4.30 on page 141.
- mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters. See section 4.31 on page 143.
- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocblind package [472]. See section 4.32 on page 144.
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [330, page 58], modernized. See section 4.33 on page 145.
- mtc-tlo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [469] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables. See section 2.46 on page 79.
- mtc-tsfc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [132]. See section 4.35 on page 146.
- mtc-vti.tex** An example file showing the use of the \mtcpolymtoc command and explaining “polymorphic entries”. See section 4.36 on page 148.
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands \PackageInfo, \PackageWarning, \PackageWarningNoLine, and \PackageError by adding an optional argument for an unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode (mu means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.



M0001

- multibib** The multibib package [211] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [210] or chapterbib [19], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.
- multicol** The multicol package [325] defines the multicols environment (with a “s”) to typeset text on several columns. Used in some example documents.
- multitoc** This package [414] allows setting only the table of contents, list of figures and/or list of tables in two or more columns (using the multicol package [325], of course). The number of columns can be configured via commands; the multicolumn toc(s) can be selected via package options. The mtc-3co.tex example document uses this package; see section 4.3 on page 93.

N

- natbib** It is a L^AT_EX 2_ε (but with some support for L^AT_EX 2.09) package [145, 146] to act as generalized interface for standard and non-standard bibliographic style files (BibT_EX).
- needspace** The needspace package [468] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.
- NFSS** The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection system [291] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. L^AT_EX 2_ε includes NFSS release 2 as standard.
- Every text font in L^AT_EX has five *attributes*:
- encoding** This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L^AT_EX are K_NU_TH’s “T_EX text” encoding (OT1), and the “T_EX text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the T_EX Users Group members during a T_EX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [292, 323].
 - family** The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For instance, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K_NU_TH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.
 - series** How heavy or expanded a font is. For instance, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.
 - shape** The form of the letters within a font family. For instance, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.
 - size** The design size of the font, for instance “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L^AT_EX. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6 on the next page.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for instance a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	\LaTeX extended text (“Cork encoding”)
TS1	\LaTeX symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	\LaTeX text (Cyrillic)
T3	\LaTeX phonetic alphabet
TS3	\LaTeX phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	\LaTeX text (African languages)
T5	\LaTeX text (Vietnamese)
T7	\LaTeX text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	\TeX text (as defined by Donald E. KNUTH)
OT2	\TeX text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	\TeX text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	\TeX text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	\TeX math italic (Donald E. KNUTH)
OMS	\TeX math symbols (Donald E. KNUTH)
OMX	\TeX math large symbols (Donald E. KNUTH)
X2	\LaTeX extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
L7x	Encoding used for the Lithuanian language
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some \VTeX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software
PD1	Implements the PDFDocEncoding for use with \LaTeX 2 ϵ ’s NFSS.
PU	Implements the Unicode encoding for use with \LaTeX ’s NFSS.

Table 6.7: Most common font families

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Family	Description	Series	Description
cmr	Computer Modern Roman	ul	Ultra light
cmss	Computer Modern Sans	e1	Extra light
cmtt	Computer Modern Typewriter	l	Light
cmm	Computer Modern Math Italic	s1	Semi light
cmsy	Computer Modern Math Symbols	m	Medium
cmex	Computer Modern Math Extensions	sb	Semi bold
ptm	Adobe Times	b	Bold
phv	Adobe Helvetica	eb	Extra bold
pcr	Adobe Courier	bx	Bold extended
lazy	Additional \LaTeX symbols	ub	Ultra bold
		c	Condensed

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
n	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
it	Italic
sl	Slanted (or “oblique”)
sc	Caps and small caps
u	Unslanted (upright italic)

Table 6.10: Most common font widths

Width	%	Description
uc	50.0	Ultra condensed
ec	50.0	Extra condensed
c	50.0	Condensed
sc	50.0	Semi condensed
m	50.0	Medium
sc	50.0	Semi extended
c	50.0	Extended
ec	50.0	Extra extended
uc	50.0	Ultra extended

Table 6.11: The five font parameters of some fonts

L ^A T _E X specification					Font	T _E X name
OT1	cmr	m	n	10	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	cmr10
OT1	cmss	m	sl	1pc	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	cmssi12
OML	cmm	m	it	10pt	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	cmmi10
T1	ptm	b	it	1in	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	ptmb8t at 1in

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7 on the preceding page. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8 on the page before. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9. The most common values for the font width are listed in table 6.10.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for instance 10pt or 1.5in or 3mm; if no unit is specified, pt is assumed. These five parameters specify every L^AT_EX font, see table 6.11, for instance.

These five parameters are displayed whenever L^AT_EX gives an overfull box warning, for instance:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

The table 6.12 on the next page lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes⁸.

nocheckfiles A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the checkfiles package option (see above).

nohints A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the hints package option (see above).

nolistfiles An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the listfiles above. See section 1.7 on page 52.

⁸ The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

Table 6.12: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	<code>cmr</code>
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	<code>cmss</code>
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	<code>cmtt</code>
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	<code>m</code>
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	<code>bx</code>
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	<code>n</code>
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	<code>it</code>
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	<code>sl</code>
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	<code>sc</code>
<code>\tiny</code>	size	<code>5pt</code>
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	<code>7pt</code>
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	<code>8pt</code>
<code>\small</code>	size	<code>9pt</code>
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	<code>10pt</code>
<code>\large</code>	size	<code>12pt</code>
<code>\Large</code>	size	<code>14.4pt</code>
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	<code>17.28pt</code>
<code>\huge</code>	size	<code>20.74pt</code>
<code>\Huge</code>	size	<code>24.88pt</code>
<code>\textnormal</code>	normal	normal text

notoccite This option of the minitoc package loads the notoccite package [14] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 52.

O

Omega The Omega typesetting system⁹ (Ω) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of T_EX that is aimed primarily at improving T_EX’s multilingual abilities.

When the T_EX program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then T_EX has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze T_EX, mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the T_EX code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of T_EX. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters

⁹ Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [217, 218, 221, 378, 379]. See <http://omega.enstb.org/> for more information.

Table 6.13: Some systems derived from T_EX and L^AT_EX

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Omega & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \\ & & + & & & & + \\ \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\ \hline & & \aleph & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \beth \end{array}$$

to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for T_EX users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The L^AT_EX format (in the T_EX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” (Λ). Extending Omega with the ε-T_EX [105] extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” (ℵ) [49, 201] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The L^AT_EX for Aleph is known as “*Lamed*” (ℓ). There is an experimental system, named L^UA_{T_E}X [230, 231], which will regroup PDF_{T_E}X, Aleph, ε-T_EX and other developments. A promising development is X₃T_EX [256] by Jonathan KEW, with X₃L^AT_EX.

open A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed immediately before (*open*) the insertion of the auxiliary file for a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48. See the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file, in section 4.27 on page 137.

P

package Packages¹⁰ are a very important feature of L^AT_EX. These are extensions to the basic L^AT_EX commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the L^AT_EX basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the L^AT_EX3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.

¹⁰This info is taken from [270, page 12–13] and adapted.

- **$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society¹¹, should be in any installation¹².
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ usage, but all are useful.

pagestyle A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 48.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

partlot A list of tables for a part.

partlotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

parttoc A table of contents for a part.

parttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the parttoCs.

PDF Portable Document Format [183]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

placeins The placeins package [15] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flafter` package (described in [288] and [330, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 29.

W0031
W0032
W0084
W0085

placeins.txt A plain text file containing the documentation of the placeins package [15].

$\mathcal{P}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ A version of $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ customized for the polish (`polski`) language. It has been replaced by the `polski` package. See [357, 463]. But the *same* name was referring also to a version of $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ customized for the japanese language, $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X} 2_{\epsilon}$ [239, 254].



pmk An example of shell script to prepare the minitoc package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 10 on page 245.

polymorphic entry An entry in the TOC, LOF or LOT which changes its aspect depending on the place where it appears (main TOC, minitable, etc.); see section 1.4.13 on page 43.

PostScript A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

¹¹<http://www.ams.org>

¹²They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

preamble In the main file of a \LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

preparation The preparation commands of the `minitoc` package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are (see table 3.9 on page 87):

<code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , <code>\dopartlot</code> ,	(part level)
<code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> , <code>\dominilot</code> ,	(chapter level)
<code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , <code>\dosectlot</code> ,	(section level)
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	(all levels)

proc A standard \LaTeX document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the `minitoc` package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

pseudo-chapter Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the `minitoc` package. See section 1.3.4 on page 33.

Q

quotchap The `quotchap` package [442] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2 ϵ document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.39 on page 75).

W0087

R

README is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the `minitoc` package, plus some useful infos.

report A standard \LaTeX document class [282]. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

rmk An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the `minitoc` package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 10 on page 245.

romannum The `romannum` package [480] changes the numbers (for sectioning commands) generated by \LaTeX from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [466]. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.40 on page 76).

W0088

- rotating** The rotating [389] package performs all the different sorts of rotation one might like, including complete figures.
- rotfloat** The packrotfloat [420] package provides commands to define new floats of various styles (`plain`, `boxed`, `ruled`, and userdefined ones); the rotating package [389] provides new environments (`sidewaysfigure` and `sidewaystable`) which are rotated by 90° or 270°. But what about new rotated floats, e.g. a rotated ruled one? This package makes this possible; it builds a bridge between both packages and extend the commands from the float package to define rotated versions of the new floats, too.
- rubber** rubber [34] is a wrapper for L^AT_EX and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a L^AT_EX source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as B_WT_EX, `makeindex`, `Metapost`, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

I0053

S

- scrartcl** See KOMA-Script above.
- scrbook** See KOMA-Script above.
- scrreprt** See KOMA-Script above.
- sectionning commands** These are the L^AT_EX commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the minitoc package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the minitoc commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the minitoc commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the minitoc package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the minitoc commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 26. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the minitoc package.
- sectlof** A list of figures for a section.
- sectlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlofs.
- sectlot** A list of tables for a section.
- sectlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlots.
- sectsty** The sectsty package [319] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.28 on page 70).

W0037

secttoc A table of contents for a section.

secttocdepth This counter contains the depth of the secttocs.

sfheaders The sfheaders package [304] (for L^AT_EX 2_ε) borrows some definitions from the standard article/report/book classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 54 and section 2.41 on page 76).

W0089

shell In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

shortext An option of the minitoc package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the minitoc auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 58.

W0020

shorttoc The shorttoc package [155] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.

SJIS The SJIS character encoding (for the Japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [127, 297, 298].

SL_AT_EX A version of L^AT_EX customized for the Swedish language. See [318].

splitbib A L^AT_EX package [314] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...

stdclsdv The stdclsdv package [466] is intended to be used by the authors of L^AT_EX packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.

strut A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.

subfig The subfig package [132] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single figure or table environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.

subfigure The subfigure package [130] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [132].

suffix See “extension” above.

T

- TDS** The T_EX Directory Structure [445, 446]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T_EX system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T_EX files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.
- T_EX** T_EX is a computer program created by Donald E. KNUTH [263, 265]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T_EX typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T_EX as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T_EX is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T_EX is converging to π and is now at 3.141592.
- T_EX is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T_EX becomes TeX.
- thailatex** The thailatex package [320] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the GJK system [127, 297, 298].
- tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is loose.
- titlesec** The titlesec package [46] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.
- titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.
- The titletoc.sty file is not part of the titlesec package; it’s an independent package, but it’s described in the titlesec package documentation [46].
- tmk** A script file which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [445, 446] (to be adjusted to your system).
- TOC, ToC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The tocbibind package [472] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 50.
- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.
- tocloft** The tocloft package [469] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 64 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.



TODO is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.

token A token¹³ is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “category code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T_EX’s tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T_EX to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For instance, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{₁’ already inside token lists of T_EX would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{₁₂’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. T_EX’s digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.



trivfloat The trivfloat package [484] (by Joseph A. WRIGHT) provides a quick method for defining new float types in L^AT_EX. A single command sets up a new float in the same style as the L^AT_EX kernel figure and table float types.

I0053

txfonts The txfonts package [403] provides the TX fonts, which consist of

1. virtual text roman fonts using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with some modified and additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
2. virtual text sans serif fonts using Adobe Helvetica (or URW NimbusSanL) with additional text symbols in OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
3. monospaced typewriter fonts in the OT1, T1, TS1, and LY1 encodings;
4. math alphabets using Adobe Times (or URW NimbusRomNo9L) with modified metrics;
5. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of Computer Modern math fonts (CMSY, CMMI, CMEX, and Greek letters of CMR);
6. math fonts of all symbols corresponding to those of AmS fonts (MSAM and MSBM);
7. additional math fonts of various symbols.

All fonts are in the Type 1 format (in .afm and .pfb files). Necessary .tfm and .vfm files together with L^AT_EX 2_ε package files and font map files (.map) for dvips are provided.

¹³This definition is taken from “The T_EXbook” [263, 265].

U

- UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).
- UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.
- urlbst** A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [196], to add a webpage BibTeX entry type, and add support for general url and lastchecked fields, to (most) BibTeX .bst files. Optionally adds basic support for eprint and doi fields, and HyperTeX/hyperref support, too. See [371, 390].
- UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with T_EX. See table 6.2 on page 212.

V

- varsects** The varsects package [437] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: article, book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 53 and section 2.33 on page 73).

W0038

W

- Wikipedia** The Wikipedia is a free, multilingual, open content (neutral, verifiable, modifiable and improvable by anyone) encyclopedia project operated by the non-profit Wikimedia Foundation. Its name is a portemanteau of the words *wiki* (a type of collaborative website) and *encyclopedia*. Launched in 2001 by Jimmy WALES and Larry SANGER, it is the largest, fastest growing and most popular general reference work currently available on the Internet.
- wrapfig** The wrapfig package [18] provides the wrapfigure and wraptable environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.

X

- xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.
- xr** The `xr` package [114] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David P. CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the `minitoc` package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the `hyperref` package [390], use `xr-hyper` [117] in place of the `xr` package.

Chapter 7

Installation

Tables

7.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), first part	243
7.2	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>), second part	244
7.3	List of the graphic files	244
7.4	List of the flag files	244
7.5	A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files	247

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #61).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `minitoc-fr.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.

- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself¹.

The table 1.7 on page 38 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a `language.mld` file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ finds the `.sty` files.

¹ The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the `minitoc` package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0094

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1), first part

[7] — Installation		243	
class (0) :	-finnish2.mld -francais.mld -french.mld -french1.mld -french2.mld -frenchb.mld -frenchle.mld -frenchpro.mld -galician.mld -german.mld -germanb.mld -germanb2.mld -greek.mld -greek-mono.mld -greek-polydemo.mld -greek-polykatha.mld -guarani.mld -hangul1.ml[d o] -hangul2.ml[d o] -hangul3.ml[d o] -hangul4.ml[d o] -hangul-u8.ml[d o] -hanja1.ml[d o] -hanja2.ml[d o] -hanja-u8.ml[d o] -hebrew.mld -hebrew2.mld -hindi.mld -hindi-modern.mld -hungarian.mld -icelandic.mld -indon.mld -indonesian.mld -interlingua.mld -irish.mld -italian.mld -italian2.mld -japanese.ml[d o] -japanese2.ml[d o] -japanese3.ml[d o] -japanese4.ml[d o] -japanese5.ml[d o] -japanese6.ml[d o] -kannada.mld -khalkha.mld -latin.mld -latin2.mld -latinc.mld -latinc2.mld -latvian.mld -latvian2.mld -letton.mld -letton2.mld -lithuanian.mld -lithuanian2.mld -lowersorbian.mld -lsorbian.mld -magyar.mld -magyar2.mld	-magyar3.mld -malay.mld -malayalam-b.mld -malayalam-keli.mld -malayalam-keli2.mld -malayalam-mr.mld -malayalam-omega.ml[d o] -malayalam-rachana.mld -malayalam-rachana2.mld -malayalam-rachana3.mld -manju.mld -mexican.mld -meyalu.mld -mongol.mld -mongolb.mld -mongolian.mld -naustrian.mld -newzealand.mld -ngerman.mld -ngermanb.mld -ngermanb2.mld -norsk.mld -norsk2.mld -nynorsk.mld -nynorsk2.mld -occitan.mld -occitan2.mld -polish.mld -polish2.mld -polski.mld -portuges.mld -portuguese.mld -romanian.mld -romanian2.mld -romanian3.mld -russian.mld -russianb.mld -russianc.mld -russian2m.mld -russian2o.mld -russian-cca.ml[d o] -russian-cca1.ml[d o] -russian-lh.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o] -russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o] -samin.mld -scottish.mld -serbian.mld -serbianc.mld -slovak.mld -slovene.mld -spanish.mld -spanish2.mld -spanish3.mld	-spanish4.mld -swahili.mld -swedish.mld -swedish2.mld -thai.ml[d o] -turkish.mld -uighur.mld -uighur2.mld -uighur3.mld -UKenglish.mld -ukraineb.mld -ukrainian.mld -uppersorbian.mld -USenglish.mld -usorbian.mld -vietnam.mld -vietnamese.mld -welsh.mld -xalx.mld -xalx2.mld -xalx3.mld class (2) : -INSTALL, README, TODO, -minitoc.1 class (3) : -mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsff.tex, mtc-vti.tex
See continuation in table 7.2 on the following page.			

Table 7.2: List of files (minitoc.1), second part

class (4) : -minitoc.bug -minitoc.sum	class (6) : <i>The list of the graphic and flag files is given in tables 7.3 to 7.4 on this page.</i>	-en-mtc.bst	-minitoc-fr.bib -minitoc-fr.ist -minitoc-fr.lan -minitoc.pre -franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty -fr-mtc.bst	class (9) : -minitoc-fr.pdf
class (5) : -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -minitoc.bib -minitoc.ist -minitoc.lan -minitoc.pre	class (7) : -minitoc.dtx -minitoc-fr.dtx	class (8) : -minitoc.pdf	class (10) : -cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk	class (11) : -minitoc.tds.zip

Table 7.3: List of the graphic files (class 6)

lamed3.png,	
-------------	--

Table 7.4: List of the flag files (class 6)

--	--

- (2) Informative text files:
- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
 - `minitoc.1` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244.
 - `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
 - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-3co.tex`, `mtc-add.bib`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fko.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mm1.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-nom.tex`, `mtc-ocf.tex`, `mtc-ofs.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsfc.tex`, `mtc-vti.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 56) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 80).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english. `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.

- (6) *The list of the graphic and flag files is given in tables 7.3 to 7.4 on the page before; they are images to include.*
- (7) `minitoc.dtx`, `minitoc-fr.dtx`, `minitoc-fr.bib`, `minitoc-fr.ist`, `minitoc-fr.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french².
- (8) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (9) `minitoc-fr.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (10) `pmk` is a shell script³ to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’ .imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts⁴ and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):
- `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’ .imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
 - `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `minitoc-fr.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
 - `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
 - `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
 - `tmk`, which creates a TDS-compliant hierarchy [445, 446] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.5 on page 247; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc.tds.zip`;
 - `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.
- These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF format (recto-verso printing).
- (11) `minitoc.tds.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the `minitoc` package.

² This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `minitoc-fr.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `minitoc-fr.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc-fr.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `minitoc-fr.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the `minitoc.dtx` file, and this helps the maintenance.

³ You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

⁴ In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk` (but *not* `cmk`).

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.sty` files;
4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7) and (10) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
5. the files of (8) and (9) must be installed as on-line documentation;
6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.

- **with `tmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file⁵ of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;
4. the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
5. the file `minitoc.tds.zip` (11) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.



- **with `pmk`:**

1. the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
2. the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
3. the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc.tds.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the `minitoc` package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `minitoc-fr.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using `minitoc` with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

⁵ The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc.tds.zip` file.

Table 7.5: A TDS-compliant hierarchy for the minitoc files

TDS Root Directory						
bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	minitoc/	minitoc/
(A)	(B)	(C)			(F)	(G)
		examples/	images/			
		(H)	(I)			
(A) minitoc-fr.bib, minitoc.bib;			mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fko.pdf, mtc-fko.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-nom.pdf, mtc-nom.tex, mtc-ocf.pdf, mtc-ocf.tex, mtc-ofs.pdf, mtc-ofs.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfc.pdf, mtc-tsfc.tex, mtc-vti.pdf, mtc-vti.tex;			
(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;						
(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, minitoc-fr.lan, minitoc-fr.pdf, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;						
(D) minitoc-fr.ist, minitoc.ist;						
(E) cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;						
(F) minitoc-fr.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;						
(G) minitoc.sty, mtc-off.sty, mtc-mess.sty, mtc-patchmem.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;						
(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf,						
			(I) The list of the graphic and flag files is given in tables 7.3 to 7.4 on page 244.			

Chapter 8

Postface

Contents

8.1	The origins	248	8.10	Developments in 2001	251
8.2	New design in 1993	249	8.11	Developments in 2002	251
8.3	Developments in 1994	249	8.12	Developments in 2003	251
8.4	No developments in 1995	249	8.13	Developments in 2004	251
8.5	Developments in 1996	250	8.14	Developments in 2005	252
8.6	Developments in 1997	250	8.15	Developments in 2006	254
8.7	Developments in 1998	250	8.16	Developments in 2007	254
8.8	Developments in 1999	250	8.17	Developments in 2008	258
8.9	Developments in 2000	250			

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 597. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite`

command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under \LaTeX (in fact, by the underlying \TeX program itself). As some descriptors are already used by \LaTeX , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the formatting of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, replacing the ageing $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$, some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *mini-toc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [60, 61], by Johannes L. BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

8.5 Developments in 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtcoff` to keep its name short.

8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` command is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [390], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS [454].

Some corrections about the starred sectionning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectionning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [472] is documented.

I0046

Aliases for some languages are added.

8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [15] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [479, 481, 482].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [14].

8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the `.mld` files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [471].

I0042

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the \mathcal{AMS} classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsetttitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsetttitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [470].

I0040

The `minitoc` package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (`sectsty` package [319], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

I0043

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [343, 344, 399] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the memoir class [479, 481, 482].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the \LaTeX compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [437].

W0038

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

I0043

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [196]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

8.16 Developments in 2007

Removed the preparation of documentation in PostScript format.

Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format to PostScript format.

Added hints about the `fncychap` [301], `quotchap` [442], `romannum` [480], `sfheaders` [304], `aliumsec` [274], and `captcont` [131] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 90.

W0086

W0087

W0088

W0089

W0090

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [250].

W0092

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tnk` script and a table describing a TDS-compliant structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc.tds.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS-compliant hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

Added the `mtc-fko.tex` example file.

Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.

Features in the index.

Added the “open” and “close” features.

Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.

Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.

Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.

Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and `siblings`, using `\mtc@toks`.

Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.

Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.

Added internal hyperlinks for messages.

Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.

Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.

Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.

Added flagging of macros in example files.

Added a clickable table of all messages.

Added a local minitoc in the “Jargon” chapter.

Added `lithuanian2.mld`.

Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.

Added a hint (warning W0097) about the `flowfram` [433, 434] package (incompatible).

Added a *hint* (I0053) about the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], and rotfloat [420] packages.

I0053

Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.

Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.

Changed the color of hyperlinks.

Revised the format of headers.

Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

Added `swahili.mld`.

Added stuff (files) for maps of areas of some languages.

Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.

Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244).

Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing (`\jobname.mtc1` file).

Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas DEININGER).

The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.

Added a hint (warning W0099) about the `titlesec` [46] package.

W0099

Complete indexing of the messages.

Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.

Using the `chnpage` package [467] to make increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.

Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.

Updated `czech.mld`.

Removed `\l@xsection`.

Graphic files are indexed separately.

Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.

Updated `galician.mld`, `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.

Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.

Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.

Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

Added `occitan.mld`.

Updated `croatian.mld`, `danish.mld`, `dutch.mld`, `galician.mld`, `germanb2.mld`, `greek.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `interlingua.mld`, `polish.mld`, `scottish.mld`, and `turkish.mld`.

8.17 Developments in 2008

Corrected `polски.mld`.

Added table 6.10 on page 231.

Added many maps about languages and dialects, etc.

Better captions for maps.

Added an entry for the Wikipedia in the jargon.

Split the TDS hierarchy into three tables 7.3 to 7.5 on pages 244–247.

The page numbers in the index are now hyperlinks (thanks to François PÉTIARD).

Colors added in figure 1.1 on page 31.

Corrected an error of message number.

Updated from the `babel` package version v3.8j of 2008/03/16.

Used `\vrefrange` to compress ranges of internal cross-references.

Added flags for many countries.

Added a figure about lusophonia.

Added a figure about germanophonia.

Added a figure about hispanophonia.

Added a figure about italophonia.

Added a minitoc in the index to make it easier to consult (not trivial).

Added figures about francophones countries.

Added a figure about swahili-speaking countries.

Added a figure about arabic-speaking countries.

Added a figure about russian-speaking countries.

Added a figure about english-speaking countries.

Added flags `\ifinparttoc`, `\ifinpartlof`, `\ifinpartlot`, `\ifinminitoc`, `\ifinminilof`, `\ifinminilot`, `\ifinsecttoc`, `\ifinsectlof`, and `\ifinsectlot`.

Added example document `mtc-vti.tex`, section [4.36 on page 148](#).

Added commands for polymorphic entries: `\mtcpolymtoc`, `\mtcpolymlof`, and `\mtcpolymlot`.

Added a figure about dutch-speaking countries.

Renamed `fminitoc.dtx` and consorts as `minitoc-fr.dtx` and consorts.

Added missing flag files (thanks to Morten HØGHOLM).

Replaced many `.pdf` image files (most of them are flag files) by the original `.png` file because they were corrupted during the conversion by ImageMagick (xpdf didnt see the problem but Acrobat Reader refuses to show the file); many thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK and Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ.

Back to standard colors and default hyperref color options.

Part II

Implementation

Contents of the Second Part

9	Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package	262
10	Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package	447
11	Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package	464
12	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	465
13	Language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	467

Chapter 9

Commented code of the minitoc package

Contents

9.1	Introduction	266
9.2	Identification code	266
9.3	A file descriptor to write	266
9.4	Indentation and skip	267
9.5	Tests and flags	268
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	269
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	269
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	269
9.5.4	Flags for packages dealing with floats	270
9.5.5	Insertion of empty mini-tables	271
9.5.6	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	271
9.5.7	Flags to check if some commands are used	272
9.5.8	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	273
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	274
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	274
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	274
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	275
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	275
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	276
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	277
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	278
9.9.14	Check if the <code>float</code> package is loaded	278

9.9.15	Check if the floatrow package is loaded	278
9.9.16	Check if the trivfloat package is loaded	278
9.9.17	Check if the rotfloating package is loaded	278
9.10	Is the memoir class loaded?	279
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	279
9.12	Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters	281
9.13	Patching the \part command	281
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	282
9.15	Section level macros	282
9.16	Corrections for numbering	283
9.17	Patching the \section command	283
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	283
9.19	Chapter level macros	284
9.20	Patching the \chapter command	284
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	284
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	285
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	286
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of L^AT_EX	287
9.25	Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	288
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	288
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	291
9.28	Fake tables of contents	294
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	294
9.30	Chapter level commands	294
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	295
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	297
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	297
9.34	The mtc@verse environment	298
9.35	The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands	298
9.35.1	The \minitoc command	298
9.35.2	The \minilof command	302
9.35.3	The \minilot command	305
9.36	Patching the \chapter command, continued	308
9.37	The \addstarred... commands	309
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	309
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	310
9.40	The \dominitoc command and its siblings	311
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	314
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	318
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	318
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	320
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	321
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	323
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	324
9.45	Part level commands	325
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	326
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	326
9.48	The ptc@verse environment	328
9.49	The part level mini-tables: \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot	328
9.49.1	The \parttoc command	329
9.49.2	The \partlof command	331
9.49.3	The \partlot command	334
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	337

9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	338
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	338
9.52.1	Processing macros for the <code>parttoes</code>	340
9.52.2	Processing macros for the <code>partlofs</code>	344
9.52.3	Processing macros for the <code>partlots</code>	346
9.53	Depth counters for <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code>	349
9.54	Section-level commands	349
9.55	Fonts commands for <code>secttocs</code> and <code>co.</code>	350
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	350
9.57	The <code>stc@verse</code> environment	351
9.58	The <code>\secttoc</code>, <code>\sectlof</code>, and <code>\sectlot</code> commands	351
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command	351
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	354
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	357
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	359
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	360
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	361
9.62	End of section-level commands	371
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	371
9.64	Use with <code>\nofiles</code>	372
9.65	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	373
9.66	The horizontal rules and their default values	374
9.67	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	375
9.67.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	375
9.67.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	377
9.67.3	The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command	381
9.67.4	The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command	382
9.67.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	384
9.67.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	388
9.67.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	391
9.67.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	393
9.67.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	395
9.67.10	The <code>\mtcsetoffset</code> command	397
9.68	Polymorphic entries	398
9.69	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	399
9.70	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	401
9.71	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	403
9.72	Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC	404
9.73	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	405
9.74	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	406
9.75	The “coffee breaks”	407
9.76	Initialization of counters	407
9.77	Declarations for simple options	407
9.77.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	407
9.77.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	408
9.77.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	408
9.77.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	408
9.77.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	408
9.78	The <code>insection</code> option	408
9.79	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	409
9.80	Language options	409
9.81	The <code>hints</code> option	414
9.81.1	First part: <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	414
9.81.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	415

9.81.1.2	Hint about the appendix package	415
9.81.1.3	Hint about the tocbind package	415
9.81.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	415
9.81.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package	416
9.81.1.6	Hint about the titlesec package	416
9.81.1.7	Hint about the titletoc package	417
9.81.1.8	Hint about the placeins package	417
9.81.1.9	Hint about the memoir class	418
9.81.1.10	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes	419
9.81.1.11	Hint about the amsbook class	419
9.81.1.12	Hint about the abstract package	419
9.81.1.13	Hint about the jura class	420
9.81.1.14	Hint about the flowfram package	420
9.81.1.15	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	420
9.81.1.15.1	Alteration of \part	421
9.81.1.15.2	Alteration of \chapter	421
9.81.1.15.3	Alteration of \section	422
9.81.1.16	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands	422
9.81.2	Final part: \mtc@hints@enddoc	423
9.81.2.1	Hint about \sect-lof lot and the insection option	423
9.81.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	424
9.81.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	426
9.81.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	428
9.81.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	430
9.81.2.6	Final part of the hint about the sectsty package	431
9.81.2.7	Final part of the hint about the varsects package	431
9.81.2.8	Final part of the hint about the fncychap package	432
9.81.2.9	Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package	432
9.81.2.10	Final part of the hint about the quotchap package	433
9.81.2.11	Final part of the hint about the romannum package	433
9.81.2.12	Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package	433
9.81.2.13	Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package	434
9.81.2.14	Final part of the hint about the captcont package	434
9.81.2.15	Final part of the hint about the caption package	434
9.81.2.16	Final part of the hint about the caption2 package	435
9.81.2.17	Final part of the hint about the ccaption package	435
9.81.2.18	Final part of the hint about the mcaption package	435
9.81.2.19	Final part of the hint about the float package	436
9.81.2.20	Final part of the hint about the floatrow package	436
9.81.2.21	Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package	436
9.81.2.22	Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package	437
9.81.2.23	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	437
9.81.2.24	Check if obsolete commands have been used	439
9.81.2.25	Check if some hints have been written	440
9.82	Processing of options	440
9.82.1	Processing the insection option	441
9.82.2	Processing the notoccite option	442
9.82.3	Processing the listfiles option	442
9.82.4	Processing the hints option	443
9.82.5	Saving the sectionning commands	443
9.83	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	444
9.84	The minitoc-fr.dtx file	445

9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the minitoc package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file¹ are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
2468 <{*minitoc>
```

<pre>\NeedsTeXFormat \ProvidesPackage \mtcPackageInfo \RequirePackage</pre>	<p>This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is written in the <code>document.log</code> file. This package will not work with L^AT_EX 2.09.</p> <pre>2469 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]% 2470 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}% 2471 [2018/07/12 v62 Package minitoc] % message I0000 2472 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14] 2473 \mtcPackageInfo[I0001]{minitoc}% 2474 {*** minitoc package, version 62 ***\@gobble}</pre>	<div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">I0000</div> <div style="border: 1px solid red; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">I0001</div>
---	--	--

9.3 A file descriptor to write

<pre>\tf@mtc \newwrite</pre>	<p>A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is <code>\tf@mtc</code>. The minitoc package uses only one file descriptor for writing. See section 9.23 on page 286.</p>
------------------------------	--

```
2475 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

¹ The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

9.4 Indentation and skip

```

\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip   \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default:
\mtcskipamount \bigskipamount).
\parskip
\addvspace 2476 \newlength\mtcindent
           2477 \newskip\mtcskipamount
           2478 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
           2479 \def\mtcskip{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}

```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
\mtcgapafterheads
           2480 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
           2481 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
\kernafterparttoc names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
\kernafterpartlof \renewcommand.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 2482 \@ifundefined{part}{\%
\kernaftersectlof 2483 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 2484 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 2485 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 2486 }%
\kernafterminilot 2487 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
           2488 \@ifundefined{section}{\%
           2489 }%
           2490 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
           2491 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
           2492 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
           2493 }%
           2494 }%
           2495 }%
           2496 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
           2497 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
           2498 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
           2499 }%

```

```

\@ifundefined We defines horizontal offsets by which the margins in the mini-tables are corrected (added to
  \ptcoffset the right margin and subtracted from the left margin). These are commands, not lengths2, to
  \pfloffset be redefined by \renewcommand.
  \pltoffset
  \mtcoffset 2500 \ifundefined{part}{}{}%
  \mlfoffset 2501 \def\ptcoffset{0pt}%
  \mltoffset 2502 \def\plfoffset{0pt}%
  \sltoffset 2503 \def\pltoffset{0pt}%
  \sfloffset 2504 }%
  \sltoffset 2505 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
  2506 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%
  2507 {}%
  2508 \def\stcoffset{0pt}%
  2509 \def\slfoffset{0pt}%
  2510 \def\sltoffset{0pt}%
  2511 }%
  2512 }%
  2513 {}%
  2514 \def\mtcoffset{0pt}%
  2515 \def\mlfoffset{0pt}%
  2516 \def\mltoffset{0pt}%
  2517 }%

\ifinparttoc We defines flags which will be true when inside a mini-table of the matching type, false outside.
\ifinpartlof
\ifinpartlot 2518 \newif\ifinparttoc\inparttocfalse%
\ifinminitoc 2519 \newif\ifinpartlof\inpartloffalse%
\ifinminilof 2520 \newif\ifinpartlot\inpartlotfalse%
\ifinminilot 2521 \newif\ifinsecttoc\insecttocfalse%
\ifinsecttoc 2522 \newif\ifinsectlof\insectloffalse%
\ifinsectlof 2523 \newif\ifinsectlot\insectlotfalse%
\ifinsectlot 2524 \newif\ifinminitoc\inminitocfalse%
2525 \newif\ifinminilof\inminiloffalse%
2526 \newif\ifinminilot\inminilotfalse%

```

9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags³ (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.81 on page 414) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

² We avoid to allocate a precious length register.

³ Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native TeX engine (much more with ϵ -TeX [105], but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure and debug than a code programmed with counters, IMHO.

9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

```
\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@
```

But first, we define some flags for the hints option:

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the hints option is required (default).
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the hints option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

```
2527 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
2528 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
2529 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false
```

9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
```

We will check if the commands `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` are used:

```
2530 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false
```

9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
\if@mtc@memoirnew@
```

We will check if the `placeins` package is loaded, then if the `memoir` is loaded (and if it is a recent enough version), then if the `sectsty` package is loaded (before or after `minitoc`).

```
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 2531 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2532 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
2533 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
2534 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
2535 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
```

```
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
```

We do the same for some caption-related packages:

```
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2536 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2537 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2538 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2539 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2540 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2541 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 2542 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
```

```

2543 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
2544 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false
2545 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ And the varsects package and other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2546 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2547 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2548 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2549 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2550 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 2551 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
2552 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
2553 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false

```

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ And yet other packages altering the sectionning commands:
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 2554 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 2555 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2556 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2557 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
2558 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false
2559 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false

```

9.5.4 Flags for packages dealing with floats

```

\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ We must warn about a limitation with the float [302], floatrow [285], trivfloat [484], and
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ rotrfloat [420] packages.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ 2560 \newif\if@mtc@floatLoaded@ \@mtc@floatLoaded@a@false
2561 \newif\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@ \@mtc@floatrowLoaded@a@false
2562 \newif\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@a@false
2563 \newif\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@ \@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@a@false

```

9.5.5 Insertion of empty mini-tables

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:
\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2564 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2565 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2566 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2567 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2568 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2569 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2570 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2571 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
2572 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

9.5.6 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

`\if@mtc@part@def@` The part counter:

```

2573 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
2574 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` The chapter counter:

```

2575 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
2576 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}

```

`\if@mtc@section@def@` The section counter:

```

2577 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
2578 \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}

```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```

2579 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
2580 \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
2581 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
2582   \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
2583 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
2584   \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

9.5.7 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.81 on page 414).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

```
\if@partlof@used@
\if@partlot@used@ 2585 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false
\if@doparttoc@used@ 2586 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false
\if@dopartlof@used@ 2587 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false
\if@dopartlot@used@ 2588 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false
2589 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false
2590 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false
```

`\if@minitoc@used@` For the chapter level:

```
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 2591 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2592 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 2593 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 2594 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
2595 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
2596 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false
```

`\if@secttoc@used@` For the section level:

```
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 2597 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2598 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2599 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2600 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
2601 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
2602 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false
```



```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2603 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
2604 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
2605 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

9.5.8 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one (see [\[251, page 204\]](#)). So we define a specific flag:

```
2606 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

2607 \AtBeginDocument{%
2608   \ifmtcsecondpart
2609     \global\mtcsecondparttrue
2610   \else
2611     \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
2612   \fi}

```

`\AtEndDocument` At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

\@mainaux 2613 \AtEndDocument{%
2614   \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
2615     \mtcsecondparttrue
2616   \else
2617     \mtcsecondpartfalse
2618   \fi
2619 \if@files
2620   \ifmtcsecondpart
2621     \immediate\write\@mainaux
2622       {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
2623   \else
2624     \immediate\write\@mainaux
2625       {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
2626   \fi
2627 \fi}

```

So we need two \LaTeX runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section [13.62 on page 498](#)) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section [4.2 on page 92](#).

9.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command (redefinable command) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`, used by this option (this has been requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [14]). See section 1.6 on page 52.

`\if@mtc@notoccite@`

```
2628 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
2629 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
2630   {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}%
```

9.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

`\iftightmtc` We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and `\ifktightmtc` k-loose options):

```
2631 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
2632 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
```

9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [390]. A flag is defined, then `\if@mtc@hyper@used@` this preparation is performed in an `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This `\@ifpackageloaded` action defines some commands for the hyperref package.

I0005

```
2633 \mtcPackageInfo[I0005]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
2634 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
2635 \AtBeginDocument{%
2636   \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
2637     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
2638     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
2639     \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
2640     \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
2641     \let\toclevel@starp@rt\toclevel@part
2642     \let\toclevel@starch@pter\toclevel@chapter
2643     \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
2644     \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
2645     \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
2646     \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
2647     \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
2648   }{}%}
```

9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

```

\AtBeginDocument We must test if the sectsty package [319] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ loaded. See section 9.81.2.6 on page 431.
\@ifpackageloaded
2649 \@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}%
2650 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the varsects package [437] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.7 on page 431.
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
2651 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}%{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
2652 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [301] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.8 on page 432.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
2653 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}%
2654 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [250] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.81.2.9 on page 432.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
2655 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}%
2656 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [442] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.10 on page 433.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

2657 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}%
2658 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [480] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.11 on page 433.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

2659 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}%
2660 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [304] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.12 on page 433.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

2661 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}%
2662 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.8 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [274] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.13 on page 434.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

2663 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}%
2664 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.9 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [131] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.14 on page 434.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

2665 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}%
2666 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.10 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [421, 422, 424] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.15 on page 434.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

2667 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}%
2668 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [423] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.16 on page 435.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

2669 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}%
2670 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [474] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.17 on page 435.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

2671 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}%
2672 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}%

```

9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [228] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in an \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.81.2.18 on page 435.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

2673 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}}%
2674 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}}%

```

9.9.14 Check if the float package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the float package [302] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.19 on page 436.
\if@mtc@floatLoaded@

2675 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{float}{\@mtc@floatLoaded@true}{}}%

```

9.9.15 Check if the floatrow package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the floatrow package [285] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.20 on page 436.
\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@

2676 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{floatrow}{\@mtc@floatrowLoaded@true}{}}%

```

9.9.16 Check if the trivfloat package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the trivfloat package [484] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.21 on page 436.
\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@

2677 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{trivfloat}{\@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@true}{}}%

```

9.9.17 Check if the rotfloat package is loaded

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the rotfloat package [420] is loaded in the preamble, so we use an
\AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument block. See section 9.81.2.22 on page 437.
\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@

2678 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{rotfloat}{\@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@true}{}}%

```

9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the memoir [479, 481, 482] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility adjustments or may be *incompatible* if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see chapter 12 on page 465). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.cls.

I0030

I0020

I0027

I0032

```

2679 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \mtcpatchmemoir@false
2680 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
2681             \mtcPackageInfo[I0030]{minitoc}%
2682             {the memoir class is loaded:
2683             \MessageBreak
2684             compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
2685             {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
2686 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
2687 \ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
2688   {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[I0020]{minitoc}%
2689   {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2690   {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[I0027]{minitoc}%
2691   {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2692   \mtcPackageInfo[I0032]{minitoc}%
2693   {This version of the memoir class uses
2694   \MessageBreak
2695   a version of \string\chapter\space which is
2696   \MessageBreak
2697   incompatible with the minitoc package.
2698   \MessageBreak
2699   We try to patch\@gobble}%
2700 \mtcpatchmemoir@true}
2701 \fi

```

`\if@mtcpatchmemoir@` And now the patch:

E0028

```

2702 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
2703 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
2704   \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{}{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
2705   \mtcPackageError[E0028]{minitoc}%
2706   {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
2707   {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
2708 \fi

```

9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

`\mtc@ifmtarg` Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package
`\mtc@xifmtarg` ifmtarg [483], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by
`\mtc@EndWhile`
`\mtc@WhilePreCondition`
`\mtc@WhileCondition`
`\mtc@WhileBody`
`\mtc@While`
`\mtc@WhileNext`

Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [460, Vol III, page 408]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.

```

2709 \begingroup
2710 \catcode'\Q=3
2711 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
2712 \mtc@xifmtarg#1Q\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
2713 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
2714 \endgroup
2715 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
2716 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
2717   \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
2718   \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
2719   \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
2720   \mtc@@While
2721 }
2722 \def\mtc@@While{%
2723   \mtc@WhilePreCondition
2724   \mtc@WhileCondition
2725   \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
2726     \mtc@WhileBody
2727     \mtc@@While
2728   }%
2729   \else
2730     \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
2731   \fi
2732   \mtc@WhileNext
2733 }
```

<pre> \if@mtc@checkfiles \if@mtc@FE \if@mtc@LI \mtc@While \mtc@Body \mtc@EndWhile \mtc@CkFile \mtc@CkStr \mtc@Rline \tf@mtc \@inputcheck</pre>	<p>Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the file is not empty. An inexistent file is empty. A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.</p> <p>Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an eternity (33 s for 10⁶ lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.</p> <p>\jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.</p> <pre> 2734 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue 2735 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue 2736 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue 2737 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to \mtc@Rline\relax 2738 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi 2739 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax 2740 \def\mtc@Rline{} 2741 \else 2742 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi 2743 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}{\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse} 2744 \fi} 2745 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{% 2746 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue 2747 \if@mtc@checkfiles</pre>
--	---


```

2748 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
2749   \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
2750   \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}{\mtc@Body}\mtc@EndWhile}%
2751   {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
2752 \else
2753   \@mtc@FEfalse%
2754 \fi}
2755 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
2756 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
2757   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2758   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
2759   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2760   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
2761   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2762   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

`\mtc@onebackpart` It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
`\mtc@onebackchapter` macros are:
`\mtc@onebacksection`

```

\addtocounter 2763 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
2764 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
2765 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

9.13 Patching the `\part` command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and
`\mtc@svspart` a warning is displayed⁴. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version)
`\mtc@svpart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the
`\@spart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 338.
`\@part`

`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14 on the following page) is also skipped if `\part` is
not defined.

W0018

I0023

```

2766 \@ifundefined{part}{%
2767   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0018]{minitoc}%
2768   {part level macros NOT available}
2769 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
2770   \mtcPackageInfo[I0023]{minitoc}%
2771   {part level macros available\@gobble}
2772   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart

```

⁴ Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

```

2773 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
2774 \let\mtc@svpart\@part
2775 \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.

`\mtc@ifmtarg`

`\contentsline`

`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\contentsline{xpart}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `ptc` counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 325). Using `xpart` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2776 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
2777   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
2778   {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
2779   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
2780   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
2781   \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

2782 }%

```

9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the minitoc package with the class of your document.

```

2783 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0004]{minitoc}%
2784   {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2785 \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[I0029]{minitoc}%
2786   {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2787 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0017]{minitoc}%
2788   {no section or chapter level macros available
2789   \MessageBreak

```

I0004

I0029

W0017

I0028

```

2790     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
2791   {\mtcPackageInfo[I0028]{minitoc}%
2792     {section level macros available\@gobble}%

```

9.16 Corrections for numbering

```

\mtc@onebacksect  As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement
\tableofcontents the secttoc counter (stc) via \mtc@onebacksect when the corresponding commands are
\listoffigures    executed. Hence we patch these commands.
\listoftables
\mtcsv@tableofcontents 2793   \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 2794   \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 2795   \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
2796   \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
2797   \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
2798   \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}

```

9.17 Patching the \section command

```

\mtc@svsection  If the \section command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it
\mtc@svss       and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, \@sect (for the unstarred version)
\@ssect        or \@ssect (for the starred version, \section*): we add \stepcounter{stc} to increment
\@sect         the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case5.
\section
\stepcounter 2799   \let\mtc@svsection\section
2800   \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
2801   \let\mtc@svss\@ssect

```

9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

```

\mtcaddsection  To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the \mtcaddsection macro,
\mtc@ifmtarg    which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC.
\contentsline   By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via \mtc@ifmtarg) or omitted,
\adjuststc     we add a \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we
\l@xsect       add a \contentsline{section}{title...}... line in the .toc file. We always add a
\l@section     \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the
               stc counter, via \adjuststc (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 349). Using
               xsect as first argument of \contentsline means that \l@xsect will be invoked in place

```

⁵ Version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter.

of `\l@section` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
2802 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][1]{%
2803     \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
2804         {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
2805     \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}%
2806     \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}%
2807     \adjuststc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```
2808 } }{%
```

9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like book or report. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`.

I0003

```
2809 \mtcPackageInfo[I0003]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}
```

9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\mtc@svchapter` `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\stepcounter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 308).

```
2810 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}
```

9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we `\adjustmtc` `\l@xchapter` `\l@chapter`

add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 295). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

2811 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\%
2812     \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}{\%
2813         {\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}{\%
2814     \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}}{\%
2815     \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}}{\%
2816     \adjustmtc}%
2817 }%
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 282.

9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

```

\newread The \newread command must be redeclared as being \outer (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).
\newtoks We need a token register (\mtc@toks), a temporary string (\mtc@string), struts (two kinds,
\mtc@toks each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to
\mtc@string zero (\mtc@zrule) and a command discouraging page breaks (\mtc@BBR, for “bad break”).
\mtc@strut For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to
\mtc@strutbox follow the current font.
\mtc@hstrut
\mtc@hstrutbox 2818 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@n}
\mtc@v 2819 \newtoks\mtc@toks
\mtc@zrule 2820 \def\mtc@string{\relax}
\mtc@BBR 2821 \newbox\mtc@strutbox
2822 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}
2823 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox
2824     \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}
2825 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox
2826 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}
2827 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox
2828     \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}
2829 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}
2830 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}
2831 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}
```

Table 9.1: Trick to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc0</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(0)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a trick to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files⁶. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the *document.log* file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```

\newif (0) First, a message and a new flag:
\if@mtc@longext@ 2832 \mtcPackageInfo[I0002]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 2833 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\immediate 2834 \newif\if@mtc@longext@\@mtc@longext@false
\openout
\write (1) We write “\@mtc@longext@true” in \jobname.mtc0. But if the OS has short
\closeout extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
\input
\jobname 2835 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
2836 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@true}
2837 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write “\@mtc@longext@false” in \jobname.mtc.
2838 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2839 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@mtc@longext@false}
2840 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc0. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
2841 \input{\jobname.mtc0}

```

I0002

(4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc0`, but false if we read from

I0012

I0031

W0019

⁶ It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the *document.log* file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the *.toc*, *.lof* and *.lot* files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TeX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the *document.log* file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectioning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

\jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```

2842 \if@mtc@longext@
2843 \mtcPackageInfo[I0012]{minitoc}%
2844 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used\@gobble}
2845 \mtcPackageInfo[I0031]{minitoc}%
2846 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
2847 \MessageBreak
2848 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names\@gobble}%
2849 \else
2850 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0019]{minitoc}%
2851 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
2852 \MessageBreak
2853 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
2854 \MessageBreak
2855 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
2856 \fi

```

- (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 279).

```

2857 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2858 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2859 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc0
2860 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L^AT_EX

\@inputcheck This code detects old versions of the L^AT_EX kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L^AT_EX commands, \@inputcheck and \reset@font. If you get one of these messages, your are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L^AT_EX installation, which is just rusting since... a lot of years!



```

2861 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
2862 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0021]{minitoc}%
2863 {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
2864 \MessageBreak
2865 Trying to continue...}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
2866 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
2867 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0022]{minitoc}%
2868 {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
2869 \MessageBreak
2870 Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
2871 \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```

9.25 Adding a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

```

\@undottedtocline The (internal) macro \@undottedtocline is a modified version of the standard command
\ifundottedmtc \@dottedtocline. It will be used in customization macros.
\undottedmtcfalse

2872 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
2873 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
2874   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
2875     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
2876     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
2877      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
2878      \interlinepenalty\@M
2879      \leavevmode
2880      \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
2881      \hskip -\leftskip
2882      #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
2883      \null\par}%
2884   \fi}

```

9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [479, 481, 482] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```
2885 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers

2886 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
2887   \cftpagenumberon{section}
2888   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
2889   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
2890   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
2891   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
2892 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
2893   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
2894   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
2895   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
2896   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
2897   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```



```

\stcpagenumbers  For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers

2898 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
2899   \cftpagumberson{subsection}
2900   \cftpagumberson{subsubsection}
2901   \cftpagumberson{paragraph}
2902   \cftpagumberson{subparagraph}}
2903 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
2904   \cftpagumbersoff{subsection}
2905   \cftpagumbersoff{subsubsection}
2906   \cftpagumbersoff{paragraph}
2907   \cftpagumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\ptcpagenumbers  For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers

2908 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
2909   \cftpagumberson{chapter}
2910   \cftpagumberson{section}
2911   \cftpagumberson{subsection}
2912   \cftpagumberson{subsubsection}
2913   \cftpagumberson{paragraph}
2914   \cftpagumberson{subparagraph}}
2915 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
2916   \cftpagumbersoff{chapter}
2917   \cftpagumbersoff{section}
2918   \cftpagumbersoff{subsection}
2919   \cftpagumbersoff{subsubsection}
2920   \cftpagumbersoff{paragraph}
2921   \cftpagumbersoff{subparagraph}}

\mlfpagenumbers  For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 2922   \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagumberson{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 2923   \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 2924   \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagumberson{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 2925   \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagumbersoff{figure}}
2926   \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagumberson{figure}}
2927   \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagumbersoff{figure}}

\mltpagenumbers  For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 2928   \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagumberson{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 2929   \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 2930   \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagumberson{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 2931   \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagumbersoff{table}}
2932   \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagumberson{table}}
2933   \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
2934 \else
```

```
\mtcpagenumbers  First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2935 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\nomlfpagenumbers 2936 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2937 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2938 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
2939 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
2940 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mlfpagenumbers  Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2941 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\nomlfpagenumbers 2942 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2943 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2944 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
2945 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
2946 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
```

```
\mltpagenumbers  Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 2947 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2948 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 2949 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 2950 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
2951 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
2952 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
2953 \fi
```

```
\ptcpagenumbers  Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 2954 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 2955 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 2956 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 2957 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 2958 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 2959 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 2960 \stcpagenumbers
2961 \slfpagenumbers
2962 \sltpagenumbers
```

9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has five “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature, an “open” feature, an “close” feature, and a “pagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each `parttoc`. Usually such features contain only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

An “open” feature contains code to be executed just before the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either prepare some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

An “close” feature contains code to be executed just after the insertion of the file containing the mini-table. Usually such features either do nothing, either finish some basic formatting (like multi-column). It does not concern the title of the mini-table or the decorative rules.

A “pagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “pagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “pagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter   If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 2963 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 2964   \let\beforeparttoc\empty
                2965   \let\beforepartlof\empty
                2966   \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```

2967   {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
2968   \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
2969   \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\beforeinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforeminilof`

```
\beforeminilot 2970 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
                2971 \let\beforeminilof\empty
                2972 \let\beforeminilot\empty
```

`\beforesecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

`\beforesectlof`

```
\beforesectlot 2973 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
                2974 \let\beforesectlof\empty
                2975 \let\beforesectlot\empty
```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterparttoc`

```
\afterpartlof 2976 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 2977   \let\afterparttoc\empty
                2978   \let\afterpartlof\empty
                2979   \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```
                2980   {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
                2981   \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
                2982   \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\afterinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\afterminilof`

```
\afterminilot 2983 \let\afterinitoc\empty
                2984 \let\afterminilof\empty
                2985 \let\afterminilot\empty
```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

`\aftersectlof`

```
\aftersectlot 2986 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
                2987 \let\aftersectlof\empty
                2988 \let\aftersectlot\empty
```

`\openparttoc` By default, the “open” features do nothing:

```

\openpartlof
\openpartlot 2989 \let\openparttoc\empty
\openminitoc 2990 \let\openpartlof\empty
\openminilof 2991 \let\openpartlot\empty
\openminilot 2992 \let\openminitoc\empty
\opensecttoc 2993 \let\openminilof\empty
\opensectlof 2994 \let\openminilot\empty
\opensectlot 2995 \let\opensecttoc\empty
                2996 \let\opensectlof\empty
                2997 \let\opensectlot\empty

```

`\closeparttoc` By default, “close” features do nothing:

```

\closepartlof
\closepartlot 2998 \let\closeparttoc\empty
\closeminitoc 2999 \let\closepartlof\empty
\closeminilof 3000 \let\closepartlot\empty
\closeminilot 3001 \let\closeminitoc\empty
\closesecttoc 3002 \let\closeminilof\empty
\closesectlof 3003 \let\closeminilot\empty
\closesectlot 3004 \let\closesecttoc\empty
                3005 \let\closesectlof\empty
                3006 \let\closesectlot\empty

```

`\thispagestyle` By default, all the “pagestyle” features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If `\chapter` is not defined, there is no default “pagestyle” features at the part level.

```

\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofsty
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageinitocstyle 3007 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 3008 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 3009 \def\thispagepartlofsty{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 3010 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofsty 3011 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 3012 \def\thispagepartlofsty{\thispagestyle{\empty}}
                    3013 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{\empty}}}
                    3014 \def\thispageinitocstyle{\empty}
                    3015 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
                    3016 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
                    3017 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
                    3018 \def\thispagesectlofsty{\empty}
                    3019 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section [9.67.8 on page 393](#), we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is a much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

9.28 Fake tables of contents

```

\fakeableofcontents If you don't want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, with-
\fakeistofffigures out inserting it into your document. This \fakeableofcontents command is a stripped off
\fakeistoftables version of the standard command \tableofcontents. We define in the same way the ana-
\fake@starttoc log commands \fakeistofffigures and \fakeistoftables, using in fact just a stripped
\if@filesw version \fake@starttoc of \@starttoc. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and
\newwrite stc counters now, if they are defined7.
\immediate
\openout
3020 \def\fakeableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
3021 \ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
3022 \ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
3023 \ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
3024 }
3025 \def\fakeistofffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
3026 \def\fakeistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
3027 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup \makeatletter
3028 \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
3029 \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
3030 \jobname.#1\relax \fi
3031 \global\@nobeckfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the necessary new counters:
\newcounter minilofdepth and minilofdepth. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the
\setcounter loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
3032 \AtBeginDocument{%
3033 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3034 {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
3035 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
3036 {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
3037 }%

```

9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

⁷ Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

`\mtc@markboth` First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
`\@mkboth`

```
3038 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
3039 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

`\addst@rred` We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: `\part*`, `\chapter*`
`\addcontentsline` and `\section*`. The section-level is different depending on the presence of the `\chapter`
`\stepcounter` command. Eventually, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the `.toc` file, with
`\c@ptc` the right depth to print it (see `\l@star...` later, in section 9.65 on page 373).
`\c@mtc`

```
\c@stc 3040 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
3041   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
3042   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
3043     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
3044       \stepcounter{ptc}%
3045     \fi
3046   }%
3047   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
3048     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
3049       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3050     \fi
3051     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix\relax
3052       \stepcounter{mtc}%
3053     \fi
3054   }%
3055   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
3056     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
3057   %%     \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
3058     \stepcounter{stc}%
3059   \fi
3060   }%
3061 }%
```

`\addstarredsection` If `\chapter` is not defined, we just define `\addstarredsection`:
`\chapter`
`\addst@rred` 3062 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{}%`
3063 `\gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}`
3064 `%`

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

3065 {%

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
\if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\newcounter command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\setcounter mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\adjustmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\decrementmtc
\incrementmtc 3066 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\themtc 3067 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\columnwidth 3068 {\mtcPackageWarning[W0003]{minitoc}%
3069 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete (ignored)
3070 \MessageBreak
3071 command}%
3072 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
3073 \newcounter{mtc}
3074 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3075 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
3076 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3077 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
3078 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
3079 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
3080 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}

```

W0003

```

\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 3081 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
\slt@rule 3082 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
\mtcindent 3083 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
3084 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
3085 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
3086 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
3087 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
3088 \mtcindent=24\p@

```


9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

```

\mtcfont  We define these commands with full NFSS [291] descriptions. These definitions are effective
\mtcSfont if \chapter is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the \mtcsetfont
\mtcSSfont macro (section 9.67.2 on page 377) and the \mtcsettitlefont macro later (section 9.67.3
\mtcSSSfont on page 381).
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 3089 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 3090 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 3091 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 3092 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 3093 \let\mlffont\mtcfont \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 3094 \let\mltfont\mtcfont \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
3095 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

\coffeeont And \coffeeont is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [300].

3096 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}

```

9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized in `\df@mtitc`, `\do@mtitc` `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro later (section 9.35.1 on the following page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 3097 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 3098 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 3099 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3100 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3101 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 3102 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 3103 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 3104 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 3105 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt

```

```

3106 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
3107 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

9.34 The mtc@verse environment

`mtc@verse` Each minitoc is placed inside a `mtc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\mtc@verse` and `\endmtc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\list` `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to `\mtcindent`. `\endmtc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break. The `mtc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\mtcoffset`).

```

\topsep
\parsep
\mtcindent 3108 \def\mtc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
3109 \list{}}%
3110 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \partopsep=\z@
3111 \listparindent=\itemindent \topsep=1ex
3112 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3113 \leftmargin=\mtcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
3114 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+1}%
3115 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-1}%
3116 }%
3117 \item[]
3118 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

9.35.1 The \minitoc command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic `\chapter` minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3119 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\minitoc@}{\minitoc@d}}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.81.2.2 on page 424).

```
3120 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
3121 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mtc` (long extensions) or `.M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
3122 \if@mtc@longext@
3123   \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
3124 \else
3125   \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
3126 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).
`\if@mtc@FE`
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

I0006

```
3127   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3128   \if@mtc@FE
3129   \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3130     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3131   \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
3132   \else
```

`\thispagemininitocstyle` We call `\thispagemininitocstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```

3133      \thispageminitocstyle
3134 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%

\beforeminitoc We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page
samepage breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
\do@mtitc corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules
\e@mti are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
\n@mti top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.
\c@mti
\l@mti 3135      \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 3136      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3137      \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3138      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
\mtctitle 3139      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3140      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 3141      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 3142      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
3143      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\mtc@rule 3144      \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
\columnwidth 3145      \raggedright
tabular 3146      \parskip=\z@%
3147      \reset@font\mtcfont%
3148      \parindent=\z@%
3149      \nopagebreak[4]%
3150      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3151      \par\noindent %%
3152      \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
3153      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3154      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3155      \end{tabular}%
3156      \else
3157      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3158      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
3159      \end{tabular}%
3160      \fi

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
\mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:
\mtcindent
\mtcoffset 3161      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3162      \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3163      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3164      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3165      \begin{mtc@verse}{\mtcoffset}%

```

`\c@tocdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minitocdepth` (`\c@minitocdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minitocdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3166      \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3167      \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [14]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mtc@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mtc@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
`\openminitoc` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
`\ifminitoc` file.
`\closeminitoc`

```
\mtcsetformat 3168 \beginngroup
\mtc@strut 3169   \makeatletter
3170   \ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
3171   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3172   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3173   \mtc@setform%
3174   \openminitoc \global\inminitoctrue
3175   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3176   \global\inminitocfalse\closeminitoc
3177   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
3178   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3179   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminitoc`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminitoc 3180   \end{mtc@verse}%
3181   \kernafterminitoc
3182   \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3183   \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3184   \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi
```

`\mtc@bottom@rule` And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:

```
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 3185 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3186   \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3187   \vskip -2.5ex
3188   \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}
```

9.35.2 The `\minilof` command

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command is very similar to the `\minitoc` command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).
`\chapter`

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3189 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{ \minilof@}]{ \minilof@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.81.2.2 on page 424).

```
3190 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
3191 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is .mlf (long extensions) or .F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
3192 \if@mtc@longext@%
3193   \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
3194 \else
3195   \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
3196 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).
`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

I0006

```

3197      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3198      \if@mtc@FE
3199      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3200          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3201      \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
3202      \else

```

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```

3203      \thispageminilofstyle
3204      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page
`samepage` breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
`\do@mtitc` corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules
`\e@mti` are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
`\n@mti` top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.
`\c@mti`

```

\l@mti 3205      \beforeminilof
\r@mti 3206      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3207      \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3208      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 3209      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3210      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 3211      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 3212      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 3213      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3214      \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3215      \raggedright
3216      \parskip=\z@
3217      \reset@font\mlffont
3218      \parindent=\z@
3219      \nopagebreak[4]%
3220      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3221      \par\noindent
3222      \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
3223      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3224      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3225      \end{tabular}%
3226      \else
3227      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3228      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\\hline
3229      \end{tabular}%
3230      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

`\mtcindent`

```
\mlf@offset 3231 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3232 \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3233 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3234 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3235 \begin{mtc@verse}\mlf@offset%
```

`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```
3236 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3237 {c@lofdepth=c@minilofdepth
3238 \ifnumc@lofdepth<1\relaxc@lofdepth=1\fi}
3239 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [14]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
`\ifinminilof` The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table
`\openminilof` file.
`\closeminilof`

```
\mtcsetformat 3240 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 3241 \makeatletter
3242 \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
3243 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
3244 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3245 \mlf@setform
3246 \global\openminilof\inminiloftrue
3247 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3248 \global\inminiloffalse\closeminilof
3249 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3250 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3251 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line (`\\`) is
`\\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilof 3252 \end{mtc@verse}%
```



```

3253      \kernafterminilof
3254      \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3255      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3256      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi}%

```

9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic
`\chapter` minilot).

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```

3257 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\minilot@}{\minilot@d}}

```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.81.2.2 on page 424).

```

3258 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3259 \global\@minilot@used@true

```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@mtc@longext@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mlt` (long extensions) or `.T` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilot.

```

3260 \if@mtc@longext@%
3261 \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%

```

```

3262 \else
3263   \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
3264 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then we test (via \mtc@CkFile) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).

\if@mtc@FE

\if@mtc@empty@minilot@

I0006

```

3265   \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3266   \if@mtc@FE
3267   \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3268     {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3269   \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
3270   \else

```

\thispageminilotstyle We call \thispageminilotstyle to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```

3271   \thispageminilotstyle
3272 %%   \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%

```

\beforeminilot We call \beforeminilot, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to \mltfont.

```

\l@mti 3273   \beforeminilot
\r@mti 3274   \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3275   \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3276   \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 3277   \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3278   \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 3279   \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 3280   \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mti
\mlt@rule 3281   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3282   \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3283   \raggedright
3284   \parskip=\z@%
3285   \reset@font\mltfont%
3286   \parindent=\z@%
3287   \nopagebreak[4]%
3288   \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3289   \par\noindent
3290   \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
3291   \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3292   \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\

```

```

3293     \end{tabular}%
3294   \else
3295     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3296       \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\ \hline
3297     \end{tabular}%
3298   \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```

\mtcindent
\mltoffset 3299     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\ \mtc@BBR
mtc@verse 3300     \leftmargin\mtcindent \rightmargin\mtcindent
3301             \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3302             \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3303             \begin{mtc@verse}{\mltoffset}%

```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where `\lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```

3304     \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3305     {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3306     \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3307     \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald ARSENEAU for his notocite package [14]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\closeminilot
\mtcsetformat 3308 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 3309   \makeatletter
3310           \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
3311           {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}}
3312           \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3313           \mlt@setform
3314           \global\openminilot\inminilottrue
3315           \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3316           \global\inminilotfalse\closeminilot
3317           \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3318           \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3319           \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

```

    mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminilot. The blank line (\) is
    \ essential.
    samepage
\afterminilot 3320 \end{mtc@verse}%
               3321 \kernafterminilot
               3322 \nopagebreak[4]\mkt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
               3323 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
               3324 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi}%

```

9.36 Patching the \chapter command, continued

```

\l@xchapter First, we define \l@xchapter which is like \l@chapter, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its
\@dottedtocline printing (except if you cheat):
\l@chapter
\chapter 3325 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
          3326 \def\chapter{xchapter}

```

```

\@chapter Then we patch \@chapter (the non-starred branch of \chapter) to add pseudo-chapter
\sv@chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the \dominiXXX commands
\addcontentsline to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).
\ignorespaces
          3327 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
          3328 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[{\#1}]{\#2}\relax%
          3329 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{\#1}%
          3330 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{\#1}%
          3331 \ignorespaces}

```

```

\mtc@schapter We also patch \@schapter (the starred branch of \chapter) to add marks in the TOC
\@schapter to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the \dominiXXX commands to take slices
\addtocontents from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as \relax, they should not perturbate other
\chapterbegin packages.
\chapterend
          3332 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
          3333 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
          3334 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
          3335 \let\chapterbegin\relax
          3336 \let\chapterend\relax

```

9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

`\addstarredsection` If the command `\chapter` is undefined, we define the command `\addstarredsection`
`\addstarredchapter` (only if `\section` is defined). If the command `\chapter` is defined, we define the com-
`\addstarredpart` mand `\addstarredchapter`. If the command `\part` is defined, we define the command
`\chapter` `\addstarredpart`. We use the utility command `\addst@rred` defined in section 9.31 on
`\section` page 295.
`\part`
`\addst@rred`

```

3337 \ifundefined{chapter}%
3338   {\ifundefined{section}%
3339     {}{\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
3340     {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
3341 \ifundefined{part}%
3342   {}{\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}
```

9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro
`\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

3343 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3344   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3345     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3346     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3347      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3348      \interlinepenalty\@M
3349      \leavevmode
3350      \@tempdima #3\relax
3351      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3352      {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak \nobreak\null
3353      \par}%
3354   \fi}
```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:

```

3355 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
3356   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3357     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3358     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3359      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3360      \interlinepenalty\@M
3361      \leavevmode
3362      \@tempdima #3\relax
3363      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3364      {\#4}\nobreak \hfill \nobreak\null
3365      \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
3366   \fi}
```

```

3366 \par}%
3367 \fi}

```

9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,
`\minilot@` if true, replace locally `\@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `\@Undottedtoclinep`.
`\@dottedtocline` Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section`
`\@Undottedtoclinep` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```

\sv@minitoc@
\sv@minilof@ 3368 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\sv@minilot@ 3369 \let\sv@minitoc@minitoc@
3370 \def\minitoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3371 \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%
3372 \let\sv@minilof@minilof@
3373 \def\minilof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3374 \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%
3375 \let\sv@minilot@minilot@
3376 \def\minilot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3377 \sv@minilot@[#1]}}

```

`\sv@parttoc@` For the part level:

```

\sv@partlof@
\sv@partlot@ 3378 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\ifundottedmtc 3379 \let\sv@parttoc@parttoc@
\parttoc@ 3380 \def\parttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
\partlof@ 3381 \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}%
\partlot@ 3382 \let\sv@partlof@partlof@
3383 \def\partlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3384 \sv@partlof@[#1]}}%
3385 \let\sv@partlot@partlot@
3386 \def\partlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3387 \sv@partlot@[#1]}}

```

`\sv@secttoc@` For the section level:

```

\sv@sectlof@
\sv@sectlot@ 3388 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\ifundottedmtc 3389 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
\secttoc@ 3390 \let\sv@secttoc@secttoc@
\sectlof@ 3391 \def\secttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
\sectlot@ 3392 \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}%
3393 \let\sv@sectlof@sectlof@
3394 \def\sectlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3395 \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}%

```

```

3396 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
3397 \def\sectlot@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3398 \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}}

```

9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course, very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous \LaTeX run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\contentsline` `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

`\dominitoc` As `\dominitoc` has an optional argument, whose default value is “1” (left), it calls `\dominitoc@` with a argument delimited by brackets.

`\dominitoc@`

`@@dominitoc`

`\ifdominitoc@used@` The macros are `\dominitoc` (user interface), which calls `\dominitoc@[1]` (or with the optional argument of `\dominitoc`). Then `\dominitoc@[1]` processes its argument and calls `@@dominitoc`. `@@dominitoc` calls `\@dominitoc` (passing `\jobname` as argument) then close the minitoc file written. `\@dominitoc` reset to zero the counter of mini-tables, calls `\MTC@next#1.toc` (where `#1` is the value of `\jobname`), then reset again to zero the counter of mini-tables. Each call to `\dominitoc@` (i.e., to `\dominitoc`) sets the flag `\@dominitoc@used@true`. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have correctly called `\minitoc` *after* `\dominitoc` and that both or neither have been called). See section 9.81.2.2 on page 424. The code is similar for `\dominilof` and `\dominilot`.

`\dominitoc` The `\dominitoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and create the minitocs files, with the adequate extension.

`\@dominitoc`

`\MTC@next`

```

\@ifnextchar 3399 \def\@dominitoc#1{%
3400 \makeatletter
3401 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3402 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3403 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\@dominitoc@]{\dominitoc@[1]}

```

`\dominilof` The `\dominilof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and create the minilofs files, with the adequate extension.

`\@dominilof`

`\MLF@next`

```

\@ifnextchar 3404 \def\@dominilof#1{%

```

```

3405 \makeatletter
3406 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3407 \MLF@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3408 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}

```

\dominilot The \dominilot command extracts information from the .lot file and create the minilots files, with the adequate extension.

```

\MLT@next
\@ifnextchar
3409 \def\dominilot#1{%
3410 \makeatletter
3411 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3412 \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3413 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}

```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtitc 3414 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
\@mti 3415 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3416 \if@dominitoc@used@
\c@mti 3417 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3418 {The \string\dominitoc \space command
\r@mti 3419 \MessageBreak
\@dominitoc 3420 has been invoked more than once
3421 \MessageBreak}
3422 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3423 \fi
3424 \fi
3425 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
3426 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\@mti%
3427 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
3428 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
3429 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
3430 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
3431 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3432 \@dominitoc}

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilf 3433 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
\@mti 3434 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3435 \if@dominilof@used@
\c@mti 3436 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3437 {The \string\dominilof \space command
\r@mti 3438 \MessageBreak
\@dominilof 3439 has been invoked more than once
3440 \MessageBreak}

```



```

3441 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3442 \fi
3443 \fi
3444 \global\@dominilof@used@true
3445 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
3446 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
3447 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
3448 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
3449 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
3450 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3451 \@@dominilof}

```

\if@dominilot@used@ \if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@given@true Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\df@mtilt 3452 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\@mti 3453 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 3454 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 3455 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3456 {The \string\dominilot \space command
\r@mti 3457 \MessageBreak
3458 has been invoked more than once
3459 \MessageBreak}
3460 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3461 \fi
3462 \fi
3463 \global\@dominilot@used@true
3464 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
3465 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
3466 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
3467 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
3468 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
3469 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3470 \@@dominilot}

```

\@@dominitoc \@@dominilof \@@dominilot These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file descriptor.

```

\tf@mtc 3471 \def\@@dominitoc{\@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3472 \def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3473 \def\@@dominilot{\@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros ⁸:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 3474 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          3475 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
          3476 \MTC@loop{#1}%
          3477 }

\MTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 3478 \def\MTC@toc{%
          3479 \ifx\MTC@list\empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
          3480 }

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\arabic esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
\chapter but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 3481 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
          3482 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
          3483 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
          3484 \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\themtc it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname
\tf@mtc 3485 \if@mtc@longext@%
\closeout 3486 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\openout 3487 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
          3488 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
          3489 \else
          3490 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
          3491 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
          3492 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
          3493 \fi
          3494 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          3495 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
          3496 \fi

```

I0033

⁸ This code is derived from the xr package [114], by David P. CARLISLE, with his permission. Some modifications were made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of hyperref, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the hyperlink argument in the contents lines.

`\if@mtc@longext@` We need a similar code to detect TOC entries for appendices in the memoir class⁹:

```

\themtc
\mtcname 3497 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
\tf@mtc 3498 \stepcounter{mtc}%
\closeout 3499 \if@mtc@longext@%
\openout 3500 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3501 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
3502 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
3503 \else
3504 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3505 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
3506 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
3507 \fi
3508 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3509 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
3510 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register `\mtc@toks` is used as a verbatim memory.

```
3511 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectionning commands, below `\chapter`:

```

\section
\subsection
\subsubsection 3512 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
\paragraph 3513 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 3514 \fi
3515 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
3516 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3517 \fi
3518 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
3519 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3520 \fi
3521 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
3522 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3523 \fi
3524 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
3525 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3526 \fi

```

`\coffee` A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for `\coffee`:

```

\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
3527 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
3528 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
3529 \fi

```

⁹ Tim ARNOLD has signaled the problem; thanks!

I0033

```

\starchapter If it is \starchapter (for a starred chapter), we increment the mtc counter, build a new
\stepcounter minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.
\if@mtc@longext@
  \mtcname 3530 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
  \themtc 3531 \stepcounter{mtc}%
  \tf@mtc 3532 \if@mtc@longext@
\closeout 3533 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\openout 3534 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc@gobble}%
3535 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
3536 \else
3537 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3538 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc@gobble}%
3539 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
3540 \fi
3541 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3542 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
3543 \fi

```

```

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 3544 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 3545 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 3546 \fi
3547 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
3548 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3549 \fi
3550 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
3551 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3552 \fi
3553 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
3554 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3555 \fi
3556 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
3557 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3558 \fi
3559 }

```

```

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
\MTC@next process the first one:
\MTC@list
3560 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

```

```

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc 3561 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read

```

W0010

I0024

```

3562 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3563 \mtcPackageWarning[W0010]{minitoc}%
3564 {No file #1.
3565 \MessageBreak
3566 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
3567 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3568 \else
3569 \mtcPackageInfo[I0024]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
3570 \expandafter\MTC@read
3571 \fi
3572 }

```

```

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
\read
\@inputcheck 3573 \def\MTC@read{%
\MTC@line 3574 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

```

\MTC@test The ..... make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
\MTC@line
\MTC@ 3575 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@%
3576 }%

```

```

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit
\MTC@contentsline chapters10:

```

```

\MTC@test Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\MTC@contentsline the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\contentsline the next file in the list.
\mtc@string
\@input 3577 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{%
\MTC@list 3578 \ifx#1\contentsline
\chapterend 3579 \let\mtc@string\string
\closeout 3580 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\tf@mtc 3581 \let\mtc@string\relax
\openout 3582 \else\ifx#1\@input
\chapterbegin 3583 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
\addtocounter 3584 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MTC@toc 3585 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
\MTC@read 3586 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3587 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3588 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3589 \fi\fi\fi\fi

```

¹⁰The macro \MTC@test has been patched to call \MTC@contentsline with four parameters instead of three (thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE and A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS). The same remark applies to similar macros.

```

3590 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3591 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3592 \else
3593 \expandafter\MTC@read
3594 \fi
3595 }%

```

9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLF@list`

`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```

3596 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3597 \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
3598 \MLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLF@list`

```

\MLF@explist 3599 \def\MLF@lof{%
3600 \ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}

```

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

```

3601 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3602 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3603 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3604 \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

`\if@mtc@longext@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

`\themtc`

`\mlfname` 3605 `\if@mtc@longext@%`

`\closeout` 3606 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%`

`\tf@mtc`

`\openout`

```

3607      {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
3608      \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
3609      \else
3610      \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3611      {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
3612      \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
3613      \fi
3614      \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3615      \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
3616      \fi

```

\figure The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. If we
 \subfigure found a \figure entry, we copy it into the minilof file:
 \mtc@toks

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline 3617 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
3618 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3619 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
3620 \fi
3621 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
3622 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3623 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
3624 \fi
3625 }

```

\MLF@explist The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the
 \MLF@next first one:
 \MLF@list

```

3626 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

\MLF@loop And now, we scan the .lof file:
 \openin
 \@inputcheck 3627 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
 \MLF@lof 3628 \ifeof\@inputcheck
 \MLF@read 3629 \mtcPackageWarning[W0008]{minitoc}%
 3630 {No file #1.
 3631 \MessageBreak
 3632 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
 3633 \expandafter\MLF@lof
 3634 \else
 3635 \mtcPackageInfo[I0034]{minitoc}%
 3636 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
 3637 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

W0008

I0034

```

\MLF@read  Read the next entry in the .lof file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3638 \def\MLF@read{%
              3639  \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

\MLF@line  The ..... make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:
\MLF@test
\MLF@ 3640  \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line.....\MLF@%
      3641  }%

\MLF@test  The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit
           chapters.

\contentsline  Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string    the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 3642 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{%
\chapterend 3643  \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3644  \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3645  \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3646  \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3647  \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3648  \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 3649  \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 3650  \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
           3651  \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
           3652  \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
           3653  \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
           3654  \fi\fi\fi\fi
           3655  \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
           3656  \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

\MLT@next This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
 \MLT@list
 \MLT@loop Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
3657 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3658   \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
3659   \MLT@loop{#1}}
```

\MLT@lot Checks if the list is empty:
 \MLT@list
 \MLT@explist 3660 \def\MLT@lot{%
 3661 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}

\MLT@contentsline The macro \MLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If \xchapter is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
3662 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3663   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}%
3664   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3665     \stepcounter{mtc}%
3666   }
```

\if@mtc@longext@ The name of the minilot file it build from \jobname and a long or short extension:

I0033

```
\themtc
\mltname 3666   \if@mtc@longext@%
\closeout 3667   \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3668     {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc@gobble}%
\openout 3669     \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
3670   \else
3671     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
3672     {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc@gobble}%
3673     \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
3674   \fi
3675   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3676   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
3677   \fi
```

\table The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. If we
 \subtable found a \table entry, we copy it into the minilot file:
 \mtc@toks

```
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3678 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
3679   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3680 }
```

```

3680 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
3681 \fi
3682 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
3683 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3684 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
3685 \fi
3686 }

```

```

\MLT@explist The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLT@next to process the
\MLT@next first one:
\MLT@list
3687 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}

```

```

\MLT@loop And now, we scan the .lot file:
\openin
\@inputcheck 3688 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLT@lot 3689 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLT@read 3690 \mtcPackageWarning[W0009]{minitoc}%
3691 {No file #1.
3692 \MessageBreak
3693 MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
3694 \expandafter\MLT@lot
3695 \else
3696 \mtcPackageInfo[I0037]{minitoc}%
3697 {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
3698 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

```

W0009

I0037

```

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3699 \def\MLT@read{%
3700 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

```

```

\MLT@line The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
\MLT@ 3701 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@%
3702 }%

```

```

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
chapters.

```

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 3703 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{%
\chapterend 3704 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3705 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3706 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\openout 3707 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3708 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3709 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 3710 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 3711 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3712 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3713 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3714 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3715 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3716 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
3717 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a `\@ifundefined{chapter}` alternative).

```
3718 }%
```

9.43 Macro to write a contents line

```

\mtc@dot The \MTC@WriteContentsline macro makes the definition of \MTC@contentsline shorter.
\MTC@WriteContentsline An extra \edef level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):
\mtc@param
\write The arguments of \MTC@WriteContentsline are:
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont
\mtc@string #1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
\contentsline #2: font shorthand  $\Rightarrow$  \csname #2font\endcsname;
\mtc@toks #3: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
#4: the #4 argument of \MTC@contentsline (hyperlink).

```

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`.

```

3719 \def\mtc@dot{.}
3720 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3721 \def\mtc@param{#4}%
3722 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3723 {\string\reset@font

```

```

3724 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3725 \string\mtc@string
3726 \string\contentsline{#1}%
3727 {\the\mtc@toks}%
3728 {\string\reset@font
3729 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3730 \space #3%
3731 }%
3732 \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
3733 \else
3734 {#4}%
3735 \fi
3736 }%
3737 }%
3738 }

```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:

<code>\write</code>	
<code>\tf@mtc</code>	
<code>\@resetfont</code>	#1: the #1 argument of <code>\MTC@contentsline</code> ;
<code>\coffee@font</code>	
<code>\mtc@string</code>	#2: the #3 argument of <code>\MTC@contentsline</code> .
<code>\mtc@toks</code>	

The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`. Le registre *token* `\mtc@toks` est utilisé pour passer l’entrée à `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`.

```

3739 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3740 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3741 {\string\reset@font \string\coffee@font \string\mtc@string
3742 {\the\mtc@toks}%
3743 {\string\reset@font \string\coffee@font \space #3%
3744 }%
3745 }%
3746 }%
3747 }

```

9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

<code>\newcounter</code>	
<code>\setcounter</code>	
<code>\c@lofdepth</code>	
<code>\c@lotdepth</code>	

```

3748 \AtBeginDocument{%
3749 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3750 {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
3751 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%

```

```

3752   {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
3753 }%

```

9.45 Part level commands

`\xpart` If `\part` is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the parttocs and
`\theptc` related commands (`\theptc`, `\Thepart`, `\adjustptc`, `\decrementptc`, `\incrementptc`),
`\Thepart` the obsolete command `\firstpartis`, and the depth counter `parttocdepth`.
`\adjustptc`
`\decrementptc` 3754 `\@ifundefined{part}{}%`
`\incrementptc` 3755 `{%`
`\firstpartis` 3756 `\def\xpart{xpart}`
`\firstpartis` 3757 `\def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}`
`\if@firstpartis@used@` 3758 `\def\firstpartis#1%`
`\newcounter` 3759 `{\mtcPackageWarning[W0004]{minitoc}%`
`\setcounter` 3760 `{\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete (ignored)`
3761 `\MessageBreak`
3762 `command}%`
3763 `\@firstpartis@used@true}`
3764 `\newcounter{ptc}`
3765 `\setcounter{ptc}{0}`
3766 `\newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}`
3767 `\def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}`
3768 `\def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}`
3769 `\def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}`
3770 `\newcounter{parttocdepth}`
3771 `\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}`

W0004

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is
`\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except
if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and
partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```

3772 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3773   {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
3774   {\let\ptc@rule\relax}

```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```

3775 \newlength\ptcindent
3776 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}

```

9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

```

\ptcfont  We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if \chapter is defined
\ptcSfont (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont 3777 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\ptcPfont 3778   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSPfont 3779   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\plffont 3780   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\plfSfont 3781   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\pltfont 3782   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\pltSfont 3783   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\ptifont 3784   \let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
          3785   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont        % (subfigures)
          3786   \let\pltfont\ptcfont          % (tables)
          3787   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont        % (subtables)
          3788   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
          3789 }%

\ptcfont  If \chapter is defined, the fonts are larger and \ptcCfont must be defined:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 3790 {%
\ptcSSfont 3791   \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSSSfont 3792   \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
\ptcPfont 3793   \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
\ptcSPfont 3794   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\plffont 3795   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\plfSfont 3796   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\pltfont 3797   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\pltSfont 3798   \let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\ptifont 3799   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont        % (subfigures)
          3800   \let\pltfont\ptcfont          % (tables)
          3801   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont        % (subtables)
          3802   \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
          3803 }

```

9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

```

\parttoc  We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables
\partlof (\parttoc, \partlof and \partlot). This formatting is different if \chapter is defined or
\partlot  undefined.

```

\c@pti If \chapter is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or
 \l@pti empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
 \r@pti

```
\e@pti 3804 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 3805   \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3806   \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
3807   \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
3808   \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3809   \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}}%
```

\e@pti But, if \chapter is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more
 \n@pti complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```
3810 {%
3811 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}} \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

\l@pti For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3812 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@l{#1}]%
\@afterheading 3813   \else \@makehead@l{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\ptifont 3814 \def\@makehead@l#1{%
\@makehead@l 3815   \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
3816   {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3817   \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
\mtcgapafterheads 3818   }}
```

\r@pti For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3819 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]
\@makehead@r 3820   \else \@makehead@r{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 3821 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
\ptifont 3822   \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3823   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3824   \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3825   }}
```

\c@pti For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3826 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]%
\@makehead@c 3827   \else \@makehead@c{#1}\@afterheading \fi}
\@afterheading 3828 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
\ptifont 3829   \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3830   {\parindent \z@ \centering \ptifont #1\par \nobreak
\mtcgapafterheads 3831   \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3832   }}%
3833 }
```

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:
\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 3834 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 3835 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilf 3836 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti \let\df@ptilt\l@pti
\do@ptilt
\df@ptilt

```

9.48 The ptc@verse environment

```

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to
\ptc@verse the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and
\endptc@verse \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then
\ call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent,
\@centercr \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is
\list active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight
\itemsep option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to
\itemindent \ptcindent. \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break. The
\listparindent ptc@verse environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like
\topsep \ptcoffset).
\parsep
\parskip 3837 \def\ptc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
\partopsep 3838 \list{}}%
\ptcindent 3839 \topsep=1ex \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@
\iftightmtc 3840 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
\ifktightmtc 3841 \leftmargin=\ptcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
3842 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
3843 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
3844 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+1}
3845 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-1}
3846 }%
3847 \item[]
3848 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.49 The part level mini-tables: \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot

```

\parttoc These commands are essentially similar to the \minitoc command, except that they should
\partlof be placed after a \part command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the format-
\partlot ting is different and depends on the availability of the \chapter command (for the fonts and
the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The \partlof and \partlot commands
are siblings of the \parttoc command. Note that \parttoc, \partlof and \partlot
use page styles, because \beforepart... and \afterpart... commands imply usually
a \clear[double]page command, and hence \markboth{...}{...} must be called.

```


9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First, `\parttoc@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
3849 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar{\parttoc@}\parttoc@d}}
```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc file):

```
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@mtc@longext@
\@tocfile
\Thepart 3850 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
3851 \global\@parttoc@used@true
3852 \if@mtc@longext@%
3853 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
3854 \else
3855 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
3856 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3857 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3858 \if@mtc@FE
3859 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3860 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3861 \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
3862 \else
```

I0006

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```
3863 \beforeparttoc
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```
\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle 3864 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 3865 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
\ptctitle 3866 \thispageparttocstyle
3867 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}}%
```

```

\do@ptitc A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
\e@pti parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
\n@pti
\c@pti 3868 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 3869 \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\e@pti
\r@pti 3870 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\n@pti
\df@pti 3871 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 3872 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\ptctitle 3873 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 3874 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\df@ptitc
samepage 3875 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
3876 \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\e@pti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc,
\parskip then we set the font:
\ptcfont
3877 \raggedright \reset@font\ptcfont \parskip=\z@ \parindent=\z@%
3878 \nopagebreak[4]\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3879 \par\noindent \nopagebreak[4]%

\ptc@rule The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\columnwidth the parttoc.
\ptifont
\do@ptitc 3880 \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v 3881 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 3882 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\hline 3883 \end{tabular}%
3884 \else
3885 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3886 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
3887 \end{tabular}%
3888 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position close the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\ptcindent
3889 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3890 \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3891 \itemindent=\z@ \labelwidth=\z@ \labelsep=\z@ \listparindent=\z@%

ptc@verse We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally)
\ptcoffset to parttocdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary
\c@tocdepth to avoid a negative indentation.
\c@parttocdepth
\mtc@BBR

```

```

3892      \begin{ptc@verse}{\ptc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
3893      \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtc@setformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```

\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\ptc@setform
\ifinparttoc
\openparttoc
\closeparttoc 3894 \begin{group}
  \@tocfile 3895   \makeatletter
  \mtc@strut 3896   \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
  ptc@verse 3897     {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
              3898   \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
              3899     {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
              3900      \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}{}}{}}
              3901   \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
              3902   \ptc@setform
              3903   \openparttoc\global\inparttoctrue
              3904   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
              3905   \global\inparttocfalse\closeparttoc
              3906   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
              3907   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
              3908   \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
              3909   \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterparttoc`.

`\mtc@zrule`

`samepage`

```

\afterparttoc 3910   \kernafterparttoc
              3911   \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
              3912   \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
              3913   \par\ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
              3914   \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

9.49.2 The `\partlof` command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, `\partlof@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

3915 \def\partlof{\ifnextchar[{\partlof@}{\partlof@d}}

```

`\partlof@` The `\partlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlof@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `\if@partlof@used@` partlof file):

```
\@tocfile
\Thepart 3916 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
3917 \global\@partlof@used@true
3918 \if@mtc@longext@%
3919 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
3920 \else
3921 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
3922 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3923 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3924 \if@mtc@FE
3925 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
3926 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3927 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
3928 \else
```

I0006

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
3929 \beforepartlof
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:

```
\@mkboth
\thispagepartlofsty 3930 \ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\MakeUppercase 3931 {\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 3932 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
3933 \thispagepartlofsty
3934 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
3935 }%
```

`\do@ptilf` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti 3936 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 3937 \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\e@pti
\r@pti 3938 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti
\df@pti 3939 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 3940 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\plftitle 3941 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti
3942 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf
\if@mtc@FE 3943 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 3944 \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc,
`\parskip` then we set the font:
`\plffont`

```
3945 \raggedright
3946 \parskip=\z@%
3947 \reset@font\plffont%
```

`\plf@rule` The parttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\columnwidth` the partlof.

```
\ptifont
\do@ptilf 3948 \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 3949 \nopagebreak[4]%
\plftitle 3950 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 3951 \par\noindent
3952 \ifx\plf@rule\relax
3953 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3954 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
3955 \end{tabular}%
3956 \else
3957 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3958 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\ \hline
3959 \mtc@hstrut\\
3960 \end{tabular}%
3961 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:

```
\ptcindent
3962 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
3963 \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
3964 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3965 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is
`\plffoffset` forced (locally) to `partlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank
`\mtc@BBR` line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```
3966 \begin{ptc@verse}{\plffoffset}%
3967 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3968 {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
3969 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3970 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

```

\plf@pgno    If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \plf@setform. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
\plf@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
\ifinpartlof
\openpartlof 3971 \beginngroup
\closepartlof 3972 \makeatletter
\@tocfile 3973 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
\mtc@strut 3974 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
ptc@verse 3975 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3976 \plf@setform
3977 \openpartlof\global\inpartloftrue
3978 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
3979 \global\inpartloffalse\closepartlof
3980 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
3981 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3982 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
3983 \end{ptc@verse}%

\plf@rule    The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule    is not defined), and \afterpartlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.
samepage
\afterpartlof 3984 \kernafterpartlof
3985 \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
3986 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3987 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
3988 \afterpartlof\fi}

```

9.49.3 The \partlot command

\partlot This command must be used after \part if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, \partlot@ detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \partlot@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
3989 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[\partlot@]{\partlot@[d]}
```

```

\partlot@    The \partlot@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlot@used@ (for a
\if@partlot@used@ consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot
\if@mtc@longext@ file):
\@tocfile
\Thepart 3990 %
3991 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
3992 \global\@partlot@used@true
3993 \if@mtc@longext@%

```

```

3994 \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
3995 \else
3996 \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
3997 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

I0006

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 3998 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3999 \if@mtc@FE
4000 \mtc@PackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4001 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4002 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
4003 \else

```

\beforepartlot If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, \beforepartlot, of course:

```

4004 \beforepartlot

```

\mtc@markboth If \chapter is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 4005 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\MakeUppercase 4006 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 4007 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
4008 \thispagepartlotstyle
4009 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
4010 }%

```

\do@ptilt A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```

\@pti
\@npti
\@c@pti 4011 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 4012 \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\@e@pti
\@r@pti 4013 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\@n@pti
\@df@pti 4014 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4015 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\@l@pti
\plttitle 4016 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4017 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\@df@ptilt
4018 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 4019 \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot,
`\parskip` then we set the font:
`\pltfont`

```

4020      \raggedright
4021      \parskip=\z@%
4022      \reset@font\pltfont%
4023      \parindent=\z@%
4024      \nopagebreak[4]%
4025      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4026      \par\noindent

```

`\plt@rule` The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\columnwidth` the partlot.

```

\ptifont
\do@ptilt 4027      \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 4028      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 4029      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 4030      \end{tabular}%
4031      \else
4032      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4033      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
4034      \mtc@hstrut\\
4035      \end{tabular}%
4036      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:

```

\ptcindent
4037      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4038      \leftmargin\ptcindent \rightmargin\ptcindent
4039      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4040      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is
`\pltoffset` forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\mtc@BBR
4041      \begin{ptc@verse}{\pltoffset}%
4042      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4043      {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
4044      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4045      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```



```

\plt@pgno  If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \plt@setform. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the ptc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
\plt@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
\ifinpartlot
\openpartlot 4046 \beginngroup
\closepartlot 4047 \makeatletter
\@tocfile 4048 \@ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
\mtc@strut 4049 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
ptc@verse 4050 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4051 \plt@setform
4052 \openpartlot\global\inpartlottrue
4053 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4054 \global\inpartlotfalse\closepartlot
4055 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4056 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4057 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4058 \end{ptc@verse}%

\ptc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule is not defined), and \afterpartlot. The blank line (\\) is essential.
samepage
\afterpartlot 4059 \kernafterpartlot
4060 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4061 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4062 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4063 \afterpartlot\fi}

```

9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

```

\@dottedtocline The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that \l@xpart
\l@xpart uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These
\l@pchapter commands are similar to \l@subsection, only the arguments have been altered:
\l@psect
\pchapter 4064 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect 4065 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4066 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4067 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
4068 \def\psect{psect}

```

9.51 Patching the `\part` command, continued

```

\sv@part We patch both branches of the \part command: \@part (unstarred \part) and \@spart
\mtc@svpart (\part*). We add the incrementation of the ptc counter to both branches. In the unstarred
\@part branch, we add xpart entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we
\addtocontents add a \partbegin line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real
\sv@spart (\relax).
\ptc@spart
\@spart 4069 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 4070 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 4071 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend 4072 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
4073 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
4074 \stepcounter{ptc}
4075 \let\sv@spart\@spart
4076 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
4077 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
4078 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
4079 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
4080 \let\partend\relax
4081 \let\partbegin\relax

```

9.52 The `\doparttoc` command and its siblings

```

\doparttoc The \doparttoc command works like the \dominitoc command, \dopartlof like
\dopartlof \dominilof and \dopartlot like \dominilot.
\dopartlot

```

```

\@doparttoc The \doparttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .ptc(N)
\PTC@next files (.ptc becomes .P on MS-DOS).
\setcounter

```

```

4082 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
4083   \makeatletter
4084   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4085   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}%

```

```

\@dopartlof The \dopartlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .plf(N)
\PLF@next files (.plf becomes .G on MS-DOS).
\setcounter

```

```

4086 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
4087   \makeatletter
4088   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4089   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}%

```

`\dopartlot` The `\dopartlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.plt` (N) files (`.plt` becomes `.U` on MS-DOS).
`\PLT@next`
`\setcounter`

```
4090 \def\dopartlot#1{%
4091   \makeatletter
4092   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4093   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
```

`\doparttoc` We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dopartlof`
`\dopartlot` 4094 `\def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}`
`\@ifnextchar` 4095 `\def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}`
4096 `\def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}`

`\doparttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\doparttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045
`\if@mtc@hints@`
`\if@doparttoc@used@`
`\@mtc@hints@given@true` 4097 `\def\doparttoc@[#1]{%`
`\df@ptitc` 4098 `\if@mtc@hints@`
`\e@pti` 4099 `\if@doparttoc@used@`
`\n@pti` 4100 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%`
`\c@pti` 4101 `{The \string\doparttoc \space command`
`\l@pti` 4102 `\MessageBreak`
`\r@pti` 4103 `has been invoked more than once`
4104 `\MessageBreak}`
4105 `\global\@mtc@hints@given@true`
4106 `\fi`
4107 `\fi`
4108 `\global\@doparttoc@used@true`
4109 `\if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%`
4110 `\else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%`
4111 `\else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%`
4112 `\else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%`
4113 `\else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%`
4114 `\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%`
4115 `\@@doparttoc}`

`\dopartlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dopartlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation. I0045
`\if@dopartlof@used@`
`\if@mtc@hints@`
`\@mtc@hints@given@true` 4116 `\def\dopartlof@[#1]{%`
`\df@ptilf` 4117 `\if@mtc@hints@`
`\e@pti` 4118 `\if@dopartlof@used@`
`\n@pti` 4119 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%`
`\c@pti` 4120 `{The \string\dopartlof \space command`
`\l@pti` 4121 `\MessageBreak`
`\r@pti` 4122 `has been invoked more than once`

```

4123         \MessageBreak}
4124     \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4125     \fi
4126 \fi
4127 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
4128 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\e@pti%
4129 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
4130 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
4131 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
4132 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
4133 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4134 \@@dopartlof}

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
 \if@mtc@hints@ partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

I0045

```

\dopartlot@used@ 4135 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 4136 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4137 \if@dopartlot@used@
\n@pti 4138 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4139 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\l@pti 4140 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4141 has been invoked more than once
4142 \MessageBreak}
4143 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4144 \fi
4145 \fi
4146 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
4147 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\e@pti%
4148 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
4149 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
4150 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
4151 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%
4152 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4153 \@@dopartlot}

```

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
 \@@dopartlof file descriptor.

```

\dopartlot
\tf@mtc 4154 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4155 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4156 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
 \PTC@list
 \PTC@loop

```

4157 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4158   \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
4159   \PTC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\PTC@toc    Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 4160 \def\PTC@toc{%
4161   \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

I0033

```

\part
\theptc
\tf@mtc
\ptcname
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4162 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
4163   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
4164     \stepcounter{ptc}%
4165     \if@mtc@longext@%
4166       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4167       {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
4168       \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4169     \else
4170       \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4171       {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
4172       \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4173     \fi
4174     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4175     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4176   \fi
4177   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
4178     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

I0033

```

4179   \if@mtc@longext@%
4180     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4181     {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4182     \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4183   \else
4184     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4185     {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
4186     \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4187   \fi
4188   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4189   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4190 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```
4191 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters, sections, etc.:

```
\chapter
\pchapter
\section 4192 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 4193 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 4194 \fi
\subsubsection 4195 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\appendix
\paragraph 4196 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 4197 \fi
4198 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
4199 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
4200 \fi
4201 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4202 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4203 \fi
4204 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
4205 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
4206 \fi
4207 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4208 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4209 \fi
4210 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4211 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4212 \fi
4213 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4214 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4215 \fi
4216 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4217 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4218 \fi
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectioning commands:

```
\starchapter
\starsection 4219 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 4220 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubsubsection 4221 \fi
\starparagraph 4222 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starsubparagraph 4223 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4224 \fi
4225 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
4226 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4227 \fi
4228 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4229 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4230 \fi
4231 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
```

```

4232 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4233 \fi
4234 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4235 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4236 \fi
4237 }

```

`\PTC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\PTC@next` to process the first one:

`\PTC@next`

`\PTC@list`

```

4238 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}

```

`\PTC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

`\PTC@toc`

`\PTC@read`

W0013
I0025

```

4239 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4240 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4241 \mtcPackageWarning[W0013]{minitoc}%
4242 {No file #1
4243 \MessageBreak
4244 PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4245 \expandafter\PTC@toc
4246 \else
4247 \mtcPackageInfo[I0025]{minitoc}%
4248 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
4249 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}

```

`\PTC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

`\PTC@line`

```

4250 \def\PTC@read{%
4251 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line

```

`\PTC@test` The make sure that `\PTC@test` has enough arguments:

`\PTC@line`

```

4252 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line. . . . \PTC@%
4253 }%

```

`\PTC@test` The `\PTC@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\PTC@list the next file in the list.
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read 4254 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{%
\partend 4255 \ifx#1\contentsline
4256 \let\mtc@string\string
4257 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4258 \let\mtc@string\relax
4259 \else\ifx#1\@input
4260 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
4261 \else\ifx#1\partend
4262 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4263 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4264 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4265 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4266 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4267 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
4268 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

```

\PLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
\PLF@list
\PLF@loop 4269 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4270 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
4271 \PLF@loop{#1}}

```

```

\PLF@lof Check if the list is empty:
\PLF@list
\PLF@explist 4272 \def\PLF@lof{%
4273 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}

```

```

\PLF@contentsline The macro \PLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects inter-
\part esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
\theptc created.
\tf@mtc
\plfname 4274 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 4275 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
4276 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```


`\if@mtc@longext@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
`\plfname` it:

I0033

```

4277 \if@mtc@longext@%
4278 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4279 {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4280 \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4281 \else
4282 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4283 {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
4284 \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
4285 \fi
4286 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4287 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
4288 \fi

```

`\figure` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. Now,
`\subfigure` we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4289 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
4290 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4291 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
4292 \fi
4293 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
4294 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4295 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfS}{#3}{#4}%
4296 \fi
4297 }

```

`\PLF@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call `\PLF@next` to
`\PLF@next` process the first one:

```

\PLF@list
4298 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

`\PLF@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
`\PLF@lof` process the next entry in the list.

W0011

I0035

```

\PLF@read
4299 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4300 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4301 \mtcPackageWarning[W0011]{minitoc}%
4302 {No file #1
4303 \MessageBreak
4304 PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4305 \expandafter\PLF@lof
4306 \else
4307 \mtcPackageInfo[I0035]{minitoc}%
4308 {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
4309 \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

`\PLF@read` Read the next entry of the .lof file.

```
\PLF@line
4310 \def\PLF@read{%
4311   \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line
```

`\PLF@test` The make sure that `\PLF@test` has enough arguments:

```
\PLF@line
4312   \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line.....\PLF@%
4313 }%
```

`\PLF@test` The `\PLF@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

`\PLF@contentsline` Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is `\@input`, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\PLF@list
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read 4314 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{%
\partend 4315   \ifx#1\contentsline
4316     \let\mtc@string\string
4317     \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4318     \let\mtc@string\relax
4319   \else\ifx#1\@input
4320     \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
4321   \else\ifx#1\partend
4322     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4323     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4324   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4325     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4326   \fi\fi\fi\fi
4327   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
4328   \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%
```

9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PLT@list
\PLT@loop 4329 \def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4330   \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
4331   \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

```

\PLT@lot    Check if the list is empty:
\PLT@list
\PLT@explist 4332 \def\PLT@lot{%
              4333   \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}

```

```

\PLT@contentsline The macro \PLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects inter-
                    \part      esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot file is
                    \theptc     created.
                    \tf@mtc
                    \pltname 4334 \def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%
\PLT@WriteContentsLine 4335   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
                    4336     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\pltname         it:

```

I0033

```

4337   \if@mtc@longext@
4338     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4339     {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
4340     \def\pltname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
4341   \else
4342     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4343     {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
4344     \def\pltname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
4345   \fi
4346   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4347   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\pltname
4348   \fi

```

```

\table The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now,
\subtable we filter the relevant contents lines:
\mtc@toks
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4349 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
4350   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4351   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
4352 \fi
4353 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
4354   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4355   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
4356 \fi
4357 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:
 \PLT@next
 \PLT@list

```
4358 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}
```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.
 \PLT@lot
 \PLT@read

W0012
I0038

```
4359 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4360   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4361     \mtcPackageWarning[W0012]{minitoc}%
4362     {No file #1
4363     \MessageBreak
4364     PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4365   \expandafter\PLT@lot
4366   \else
4367     \mtcPackageInfo[I0038]{minitoc}%
4368     {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
4369     \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}
```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```
4370 \def\PLT@read{%
4371   \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line
```

\PLT@test The make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```
4372   \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line. . . . \PLT@%
4373   }%
```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.
 \mtc@string
 \PLT@list
 \PLT@lot

```
\PLT@read 4374 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{%
\partend 4375   \ifx#1\contentsline
4376     \let\mtc@string\string
4377     \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4378     \let\mtc@string\relax
4379   \else\ifx#1\@input
```

```

4380 \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
4381 \else\ifx#1\partend
4382 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4383 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4384 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4385 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4386 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4387 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
4388 \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 325):

```

4389 }%

```

9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create new counters for the depths
\c@lofdepth of the corresponding mini-tables: sectlofdepth and sectlotdepth. These counters are
\c@lotdepth initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument
\newcounter block:
\setcounter

4390 \AtBeginDocument{%
4391 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4392 {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
4393 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4394 {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
4395 }%

```

9.54 Section-level commands

```

\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ The section-level commands are defined only if \chapter is not defined, hence in article-like
\if@mtc@section@def@ document classes, and only if \section is defined:

```

```

4396 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@

```

```

\firstsectionis We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
\adjuststc stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
\decrementstc depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
\incrementstc the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
\stc@rule sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
\stcindent
\columnwidth 4397 \def\firstsectionis#1{\mtcPackageWarning[W0005]{minitoc}%

```

W0005

```

4398     {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete (ignored)
4399     \MessageBreak
4400     command}%
4401     \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4402 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4403 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4404 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4405 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4406 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
4407 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4408 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4409 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 4410 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 4411 \let\stcSSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 4412 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 4413 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 4414 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 4415 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 4416 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
4417 \let\sltSfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
4418 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

9.56 Internal macros for title positionning

```

\l@sti Some internal macros for title positionning, from the optional arguments of \dosecttoc and
\c@sti \secttoc commands (and siblings). Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a
\r@sti vertical correction for empty titles, from Frank MITTELBACH):
\l@sti
\l@sti 4419 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\hfill}
4420 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\hfill}
4421 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill}
4422 \def\l@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
4423 \def\r@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

\do@stic By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stic
\do@stilf 4424 \let\do@stic\l@sti
\df@stilf 4425 \let\df@stic\l@sti
\do@stilt
\df@stilt
\l@sti

```

```

4426 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
4427 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
4428 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
4429 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

9.57 The `stc@verse` environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `\ifktightmtc` `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored. The `stc@verse` environment has an argument which is an horizontal offset (a command like `\stcoffset`).

```

4430 \def\stc@verse#1{\let\=\@centercr
4431 \list{}}{%
4432 \itemsep=\z@ \itemindent=\z@ \topsep=lex
4433 \listparindent=\itemindent \partopsep=\z@
4434 \iftightmtc \parsep=\z@ \fi
4435 \ifktightmtc \parskip=\z@ \fi
4436 \leftmargin=\stcindent \rightmargin=\leftmargin
4437 \addtolength{\leftmargin}{+#1}%
4438 \addtolength{\rightmargin}{-#1}%
4439 }%
4440 \item[]}%
4441 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.58 The `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, and `\sectlot` commands

These three commands are very similar.

9.58.1 The `\secttoc` command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4442 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[\secttoc@]{\secttoc@d}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for
`\if@secttoc@used@` a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the
`\if@mtc@longext@` secttoc file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 4443 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
4444 \global\@secttoc@used@true
4445 \if@mtc@longext@%
4446 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestc}%
4447 \else
4448 \def\@tocfile{S\thestc}%
4449 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is
`\if@mtc@FE` not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
4450 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4451 \if@mtc@FE
4452 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4453 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4454 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
4455 \else

```

I0006

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesecttocstyle` code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4456 \beforesecttoc
4457 \thispagesecttocstyle

```

`\do@sttc` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positioning argument. If the title is empty,
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positioning.

```

\@sti
\c@sti 4458 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\l@sti 4459 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\r@sti 4460 \if #1e\let\do@sttc\e@sti
\df@sti 4461 \else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\n@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4462 \else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sti
\stctitle 4463 \else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4464 \else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sti
samepage 4465 \else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc
4466 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4467 \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\e@sti\relax\fi

```


`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc, then we set the font:
`\parskip`
`\stcfont`

```
4468      \raggedright
4469      \parskip=\z@%
4470      \reset@font\stcfont%
4471      \parindent=\z@%
4472      \nopagebreak[4]%
```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```
\columnwidth
\stifont
\do@stitle 4473      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4474      \par\noindent
\stc@title 4475      \nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4476      \ifx\stc@rule\relax
4477      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4478      \reset@font\stifont\do@stitle{\mtc@v\stc@title}\\
4479      \end{tabular}%
4480      \else
4481      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4482      \reset@font\stifont\do@stitle{\mtc@v\stc@title}\\\hline
4483      \end{tabular}%
4484      \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
`\mtc@BBR`

```
\stcindent
4485      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4486      \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4487      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4488      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```
\stc@offset
\c@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth 4489      \begin{stc@verse}{\stc@offset}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
\mtc@BBR 4490      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtc@setformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

```
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\stc@setform
\ifinsecttoc
\opensecttoc
\closesecttoc
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
stc@verse
```

```

4491 \begingroup
4492   \makeatletter
4493   \stc@setform%
4494   \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
4495   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4496   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4497   \stc@setform%
4498   \opensecttoc\global\insecttoctrue
4499   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4500   \global\insecttocfalse\closesecttoc
4501   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
4502   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4503   \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4504   \end{stc@verse}%

```

`\stc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
`\mtc@zrule` `\aftersecttoc`.

```

samepage
\aftersecttoc 4505   \kernaftersecttoc
4506   \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4507   \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4508   \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

9.58.2 The `\sectlof` command

`\sectlof` The `\sectlof` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlof (no automatic
`\sectlof@` sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilof` (but simpler). First, `\sectlof` detects
`\ifnextchar` the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then,
`\sectlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4509 \def\sectlof{\ifnextchar[\sectlof@]{\sectlof@[d]}}

```

`\sectlof@` The `\sectlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlof@used@` (for
`\if@sectlof@used@` a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the
`\if@mtc@longext@` sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 4510 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
4511 \global\@sectlof@used@true
4512 \if@mtc@longext@%
4513   \def\@tocfile{slf\thestc}%
4514 \else
4515   \def\@tocfile{H\thestc}%
4516 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not
`\if@mtc@FE` here or is empty:
`\@tocfile`

I0006

```

4517      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4518      \if@mtc@FE
4519      \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4520          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4521      \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
4522      \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
`\thispagesectlofsty` code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4523      \thispagesectlofsty
4524      %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
4525      \beforesectlof

```

`\do@stilf` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\do@sti
\c@sti 4526      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 4527      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
\r@sti 4528      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
\df@sti 4529      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4530      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 4531      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4532      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
samepage 4533      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4534      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,
`\parskip` then we set the font:
`\slffont`

```

4535      \raggedright
4536      \parskip=\z@%
4537      \reset@font\slffont%
4538      \parindent=\z@%
4539      \nolinebreak[4]%

```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of
`\stifont` the sectlof.

```

\columnwidth
\do@stilf 4540      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nolinebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4541      \par\noindent
\slftitle
\hline

```

```

4542     \ifx\slf@rule\relax
4543     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4544     \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
4545     \end{tabular}%
4546     \else
4547     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4548     \mtc@hstrut
4549     \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
4550     \end{tabular}%
4551     \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

\mtc@BBR

\stcindent

```

4552     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4553     \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
4554     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4555     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

\slfoffset

\c@tocdepth

\c@sectlofdepth

\mtc@BBR

```

4556     \begin{stc@verse}{\slfoffset}%
4557     \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4558     {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
4559     \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
4560     \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its

\@dottedtocline

\@undottedtocline

undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.

\slf@setform

\ifinsectlof

\opensectlof

\closesectlof

\@tocfile

\mtc@strut

stc@verse

```

4561 \begingroup
4562 \makeatletter
4563 \@ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
4564 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}%
4565 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4566 \slf@setform%
4567 \opensectlof\global\insectloftrue
4568 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4569 \global\insectloffalse\closesectlof
4570 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4571 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.
samepage
\aftersectlof 4572 \kernaftersectlof
4573 \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4574 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4575 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```

9.58.3 The \sectlot command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4576 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[\sectlot@]{\sectlot@d}}{}
```

`\sectlot@` The `\sectlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 4577 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
4578 \global\@sectlot@used@true
4579 \if@mtc@longext@%
4580 \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
4581 \else
4582 \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
4583 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

I0006

```

\@tocfile
4584 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4585 \if@mtc@FE
4586 \mtcPackageInfo[I0006]{minitoc}%
4587 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4588 \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
4589 \else

```

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4590 \thispagesectlotstyle
4591 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
4592 \beforesectlot

```

```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
  \e@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
  \n@sti
  \c@sti 4593      \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \l@sti 4594      \if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
  \r@sti 4595      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
  \df@sti 4596      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4597      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\slttitle 4598      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4599      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
  samepage 4600      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
  4601      \mtc@CkStr{\slttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot,
  \parskip then we set the font:
  \sltfont
  4602      \raggedright
  4603      \parskip=\z@%
  4604      \reset@font\sltfont%
  4605      \parindent=\z@%
  4606      \nopagebreak[4]%

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
  tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
  \stifont the sectlot.
\columnwidth
\do@stilt 4607      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
  \mtc@v 4608      \par\noindent
\slttitle 4609      \ifx\stc@rule\relax
  \hline 4610      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
  4611      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\
  4612      \end{tabular}%
  4613      \else
  4614      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
  4615      \mtc@hstrut
  4616      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\ \hline
  4617      \end{tabular}%
  4618      \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
  \mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
  4619      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
  4620      \leftmargin\stcindent \rightmargin\stcindent
  4621      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
  4622      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally)
\c@tocdepth to sectlotdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 4623 \begin{stc@verse}{\sltoffset}%
4624 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4625 {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
4626 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4627 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\slt@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its
\@dottedtocline undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat
\@undottedtocline are activated via \slt@setform. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile the stc@verse environment is terminated. The “open” and “close” features are called just
\slt@setform before and after the insertion of the mini-table file.
\ifinsectlot
\opensectlot 4628 \begingroup
\closesectlot 4629 \makeatletter
\@tocfile 4630 \ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
\mtc@strut 4631 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
stc@verse 4632 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
4633 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4634 \slt@setform%
4635 \opensectlot\global\insectlottrue
4636 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}%
4637 \global\insectlotfalse\closesectlot
4638 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4639 \end{stc@verse}%

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
samepage
\aftersectlot 4640 \kernaftersectlof
4641 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4642 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4643 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi}%

```

9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and
\@dottedtocline LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line
\l@chapter (except if you cheat).
\l@xsect
\l@chapter 4644 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4645 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}

```

```

4646 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4647 \def\xsect{xsect} \def\schapter{schapter}

```

9.60 Patching the \section command (continued)

\@sect We patch the both branches of the \section command: \@sect for the unstarred version and
\addcontentsline \@ssect for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (\@sect), we add a xsect
contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test \ifnum #2=1 restricts the action to the
section level macros (because \@sect is also used by \subsection and below, which have
no mini-tables).

```

4648 \let\sv@sect\@sect
4649 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4650 \ifnum #2=1\relax
4651   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4652   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4653 \fi
4654 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}

```

\section If it is a section (unstarred or starred via \starsection), we add a xsect entry in the LOF
\starsection and in the LOT.
\addcontentsline

```

4655 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
4656 \expandafter
4657 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
4658   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4659   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4660 \fi
4661 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
4662   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4663   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4664 \fi

```

\@svsec And the remainder of the section header formatting:
\refstepcounter
\@tempskipa 4665 \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
\@hangfrom 4666 \let\@svsec\@empty
\addcontentsline 4667 \else
\numberline 4668 \refstepcounter{#1}%
\@svsechd 4669 \edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%
\@xsect 4670 \fi
4671 \@tempskipa #5\relax
4672 \ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@
4673 \begingroup #6\relax
4674 \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%


```

4675         {\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%
4676     \endgroup
4677     \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline
4678     {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4679         \else
4680             \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
4681             \fi
4682             #7}%
4683 \else
4684     \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
4685     \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
4686     {#7}\addcontentsline
4687     {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
4688         \else
4689             \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
4690             \fi
4691         #7}}%
4692 \fi
4693 \@xsect{#5}}

```

\@sect Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands \sectbegin \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 4694 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4695 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4696     \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4697     \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4698     \fi
4699     \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[[#7]][#8]}
4700 \let\sectend\relax
4701 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

\dosecttoc The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc(N)
 \@dosecttoc files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).
 \STC@next

```

4702 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
4703     \makeatletter
4704     \setcounter{stc}{0}
4705     \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlof` The `\dosectlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.slf`(N) files (`.slf` becomes `.H` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosectlof`
`\SLF@next`

```
4706 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
4707   \makeatletter
4708   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4709   \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.slt`(N) files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).
`\@dosectlot`
`\PLT@next`

```
4710 \def\@dosectlot#1{%
4711   \makeatletter
4712   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4713   \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` 4714 `\def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{dosecttoc@[1]}`
`\@ifnextchar` 4715 `\def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{dosectlof@[1]}`
4716 `\def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{dosectlot@[1]}`

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of
`\if@mtc@hints@` secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`
`\if@dosecttoc@used@` 4717 `\def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%`
`\df@sttc` 4718 `\if@mtc@hints@`
`\e@sti` 4719 `\if@dosecttoc@used@`
`\n@sti` 4720 `\mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%`
`\c@sti` 4721 `{The \string\dosecttoc \space command`
`\l@sti` 4722 `\MessageBreak`
`\r@sti` 4723 `has been invoked more than once`
4724 `\MessageBreak}`
4725 `\global\@mtc@hints@given@true`
4726 `\fi`
4727 `\fi`
4728 `\global\@dosecttoc@used@true`
4729 `\if #1e\let\df@sttc\e@sti%`
4730 `\else\if #1n\let\df@sttc\n@sti%`
4731 `\else\if #1c\let\df@sttc\c@sti%`
4732 `\else\if #1l\let\df@sttc\l@sti%`
4733 `\else\if #1r\let\df@sttc\r@sti%`
4734 `\fi\fi\fi\fi%`
4735 `\@@dosecttoc}`

```

\dosectlof@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlof (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4736 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 4737 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@sti 4738 \if@dosectlof@used@
\@n@sti 4739 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@sti 4740 {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\@l@sti 4741 \MessageBreak
\@r@sti 4742 has been invoked more than once
4743 \MessageBreak}
4744 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4745 \fi
4746 \fi
4747 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
4748 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\@e@sti%
4749 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\@n@sti%
4750 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\@c@sti%
4751 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\@l@sti%
4752 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\@r@sti%
4753 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4754 \@@dosectlof}

```

I0045

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosectlot@used@ 4755 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\df@stilt 4756 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@sti 4757 \if@dosectlot@used@
\@n@sti 4758 \mtcPackageInfo[I0045]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@sti 4759 {The \string\dosectlot \space command
\@l@sti 4760 \MessageBreak
\@r@sti 4761 has been invoked more than once
4762 \MessageBreak}
4763 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4764 \fi
4765 \fi
4766 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
4767 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\@e@sti%
4768 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\@n@sti%
4769 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\@c@sti%
4770 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\@l@sti%
4771 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\@r@sti%
4772 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4773 \@@dosectlot}

```

I0045

`\@@dosecttoc` These macros invoke the `\@dosect...` commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
`\@@dosectlof` file descriptor.
`\@@dosectlot`

```
\tf@mtc 4774 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4775 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4776 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
```

`\STC@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

`\STC@list`

```
\STC@loop 4777 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4778 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
4779 \STC@loop{#1}}
```

`\STC@toc` Check if the list is empty:

`\STC@list`

```
\STC@explist 4780 \def\STC@toc{\%
4781 \ifx\STC@list@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}
```

`\STC@contentsline` The macro `\STC@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If `\section` is
`\section` found, the `stc` counter is incremented and a new `secttoc` file is created.

`\thestc`

```
\tf@mtc 4782 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{\%
```

```
\stcname 4783 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%
```

```
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4784 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4785 \stepcounter{stc}%
```

`\if@mtc@longext@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
`\stcname` it:

```
4786 \if@mtc@longext@%
4787 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4788 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4789 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4790 \else
4791 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4792 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
4793 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
4794 \fi
4795 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4796 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
4797 \fi
```

I0033

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline` or `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
`\MTC@WriteContentsline`

```

\coffee 4798 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subsection 4799 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsubsection 4800 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\paragraph 4801 \fi
\subparagraph 4802 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4803 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4804 \fi
4805 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4806 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4807 \fi
4808 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4809 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
4810 \fi
4811 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4812 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4813 \fi

```

`\starsection` A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:
`\stepcounter`

I0033

```

\thetoc 4814 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\arabic 4815 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@mtc@longext@ 4816 \gdef\thetoc{\arabic{stc}}
\stcname 4817 \if@mtc@longext@%
\closeout 4818 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
\openout 4819 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetoc}%
4820 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetoc}%
4821 \else
4822 \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4823 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetoc}%
4824 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetoc}%
4825 \fi
4826 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4827 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
4828 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` We process the entries for starred sectioning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 4829 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
\starparagraph 4830 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 4831 \fi
4832 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4833 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4834 \fi
4835 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4836 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
4837 \fi
4838 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph

```

```

4839   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4840   \fi
4841 }

```

\STC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \STC@next to process the first one.

\STC@next process the first one.

\STC@list

```

4842 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

\STC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

\STC@toc

\STC@read

W0016

I0026

```

4843 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4844   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4845     \mtcPackageWarning[W0016]{minitoc}%
4846     {No file #1
4847       \MessageBreak
4848       SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4849     \expandafter\STC@toc
4850   \else
4851     \mtcPackageInfo[I0026]{minitoc}%
4852     {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
4853     \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

\STC@line

```

4854 \def\STC@read{%
4855   \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line

```

\STC@test The make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

\STC@line

```

4856   \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line. . . . \STC@%
4857 }%

```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

\STC@contentsline

```

\mtc@string
\STC@list 4858 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{%
\STC@toc 4859   \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 4860     \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4861     \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4862     \let\mtc@string\relax
4863   \else\ifx#1\@input

```

```

4864     \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
4865 \else\ifx#1\sectend
4866     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4867     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4868 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4869     \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4870 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4871 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
4872 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%

```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLF@list

```

\SLF@loop 4873 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4874     \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
4875     \SLF@loop{#1}}

```

\SLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

\SLF@list

```

\SLF@explist 4876 \def\SLF@lof{%
4877     \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}

```

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.

\thestc

\tf@mtc 4878 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%

\slfname 4879 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%

\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4880 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect

4881 \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

4882 \if@mtc@longext@%
4883     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4884     {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
4885     \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
4886 \else
4887     \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4888     {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
4889     \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
4890 \fi
4891 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4892 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
4893 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`. Now, `\MTC@WriteContentsline` we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

\figure
\subfigure 4894 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
4895 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
4896 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
4897 \fi
4898 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
4899 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
4900 \fi
4901 }

```

`\SLF@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call `\SLF@next` to process the first one.

```

\SLF@next
\SLF@list
4902 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

`\SLF@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, `\SLF@lof` process the next entry in the list.

```

\SLF@read
4903 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4904 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4905 \mtcPackageWarning[W0014]{minitoc}%
4906 {No file #1
4907 \MessageBreak
4908 SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4909 \expandafter\SLF@lof
4910 \else
4911 \mtcPackageInfo[I0036]{minitoc}%
4912 {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
4913 \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}

```

W0014
I0036

Read the next entry of the `.lof` file.

`\SLF@read` The make sure that `\SLF@test` has enough arguments:

```

\SLF@test
\SLF@line 4914 \def\SLF@read{%
4915 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
4916 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@%
4917 }%

```

`\SLF@test` The `\SLF@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit sections;

```

\mtc@string
\SLF@list 4918 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{%
\SLF@lof
\SLF@read
\sectend
\sectbegin

```



```

4919 \ifx#1\contentsline
4920   \let\mtc@string\string
4921   \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4922   \let\mtc@string\relax
4923 \else\ifx#1\@input
4924   \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
4925 \else\ifx#1\sectend
4926   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4927   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4928 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4929   \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4930 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4931 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
4932 \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%

```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@loop 4933 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4934   \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
4935   \SLT@loop{#1}}

```

\SLT@lot Check if the list is empty:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@explist 4936 \def\SLT@lot{%
4937   \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

```

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.

\thestc

```

\tf@mtc 4938 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{%

```

```

\sltname 4939   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%

```

```

\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4940   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
4941   \stepcounter{stc}%

```

\if@mtc@longext@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

\sltname

```

4942 \if@mtc@longext@%
4943   \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4944   {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
4945   \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
4946 \else
4947   \mtcPackageInfo[I0033]{minitoc}%
4948   {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
4949   \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
4950 \fi

```

```

4951 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4952 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
4953 \fi

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline. Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

\table
\subtable 4954 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
4955 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
4956 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
4957 \fi
4958 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
4959 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
4960 \fi
4961 }

```

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to process the first one.

```

\SLT@list
4962 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\SLT@read
4963 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
4964 \ifeof@inputcheck
4965 \mtcPackageWarning[W0015]{minitoc}%
4966 {No file #1
4967 \MessageBreak
4968 SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4969 \expandafter\SLT@lot
4970 \else
4971 \mtcPackageInfo[I0039]{minitoc}%
4972 {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
4973 \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

W0015
I0039

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read The make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:

```

\SLT@test
\SLT@line 4974 \def\SLT@read{%
4975 \read\inputcheck to\SLT@line
4976 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@%
4977 }%

```

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
\SLT@contentsline sections;
\mtc@string
\SLT@list 4978 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{%
\SLT@lot 4979 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 4980 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 4981 \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
\sectbegin 4982 \let\mtc@string\relax
4983 \else\ifx#1\@input
4984 \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
4985 \else\ifx#1\sectend
4986 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4987 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4988 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
4989 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
4990 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4991 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
4992 \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```

4993 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
4994 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@

```

9.63 The \mtcprepare command

```

\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 4995 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\mtcprepare@}{\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 4996 \def\mtcprepare[#1]{%
\jobname 4997 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\doparttoc 4998 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}{}%
\dopartlof 4999 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}{}%
\dopartlot 5000 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}{}%
5001 }%
\doinitoc 5002 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\dominilof 5003 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
\dominilot 5004 {}%
\dosecttoc 5005 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}{}%
\dosectlof 5006 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}{}%
\dosectlot 5007 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}{}%
\mtcPackageInfo

```

I0048

```

5008 }%
5009 }{%
5010 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}{}%
5011 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}{}%
5012 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}{}%
5013 }%
5014 \if@mtc@hints@
5015   \@mtc@hints@given@true
5016   \mtcPackageInfo[I0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
5017     {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
5018       \MessageBreak
5019       hints about the preparation commands,
5020       \MessageBreak
5021       because it invokes ALL the preparation
5022       \MessageBreak
5023       commands allowed by the document class,
5024       \MessageBreak
5025       without any previous check\@gobble}%
5026 \fi
5027 }

```

9.64 Use with \nofiles

`\nofiles` In case the document uses the `\nofiles` command (in its preamble), the auxiliary files for the mini-tables should not be overwritten by the preparation commands, so these ones must be just faked; as these commands may have an optional argument, they will be faked using the internal \LaTeX macro `\@ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`. Problem signaled by Andreas DEININGER.

```

5028 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}

```

```

\AtBeginDocument  A test is placed in a \AtBeginDocument and gives a warning if \nofiles is used:
  \if@filesw
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 5029 \AtBeginDocument{\if@filesw\relax\else
5030   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0098]{minitoc}%
5031   {--- You have used the \string\nofiles\space command
5032     \MessageBreak
5033     in your preamble; all preparation commands
5034     \MessageBreak
5035     in the body of the document will be ignored}

```

Since `\nofiles` has been used, we must disable all the preparation commands:

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doarttoc
\doartlof 5036 \def\doarttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\doartlot 5037 \def\doartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
          5038 \def\doartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilo 5039 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 5040 \def\dominilo{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
          5041 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlo 5042 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 5043 \def\dosectlo{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
          5044 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
          5045 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

          End of the inhibition of the preparation commands and of the \AtBeginDocument block:

          5046 \fi}

```

9.65 Necessary \l@... commands

```

\l@listof  Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
\l@startpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection 5047 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\l@starsubsection 5048 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\l@starsubsubsection 5049 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@startpart\l@part}
\l@starparagraph 5050 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starsubparagraph 5051 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
                  5052 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
                  5053 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
                  5054 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
                  5055 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

9.66 The horizontal rules and their default values

```

\columnwidth We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the various
\noptcrule kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding hor-
\nomtcrule izontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules. We begin with rules for mini-tables of
\nostcrule contents.
\ptcrule
\ptc@rule 5056 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\mtcrule 5057 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\mtc@rule 5058 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 5059 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\stc@rule 5060 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5061 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5062 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5063 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5064 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of figures:
\noplfrule
\nomlfrule 5065 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\noslfrule 5066 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\plfrule 5067 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\plf@rule 5068 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlfrule 5069 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlf@rule 5070 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\slfrule 5071 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5072 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slf@rule 5073 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

\columnwidth Then, the rules for mini-lists of tables:
\nopltrule
\nomltrule 5074 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
\nosltrule 5075 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
\pltrule 5076 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
\plt@rule 5077 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mltrule 5078 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlt@rule 5079 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 5080 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5081 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slt@rule 5082 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

9.67 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands¹¹ have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

9.67.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via `\@nameuse` the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
5083 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
5084 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
5085 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
5086 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
5087 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
5088 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
5089 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
5090 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
5091 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
5092 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
5093 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
5094 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
5095 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
5096 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
5097 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
5098 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
5099 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
5100 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

¹¹ The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms¹² and meaning false or true¹³:

```

5101 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
5102 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
5103 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
5104 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
5105 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
5106 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
5107 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
5108 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
5109 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
5110 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
5111 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
5112 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
5113 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
5114 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
5115 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
5116 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
5117 %
5118 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{no}\def\mtc@YN@on{no}
5119 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@ON{no}
5120 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{no}\def\mtc@YN@yes{no}
5121 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{no}\def\mtc@YN@YES{no}
5122 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@y{no}
5123 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@Y{no}
5124 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{no}\def\mtc@YN@true{no}
5125 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{no}
5126 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{no}\def\mtc@YN@t{no}
5127 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{no}\def\mtc@YN@T{no}
5128 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{no}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{no}
5129 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{no}
5130 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{no}\def\mtc@YN@v{no}
5131 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{no}\def\mtc@YN@V{no}
5132 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{no}
5133 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{no}\def\mtc@YN@oui{no}
5134 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{no}\def\mtc@YN@O{no}
5135 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{no}\def\mtc@YN@o{no}
5136 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{no}
5137 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{no}

```

¹²This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter\csname ... \endcsname`.

¹³O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

9.67.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectionning level keywords (note that `part` is not a member of this family (`sectlevel`), because no contents line for a `part` can appear in a mini-table, `part` being the highest sectionning level); “*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

5138 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
5139 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
5140 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
5141 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
5142 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
5143 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
5144 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
5145 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{} \def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{}
5146 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{} \def\mtc@sectlevel@table{}
5147 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{S}
5148 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{S}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like `subsection` (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [291] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5149 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
5150 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The `\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`. E0013

`\@nameuse`

```

5151 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5152 \@mtc@setfont@true
5153 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5154   \@mtc@setfont@false

```

```

5155 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5156 \mtcPackageError[E0013]{minitoc}%
5157   {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5158     \MessageBreak
5159     (#1).
5160     \MessageBreak
5161     It should be a mini-table type
5162     \MessageBreak
5163     (partoc...sectlot)}}%
5164   {Correct the source code.
5165     \MessageBreak
5166     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5167 \else
5168   \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5169 \fi

```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and
`\if@mtc@setfont@` the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph
`\@nameuse` keyword, we get SP.

E0014

```

5170 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5171 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5172   \@mtc@setfont@false
5173   \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5174   \mtcPackageError[E0014]{minitoc}%
5175     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5176       \MessageBreak
5177       (#2).
5178       \MessageBreak
5179       It should be a sectioning level
5180       \MessageBreak
5181       (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5182     {Correct the source code.
5183       \MessageBreak
5184       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5185 \else
5186   \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5187 \fi

```

`\mtc@tmp@name` Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
`\mtc@mta@abbrev`
`\mtc@level@abbrev` 5188 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get `mtcSSfont`, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a `\csname ... \endcsname` pair to apply the constructed command).

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the
mini-table, and the kind14 of the entry must be consistent with that of the mini-table), so we
must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (quarks) with
@mtcqk at the end of their names).

5189 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
5190 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
5191 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}
5192 \def\partlof@mtcqk{partlof@mtcqk}
5193 \def\minilof@mtcqk{minilof@mtcqk}
5194 \def\sectlof@mtcqk{sectlof@mtcqk}
5195 \def\partlot@mtcqk{partlot@mtcqk}
5196 \def\minilot@mtcqk{minilot@mtcqk}
5197 \def\sectlot@mtcqk{sectlot@mtcqk}
5198 \def\part@mtcqk{part@mtcqk}
5199 \def\chapter@mtcqk{chapter@mtcqk}
5200 \def\appendix@mtcqk{appendix@mtcqk}
5201 \def\section@mtcqk{section@mtcqk}
5202 \def\subsection@mtcqk{subsection@mtcqk}
5203 \def\subsubsection@mtcqk{subsubsection@mtcqk}
5204 \def\paragraph@mtcqk{paragraph@mtcqk}
5205 \def\subparagraph@mtcqk{subparagraph@mtcqk}
5206 \def\figure@mtcqk{figure@mtcqk}
5207 \def\table@mtcqk{table@mtcqk}
5208 \def\subfigure@mtcqk{subfigure@mtcqk}
5209 \def\subtable@mtcqk{subtable@mtcqk}
5210 \@mtc@setfont@true
5211 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax
5212   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5213   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5214   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5215   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5216 \fi
5217 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlof@mtcqk\relax
5218   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5219   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5220 \fi
5221 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\partlot@mtcqk\relax
5222   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5223   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5224 \fi
5225 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minitoc@mtcqk\relax
5226   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5227   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5228   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\appendix@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5229   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5230   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5231   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5232   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5233 \fi
5234 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\minilof@mtcqk\relax
5235   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

¹⁴“Kind” being sectionning, (sub-)figure, or (sub-)table.

```

5236 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5237 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5238 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5239 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5240 \fi
5241 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
5242 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5243 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5244 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5245 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5246 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5247 \fi
5248 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
5249 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5250 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5251 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5252 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5253 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5254 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5255 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5256 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5257 \fi
5258 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
5259 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5260 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5261 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5262 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5263 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5264 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5265 \fi
5266 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
5267 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5268 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5269 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\appendix@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5270 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5271 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5272 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5273 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed
\mtc@tmp@name macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log
\mtc@mta@abbrev that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*); if the
\mtc@level@abbrev combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.
\mtc@toks

I0015

E0024

```

5274 \if@mtc@setfont@
5275 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
5276 \mtc@toks{#3}
5277 \mtcPackageInfo[I0015]{minitoc}%
5278 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
5279 \MessageBreak
5280 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5281 \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%

```

```

5282 \else
5283   \mtcPackageError[E0024]{minitoc}%
5284     {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
5285       \MessageBreak
5286       first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5287     {Correct the source code.
5288       \MessageBreak
5289       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5290 \fi}

```

9.67.3 The `\mtcsettitlefont` command

`\mtcsettitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [291] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5291 \newif\if@mtc@settitlefont@\@mtc@settitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
5292 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored
`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

```

5293 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5294 \@mtc@settitlefont@true
5295 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
5296   \@mtc@settitlefont@false
5297   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5298   \mtcPackageError[E0022]{minitoc}%
5299     {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
5300       \MessageBreak
5301       (#1).
5302       \MessageBreak
5303       It should be a mini-table type

```

E0022

```

5304      \MessageBreak
5305      (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5306      {Correct the source code.
5307      \MessageBreak
5308      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5309 \else
5310   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5311 \fi

```

\if@mtc@settitlefont@ Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:

```

\mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5312 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@toks 5313   \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
5314   \mtc@toks{#2}%
5315   \mtcPackageInfo[I0018]{minitoc}%
5316   {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
5317   \MessageBreak
5318   "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
5319   \MessageBreak
5320   "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5321   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5322 \else
5323   \mtcPackageError[E0034]{minitoc}%
5324   {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
5325   \MessageBreak
5326   an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5327   {Correct the source code.
5328   \MessageBreak
5329   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5330 \fi
5331 }

```

I0018

E0034

9.67.4 The \mtcsettitle command

\mtcsettitle This command is very similar to the \mtcsettitlefont command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like minitoc. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

\if@mtc@settitle@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5332 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
5333 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in
`\if@mtc@settitle@` `\mtc@mtati@abbrev:`
`\@nameuse`

E0021

```
5334 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5335 \@mtc@settitle@true
5336 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5337   \@mtc@settitle@false
5338   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5339   \mtcPackageError[E0021]{minitoc}%
5340     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
5341     \MessageBreak
5342     (#1).
5343     \MessageBreak
5344     It should be a mini-table type
5345     \MessageBreak
5346     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5347   {Correct the source code.
5348   \MessageBreak
5349   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5350 \else
5351   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5352 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitle@` And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:
`\mtc@tmpti@name`

I0017

E0033

```
\mtc@mtati@abbrev 5353 \if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@toks 5354   \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}%
5355   \mtc@toks{#2}%
5356   \mtcPackageInfo[I0017]{minitoc}%
5357   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
5358   \MessageBreak
5359   "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
5360   \MessageBreak
5361   "\the\mtc@toks"}}%
5362   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5363 \else
5364   \mtcPackageError[E0033]{minitoc}%
5365   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
5366   \MessageBreak
5367   an illegal type of table (#1)}}%
5368   {Correct the source code.
5369   \MessageBreak
5370   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5371 \fi
5372 }
```

9.67.5 The `\mtcsetformat` command

`\@namedef` We define first the keywords (family `formatparam`) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```
5373 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
5374 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
5375 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
5376 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
5377 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
5378 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
5379 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
5380 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available
```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```
5381 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

`\@pnumwidth` We take, if possible, the default value of `\@pnumwidth` for each type of mini-tables:

```
\ptcpnumwidth
\mtcpnumwidth 5382 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 5383 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 5384 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 5385 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 5386 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 5387 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 5388 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 5389 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
5390 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
```

`\@tocrmarg` We take, if possible, the default value of `\@tocrmarg` for each type of mini-tables:

```
\ptctocrmarg
\mtclofrmargin 5391 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrmargin 5392 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 5393 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflofrmargin 5394 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflotrmargin 5395 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 5396 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltlofrmargin 5397 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrmargin 5398 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
5399 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
```



```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 5400 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 5401 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 5402 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 5403 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 5404 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 5405 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 5406 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 5407 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
5408 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the \AtBeginDocument block:

```
5409 }%
```

\mtcsetformat The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the mtc@verse-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by \mtcsetformat.

```

\ptc@setform The \ptc@setform macro is invoked in ptc@verse to set format parameters:
ptc@verse
5410 \def\ptc@setform{%
5411 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
5412 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
5413 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
5414 }

```

```

\mtc@setform The \mtc@setform macro is invoked in mtc@verse to set format parameters:
mtc@verse
5415 \def\mtc@setform{%
5416 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
5417 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
5418 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
5419 }

```

```

\stc@setform The \stc@setform macro is invoked in stc@verse to set format parameters:
stc@verse
5420 \def\stc@setform{%
5421 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
5422 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
5423 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
5424 }

```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5425 \def\plf@setform{%
5426 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5427 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5428 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5429 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5430 \def\mlf@setform{%
5431 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
5432 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
5433 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
5434 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5435 \def\slf@setform{%
5436 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
5437 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
5438 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
5439 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
5440 \def\plt@setform{%
5441 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
5442 \let\@tocrmarg\plttoctrmarg\relax
5443 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
5444 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
5445 \def\mlt@setform{%
5446 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5447 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5448 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5449 }
```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
5450 \def\slt@setform{%
5451 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5452 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5453 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5454 }
```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, with has the following syntax:
`\mtcsetformat`

`\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}`

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```
5455 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
5456 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

E0021

```
5457 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5458 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5459 \@mtc@setformat@true
5460 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5461 \@mtc@setformat@false
5462 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5463 \mtcPackageError[E0015]{minitoc}%
5464 {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
5465 \MessageBreak
5466 (#1).
5467 \MessageBreak
5468 It should be a mini-table type
5469 \MessageBreak
5470 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5471 {Correct the source code.
5472 \MessageBreak
5473 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5474 \else \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5475 \fi
```

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

E0016

```
5476 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5477 \@mtc@setformat@false
5478 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5479 \mtcPackageError[E0016]{minitoc}%
```

```

5480     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5481     \MessageBreak
5482     (#2).
5483     \MessageBreak
5484     It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5485     \MessageBreak
5486     pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval}%
5487     {Correct the source code.
5488     \MessageBreak
5489     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5490 \else
5491   \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}%
5492 \fi

```

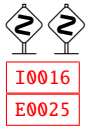
\if@mtc@setformat@ The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value (*via* \edef
 \mtc@tmpfm@name because it can contain some complex code):

\mtc@mtf@abbrev

```

\mtc@fparam@abbrev 5493 \if@mtc@setformat@
5494   \mtc@toks{#3}%
5495   \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}%
5496   \mtcPackageInfo[I0016]{minitoc}%
5497   {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
5498   \MessageBreak
5499   "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5500   \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5501 \else
5502   \mtcPackageError[E0025]{minitoc}%
5503   {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
5504   \MessageBreak
5505   first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5506   {Correct the source code.
5507   \MessageBreak
5508   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
5509 \fi
5510 }

```



9.67.6 The \mtcsetpagenumbers command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

`\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@` We define some flags:

`\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

5511 `\newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false`

5512 `\newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@`

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```
5513 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
5514   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5515   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5516   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}
5517    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}
5518    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
5519   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5520   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
5521    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
5522    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
5523   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5524   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
5525    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
5526    \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
5527   \else
5528   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
5529   \fi
5530 }
```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

5531 `\newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%`

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in `\mtc@pns@abbrev`

E0017

`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

```
5532 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5533 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
5534 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
5535 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5536   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5537   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5538   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5539   \mtcPackageError[E0017]{minitoc}%
5540     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
5541      \MessageBreak
5542      argument (#1)}%
5543     {It should be a mini-table type
5544      \MessageBreak
```

```

5545      (parttoc...sectlot)
5546      \MessageBreak
5547      Correct the source code.
5548      \MessageBreak
5549      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5550 \else
5551   \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5552 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5553 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 5554 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
5555   \@mtc@spn@ok@false
5556   \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5557   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5558   \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5559   \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5560   \mtcPackageError[E0018]{minitoc}%
5561     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
5562     \MessageBreak
5563     argument (#2)}%
5564     {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
5565     \MessageBreak
5566     Correct the source code.
5567     \MessageBreak
5568     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5569 \else
5570   \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5571   \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
5572   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5573   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mttpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
5574   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5575     \mtcPackageInfo[I0022]{minitoc}%
5576     {Page numbers are inhibited
5577     \MessageBreak
5578     for the #1s}
5579   \else
5580     \mtcPackageInfo[I0021]{minitoc}%
5581     {Page numbers are activated
5582     \MessageBreak for the #1s}
5583   \fi
5584   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5585 \fi
5586 }

```

E0018

I0022

I0021

9.67.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```
\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
5587 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
5588 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@
```

```
\mtcsetrules We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
\@ifundefined \mtcsetrules@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only
\mtcsetrules@ once, for the specified type of mini-table.
```

```
5589 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
5590   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5591   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5592   {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}}
5593   \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
5594   \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
5595   \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5596   {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}}
5597   \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
5598   \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
5599   \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5600   {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}}
5601   \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
5602   \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
5603   \else
5604   \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
5605   \fi
5606 }
```

```
\mtcsetrules@ Then the \mtcsetrules@ internal macro, which has two arguments:
```

```
5607 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mttru@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family and store the result in a
 \if@mtc@setrules@ macro \mtc@mttru@abbrev:
 \mtc@rusw@abbrev

E0019

```

  \@nameuse 5608 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
             5609 \@mtc@setrules@true
             5610 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
             5611 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
             5612   \@mtc@setrules@false
             5613   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
             5614   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
             5615   \mtcPackageError[E0019]{minitoc}%
             5616     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
             5617       \MessageBreak
             5618       (#1)}%
             5619   {It should be a mini-table type
             5620     \MessageBreak
             5621     (parttoc...sectlot)
             5622     \MessageBreak
             5623     Correct the source code.
             5624     \MessageBreak
             5625     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
             5626 \else
             5627   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
             5628 \fi

```

\if@mtc@sru@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in a macro
 \mtc@rusw@abbrev \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
 \mtc@mttru@abbrev

E0020

I0008

I0007

```

if@setrules@false 5629 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
                   5630 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@noX 5631   \@mtc@sru@ok@false
          5632   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
          5633   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
          5634   \@mtc@setrules@false
          5635   \mtcPackageError[E0020]{minitoc}%
          5636     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
          5637       \MessageBreak
          5638       (#2)}%
          5639   {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
          5640     \MessageBreak
          5641     Correct the source code.
          5642     \MessageBreak
          5643     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
          5644 \else
          5645   \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
          5646   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
          5647   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
          5648   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
          5649   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
          5650     \mtcPackageInfo[I0008]{minitoc}%
          5651       {Horizontal rules are inhibited
          5652       \MessageBreak

```



```

5653         for the #1s}
5654     \else
5655         \mtcPackageInfo[I0007]{minitoc}%
5656         {Horizontal rules are activated
5657         \MessageBreak
5658         for the #1s}
5659     \fi
5660     \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5661 \fi
5662 }

```

9.67.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “pagestyle” is used.

A family (`ltypetable`) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```

5663 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
5664 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
5665 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
5666 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
5667 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
5668 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
5669 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
5670 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
5671 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

5672 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
5673     \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
5674 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
5675     \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
5676 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@open}{open}%
5677     \def\mtc@featureparam@open{open}
5678 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@close}{close}%
5679     \def\mtc@featureparam@close{close}
5680 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
5681     \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

5682 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
5683 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
5684 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@open}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@open\endcsname{}
5685 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@close}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@close\endcsname{}
5686 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
5687     \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:
`\mtcsetfeature`

```
5688 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
5689 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev:`

E0011

```
5690 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5691 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5692 \@mtc@setfeature@true
5693 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5694   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5695   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5696   \mtcPackageError[E0011]{minitoc}%
5697     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
5698     \MessageBreak
5699     (#1).
5700     \MessageBreak
5701     It should be a mini-table type
5702     \MessageBreak
5703     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5704   {Correct the source code.
5705   \MessageBreak
5706   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5707 \else
5708   \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5709 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` The second argument is a keyword of the `featureparam` family, the result is stored in
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@featparam@`; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted
`\mtc@featparam@third` as a keyword of the `ft3` family and whose result is stored in `\mtc@featparam@third`.
`\@nameuse`

E0012

```
5710 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5711   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5712   \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5713   \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
5714   \mtcPackageError[E0012]{minitoc}%
5715     {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
```

```

5716     \MessageBreak
5717     (#2).
5718     \MessageBreak
5719     It should be a feature param
5720     \MessageBreak
5721     (before, after, open, close, pagestyle)}%
5722     {Correct the source code.
5723     \MessageBreak
5724     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5725 \else
5726     \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
5727     \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
5728 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces
`\mtc@tmpfeat@name` (named `\mtc@featparam@abbrev`, `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`, and `\mtc@featparam@third`
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` respectively), then this macro is executed:
`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`

I0014

E0023

```

\mtc@featparam@third 5729 \if@mtc@setfeature@
5730     \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
5731         {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}%
5732         \mtc@toks{#3}}%
5733     \mtcPackageInfo[I0014]{minitoc}%
5734     {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
5735     \MessageBreak
5736     "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as
5737     \MessageBreak
5738     "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5739     \expandafter\edef\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{\the\mtc@toks}%
5740 \else
5741     \mtcPackageError[E0023]{minitoc}%
5742     {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
5743     \MessageBreak
5744     first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5745     {Correct the source code.
5746     \MessageBreak
5747     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5748 \fi}

```

9.67.9 The `\mtcsetdepth` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the `subfig` package [132]).



\if@mtc@setdepth@ First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5749 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

\mtcsetdepth Then we define the \mtcsetdepth command, with two arguments:

```
5750 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

\mtc@mtade@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the ltypetable family. The result is stored in

E0009

\if@mtc@setdepth@ \mtc@mtade@abbrev:

\@nameuse

```
5751 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5752 \@mtc@setdepth@true
5753 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5754   \@mtc@setdepth@false
5755   \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5756   \mtcPackageError[E0009]{minitoc}%
5757     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
5758     \MessageBreak
5759     (#1).
5760     \MessageBreak
5761     It should be a mini-table type
5762     \MessageBreak
5763     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5764     {Correct the source code.
5765     \MessageBreak
5766     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5767 \else
5768   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5769 \fi
```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:

\mtc@tmpde@name

\mtc@mtade@abbrev 5770 \if@mtc@setdepth@

\mtc@toks 5771 \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}

\setcounter 5772 \@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%

```
5773   {\mtcPackageError[E0008]{minitoc}%
```

```
5774   {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
```

```
5775   \MessageBreak
```

```
5776   an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
```

```
5777   {Correct the source code.
```

```
5778   \MessageBreak
```

```
5779   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}%
```

```
5780 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
```

```
5781 \mtcPackageInfo[I0013]{minitoc}%
```

```
5782   {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
```

```
5783   \MessageBreak
```

```
5784   "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
```

```
5785   \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
```

E0008

I0013

E0010

```

5786 \else
5787   \mtcPackageError[E0010]{minitoc}%
5788     {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
5789     {Correct the source code.
5790     \MessageBreak
5791     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}%
5792 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

9.67.10 The `\mtcsetoffset` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetoffset{mini-table}{value}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *value* is the offset value for a mini-table.

`\if@mtc@setoffset@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5793 \newif\if@mtc@setoffset@\@mtc@setoffset@true
```

`\mtcsetoffset` Then we define the `\mtcsetoffset` command, with two arguments:

```
5794 \newcommand{\mtcsetoffset}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtaof@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in E0042
`\if@mtc@setoffset@` `\mtc@mtaof@abbrev:`
`\@nameuse`

```

5795 \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
5796 \@mtc@setoffset@true
5797 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5798   \@mtc@setoffset@false
5799   \def\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{X}
5800   \mtcPackageError[E0042]{minitoc}%
5801     {\string\mtcsetoffset \space has a wrong first argument
5802     \MessageBreak
5803     (#1).
5804     \MessageBreak
5805     It should be a mini-table type
5806     \MessageBreak
5807     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
5808     {Correct the source code.
5809     \MessageBreak
5810     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5811 \else
5812   \edef\mtc@mtaof@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5813 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setoffset@ And we construct the name of the effective offset and gave it the value:
  \mtc@tmpof@name
\mtc@mtaof@abbrev 5814 \if@mtc@setoffset@
  \mtc@toks 5815 \def\mtc@tmpof@name{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset.}
\setcounter 5816 \@ifundefined{\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset}%
  5817 {\mtcPackageError[E0041]{minitoc}%
  5818 {\string\mtcsetoffset \space attempts to use
  5819 \MessageBreak
  5820 an undefined offset (\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset).}%
  5821 {Correct the source code.
  5822 \MessageBreak
  5823 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
  5824 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
  5825 \mtcPackageInfo[I0052]{minitoc}%
  5826 {\string\mtcsetoffset\space redefines
  5827 \MessageBreak
  5828 "\mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
  5829 \expandafter\def\csname \mtc@mtaof@abbrev offset\endcsname{#2}}}%
5830 \else
5831 \mtcPackageError[E0043]{minitoc}%
5832 {\string\mtcsetoffset:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
5833 {Correct the source code.
5834 \MessageBreak
5835 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{\relax}%
5836 \fi}% end of \mtcsetoffset

```

E0041
I0052
E0043

9.68 Polymorphic entries

`\mtcpolymtoc` A toc entry should be able to have variants when it appears in the normal text (like the mandatory argument of a sectionning command), in a page header or in the main TOC (like the optionnal argument of a sectionning command), in a minitable (parttoc, minitoc or secttoc). `\DeclareRobustCommand` Similar behaviour should be available for entries in the LOF or the LOT. So we define three commands to be used inside the optionnal argument of a sectionning command or of `\caption` for a figure or a table. These commands must be robust (because used in optionnal arguments) and have 4 arguments: (1) the variant to appear in a parttoc (or partlof or partlof), (2) the variant to appear in a minitoc (or minilof or minilof), (3) the variant to appear in a secttoc (or sectlof or sectlof). (4) the variant to appear in the main TOC (or LOF or LOT). The variant to appear locally as title of the sectionning unit or as local caption of the figure or table is the mandatory argument of the sectionning command or of the caption command (see section 1.4.13 on page 43). We use the `\ifin...` flags.

```

5837 \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymtoc}[4]{%
5838   \ifinparttoc\relax{#1}%
5839   \else\ifinminitoc\relax{#2}%
5840   \else\ifinsecttoc\relax{#3}%
5841   \else\relax{#4}
5842   \fi
5843   \fi
5844   \fi}

```

```

\mtcpolymlof For entries of the list of figures:
\DeclareRobustCommand
\ifinpartlof 5845 \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlof}[4]{%
\ifinminilof 5846 \ifinpartlof\relax{#1}%
\ifinsectlof 5847 \else\ifinminilof\relax{#2}%
5848 \else\ifinsectlof\relax{#3}%
5849 \else\relax{#4}
5850 \fi
5851 \fi
5852 \fi}

```

```

\mtcpolymlot For entries of the list of tables:
\DeclareRobustCommand
\ifinpartlot 5853 \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlot}[4]{%
\ifinminilot 5854 \ifinpartlot\relax{#1}%
\ifinsectlot 5855 \else\ifinminilot\relax{#2}%
5856 \else\ifinsectlot\relax{#3}%
5857 \else\relax{#4}
5858 \fi
5859 \fi
5860 \fi}

```

9.69 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```
5861 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false
```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
\mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
\arabic
\addtocontents 5862 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
\setcounter 5863 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
5864 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
5865 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[E0005]{minitoc}%
5866 {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
5867 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
5868 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
5869 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5870 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5871 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\else\mtcPackageError[E0031]{minitoc}%
5872 {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%

```

E0005

E0031

```

5873   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
5874   \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5875   \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

```

\AtBeginDocument   The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must ver-
\if@mtc@Himlof@    ify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these
mtchideinmainlof   environments. This must be done after the loading of the packages.
\mtc@savelofdepth
\empty            First, for the list of figures:
\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth   5876 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\mtc@svf@tocdepth  5877 \AtBeginDocument{%
\arabic           5878 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
\addtocontents    5879   \providecommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\empty}
\setcounter       5880   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
                    5881   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
                    5882    {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
                    5883    {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
                    5884    \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
                    5885    \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
                    5886    \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
                    5887    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
                    5888    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
                    5889    {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
                    5890     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
                    5891     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
                    5892     \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
                    5893     \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
                    5894   }}%
                    5895   %
                    5896   \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
                    5897   \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
                    5898   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
                    5899   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[E0003]{minitoc}%
                    5900    {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
                    5901    {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
                    5902    \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
                    5903    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
                    5904    \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
                    5905    {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[E0029]{minitoc}%
                    5906     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
                    5907     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
                    5908     \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
                    5909     \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}

```

E0003

E0029

```

\AtBeginDocument   Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot   5910 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@savelotdepth  5911 \AtBeginDocument{%
\empty            5912 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@sv@lotdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth
\mtc@svt@tocdepth
\arabic
\addtocontents
\setcounter

```

E0004

E0030


```

5913 \providecommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\empty}
5914 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
5915 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
5916   {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
5917   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5918 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5919 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5920 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5921 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5922 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5923 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
5924   {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5925   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5926 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5927 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5928 }}%
5929 {%
5930 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
5931 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
5932 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
5933 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[E0004]{minitoc}%
5934   {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
5935   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5936 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5937 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
5938 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5939 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[E0030]{minitoc}%
5940   {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5941   {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5942 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5943 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}%

```

9.70 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@glofix@level Depending on the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0001
E0001
W0006

```

5944 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5945   \@ifundefined{section}%
5946     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0001]{minitoc}%
5947       {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%

```

```

5948 \MessageBreak
5949 Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
5950 \MessageBreak
5951 optional argument [part]]%
5952 \@ifundefined{part}%
5953 {\mtcPackageError[E0001]{minitoc}%
5954 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5955 {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
5956 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0006]{minitoc}%
5957 {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
5958 \MessageBreak
5959 with the [part] optional argument,
5960 \MessageBreak
5961 which becomes the default}%
5962 \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
5963 }}%
5964 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
5965 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

\if@mtcfixglossary@ Then we define a flag (\if@mtcfixglossary@) and the command \mtcfixglossary, which
\mtcfixglossary adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
\addcontentsline

E0026

```

5966 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \@mtcfixglossary@false
5967 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
5968 \if@mtcfixglossary@false
5969 \expandafter%
5970 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5971 \expandafter%
5972 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5973 \expandafter%
5974 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
5975 \if@mtcfixglossary@
5976 \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5977 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
5978 \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
5979 \else
5980 \mtcPackageError[E0026]{minitoc}%
5981 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
5982 \MessageBreak
5983 is wrong}%
5984 {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
5985 \fi
5986 }%

```

9.71 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@ixfix@level Depending on the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@ixfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0002
W0007
E0002

```
5987 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
5988   \@ifundefined{section}%
5989     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0002]{minitoc}%
5990      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
5991       \MessageBreak
5992       Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
5993       \MessageBreak
5994       optional argument [part]}}%
5995   \@ifundefined{part}%
5996     {\mtcPackageError[E0002]{minitoc}%
5997      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
5998      {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
5999   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0007]{minitoc}%
6000    {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
6001     \MessageBreak
6002     the [part] optional argument,
6003     \MessageBreak
6004     which becomes the default}}%
6005   \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
6006   }}%
6007   {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
6008 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

\if@mtcfixindex@ \mtcfixindex \addcontentsline Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixindex, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

E0027

```
6009 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
6010 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
6011   \@mtcfixindex@false
6012   \expandafter%
6013   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6014   \expandafter%
6015   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6016   \expandafter%
6017   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6018   \if@mtcfixindex@
6019     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}}%
```

```

6020 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
6021 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
6022 \else
6023 \mtcPackageError[E0027]{minitoc}%
6024 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
6025 \MessageBreak
6026 is wrong}%
6027 {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6028 \fi
6029 }%

```

9.72 Fixing the “Nomenclature” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixnomenclature[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@nomenclfix@level Depending on the document class, the “Nomenclature” entry¹⁵ in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@nomenclfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

W0095

E0039

W0096

```

6030 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6031 \ifundefined{section}%
6032 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0095]{minitoc}%
6033 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6034 \MessageBreak
6035 Cannot use \string\mtcfixnomenclature \space without
6036 \MessageBreak
6037 optional argument [part]}%
6038 \@ifundefined{part}%
6039 {\mtcPackageError[E0039]{minitoc}%
6040 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6041 {\string\mtcfixnomclature\space not usable}}%
6042 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0096]{minitoc}%
6043 {\string\mtcfixnomenclature\space can only be used with
6044 \MessageBreak
6045 the [part] optional argument,
6046 \MessageBreak
6047 which becomes the default}%
6048 \def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{part}%
6049 }%
6050 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{section}}%
6051 {\def\mtc@nomenclfix@level{chapter}}

```

¹⁵ If you are using the nomencl package [456] or nomencl package [161] (nomencl calls nomenclbl).

```

\if@mtcfixnomclature@ Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixnomclature, which adds the necessary
\mtcfixnomclature lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
\addcontentsline

6052 \newif\if@mtcfixnomclature@ \@mtcfixnomclature@false
6053 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomclature}[1][\mtc@nomencifix@level]{%
6054   \@mtcfixnomclature@false
6055   \expandafter%
6056   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixnomclature@true\fi
6057   \expandafter%
6058   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixnomclature@true\fi
6059   \expandafter%
6060   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixnomclature@true\fi
6061   \if@mtcfixnomclature@
6062     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@nomencifix@level}{}%
6063     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@nomencifix@level}{}%
6064     \csname mtcadd\mtc@nomencifix@level\endcsname\relax
6065   \else
6066     \mtcPackageError[E0040]{minitoc}%
6067       {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixnomclature
6068         \MessageBreak
6069         is wrong}%
6070     {It must be omitted (\mtc@nomencifix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6071   \fi
6072 }%

```

E0040

9.73 The \mtcselectlanguage command

```

\mtcselectlanguage This command loads a minitoc language definition file language.mld to set the language-
\if@mtc@insellang@ dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag
\IfFileExists \if@mtc@insellang@ is true while we are in this macro.
\@input

6073 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
6074 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
6075   \@mtc@insellang@true
6076   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6077   {\mtcPackageInfo[I0010]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
6078     \MessageBreak
6079   }}%
6080   {\mtcPackageError[E0006]{minitoc}%
6081     {#1 is not a known language,
6082     \MessageBreak
6083     #1.mld not found.
6084     \MessageBreak
6085     Command ignored}%
6086     {See the minitoc documentation.
6087     \MessageBreak
6088     Correct the source using a valid language name.
6089     \MessageBreak
6090     Press RETURN}}%

```

I0010

E0006

```
6091 \@mtc@insellang@false
6092 }
```

9.74 The \mtcloadmlo internal command

\mtcloadmlo This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.

This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag \if@mtc@insellang@.

```
6093 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6094   \if@mtc@insellang@
6095   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6096     {\mtcPackageInfo[I0011]{minitoc}%
6097      {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6098       \MessageBreak}}%
6099     {\mtcPackageError[E0007]{minitoc}%
6100      {#1 is not a known minitoc
6101       \MessageBreak
6102       language object file (.mlo),
6103       \MessageBreak
6104       #1.mlo not found.
6105       \MessageBreak
6106       Command ignored}%
6107      {See the minitoc documentation.
6108       \MessageBreak
6109       Correct the source using a valid language name.
6110       \MessageBreak
6111       Press RETURN}}}%
6112   \else
6113     \mtcPackageError[E0032]{minitoc}%
6114     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6115     \MessageBreak
6116     outside of a .mld file}%
6117     {It will be ignored}
6118     \@mtc@insellang@false
6119   \fi}
```



I0011
E0007
E0032

9.75 The “coffee breaks”

```

\addcoffeeline For the minutes package [300] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert spe-
\addtocontents cial entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we
\coffeeline define \addcoffeeline, \coffeeline and \l@coffee, and internal commands analog to
\l@coffee the standard internal commands to format the TOC.
\@Undottedtocline
6120 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
6121 \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
6122 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
6123 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}

```

9.76 Initialization of counters

```

\AtBeginDocument At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and
\@ifundefined sections, if they are defined.
\setcounter
6124 \AtBeginDocument{%
6125 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
6126 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
6127 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

9.77 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

9.77.1 Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose

```

\DeclareOption These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 6128 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
6129 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
6130 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
6131 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default

```

9.77.2 Options `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles`

```
\DeclareOption These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.
\if@mtc@checkfiles
6132 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
6133 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}
```

9.77.3 Options `dotted` and `undotted`

```
\DeclareOption These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
\ifundottedmtc
6134 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
6135 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

9.77.4 Option `notoccite`

```
\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [14].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
6136 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

9.77.5 Option `shortext`

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@mtc@longext@
6137 \DeclareOption{shortext}{%
6138   \@mtc@longext@false
6139   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0020]{minitoc}%
6140   {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

W0020

9.78 The `insection` option

```
\if@mtc@ss@insection@ This option is available only if \chapter is not defined and \section defined. It is to be
\ifundefined revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the
\DeclareOption far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)16.
```

E0035

```
6141 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
```

¹⁶Please, do not dream too much!


```

6142 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6143   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
6144     \mtcPackageError[E0035]{minitoc}%
6145       {You have used the 'insection' option in
6146         \MessageBreak
6147         a document where chapters are defined.
6148         \MessageBreak
6149         This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
6150     {Remove this option.
6151       \MessageBreak
6152       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6153     }%
6154   }%
6155   \DeclareOption{insection}%
6156   {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
6157 }%
6158 }{}

```

9.79 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document.maf*. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```

6159 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
6160 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
6161 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}

```

9.80 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```

\mtc@listmisslanguages
\mtc@addmisslanguage
\mtc@LML
\MessageBreak
6162 \def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
6163 \def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
6164 \def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
6165   \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
6166   \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding .mld file exists,
\mtc@setlangopt and, if necessary, that the corresponding .mlo file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag
\mtc@setlangopto \if@mtc@misslang and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available,
\IfFileExists we define the language option.
\DeclareOption
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6167 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 6168 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
6169 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6170 {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6171 {\@mtc@misslangtrue \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6172 \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6173 {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6174 \MessageBreak
6175 The "#1" language option will not be available.
6176 \MessageBreak
6177 Please install it from a recent distribution
6178 \MessageBreak
6179 or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6180 }%
6181 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
6182 \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6183 {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
6184 {\@mtc@misslangtrue \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
6185 \mtcPackageInfo[I0051]{minitoc}%
6186 {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
6187 \MessageBreak
6188 The "#1" language option will not be available.
6189 \MessageBreak
6190 Please install it from a recent distribution
6191 \MessageBreak
6192 or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6193 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}%
6194 {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6195 \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6196 \mtcPackageInfo[I0050]{minitoc}%
6197 {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6198 \MessageBreak
6199 The "#1" language option will not be available.
6200 \MessageBreak
6201 Please install it from a recent distribution
6202 \MessageBreak
6203 or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6204 }%
6205 }%
6206 }%

```

I0050
I0051

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption 6207 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 6208 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6209 {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%

```

E0038

```

6210      {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6211       \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6212       \mtcPackageError[E0038]{minitoc}%
6213       {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
6214        \MessageBreak
6215        A mandatory minitoc language object file,
6216        \MessageBreak
6217        #1.mld, is not found.
6218        \MessageBreak
6219        We will try to continue with
6220        \MessageBreak
6221        current/default values}%
6222       {See the minitoc documentation.
6223        \MessageBreak
6224        Please fix your minitoc installation.
6225        \MessageBreak
6226        Press <return> to continue}%

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):

```

\ptctitle
\plftitle 6227      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
\plttitle 6228      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
\mtctitle 6229      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
\mlftitle 6230      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
\mlttitle 6231      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
\stctitle 6232      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
\slftitle 6233      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
\slftitle 6234      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
\slttitle 6235      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
6236 }}%

```

```

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document, with also the full
\if@mtc@misslang list of the missing language files:
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
\MessageBreak 6237 \AtEndDocument{%
\mtc@listmisslanguages 6238 \if@mtc@misslang
\@gobblethree 6239 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0093]{minitoc}%
6240 {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
6241 \MessageBreak
6242 in your installation.
6243 \MessageBreak
6244 Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
6245 \MessageBreak
6246 in the \string\jobname.log file.
6247 \MessageBreak
6248 The full list of the missing language files
6249 \MessageBreak
6250 is given in the W0094 warning message.
6251 \MessageBreak
6252 Please install the missing files from

```

W0093
W0094

```

6253      \MessageBreak
6254      a recent distribution
6255      \MessageBreak
6256      or from the CTAN archives}%
6257      \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0094]{minitoc}%
6258      {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
6259      \MessageBreak
6260      \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%
6261  \fi
6262 }%

```

\DeclareOption Each language option reads the corresponding *language.mld* file via the specialized macro \mtc@setlangopt \mtcselectlanguage, after verification by \mtc@setlangopt or \mtc@setlangopto (when a .mlo file is required), by \mtc@setlangoptm when the language is mandatory. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a *language.mld* file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as *american.mld* loads *english.mld*).

```

6263 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
6264 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
6265 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
6266 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%
6267 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
6268 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
6269 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
6270 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
6271 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
6272 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
6273 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
6274 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
6275 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
6276 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
6277 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
6278 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
6279 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
6280 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
6281 \mtc@setlangopt{bengali}%
6282 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
6283 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
6284 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
6285 \mtc@setlangopt{bi the}%
6286 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
6287 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
6288 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
6289 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
6290 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
6291 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
6292 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
6293 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
6294 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
6295 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%

```

```

6296 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
6297 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
6298 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
6299 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%
6300 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%
6301 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
6302 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
6303 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%
6304 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
6305 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
6306 \mtc@setlangoptm{english}%
6307 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
6308 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
6309 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
6310 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
6311 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
6312 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
6313 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
6314 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
6315 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%
6316 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%
6317 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
6318 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
6319 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
6320 \mtc@setlangopt{français}%
6321 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%
6322 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
6323 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
6324 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
6325 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
6326 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
6327 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
6328 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%

```

```

6329 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
6330 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
6331 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
6332 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
6333 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
6334 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
6335 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
6336 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul1}%
6337 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul2}%
6338 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul3}%
6339 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul4}%
6340 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul-u8}%
6341 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja1}%
6342 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja2}%
6343 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja-u8}%
6344 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%
6345 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
6346 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
6347 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
6348 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
6349 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
6350 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
6351 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
6352 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
6353 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
6354 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
6355 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
6356 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese}%
6357 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese2}%
6358 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese3}%
6359 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese4}%
6360 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese5}%
6361 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese6}%
6362 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
6363 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
6364 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
6365 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
6366 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc}%
6367 \mtc@setlangopt{latinc2}%
6368 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
6369 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian2}%
6370 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
6371 \mtc@setlangopt{letton2}%
6372 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
6373 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian2}%
6374 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
6375 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
6376 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
6377 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
6378 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
6379 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
6380 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-b}%
6381 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%
6382 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli2}%

```

```

6383 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-mr}%
6384 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-omega}%
6385 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
6386 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
6387 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana3}%
6388 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
6389 \mtc@setlangopt{mexican}%
6390 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
6391 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
6392 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
6393 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
6394 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
6395 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
6396 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
6397 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
6398 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
6399 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
6400 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
6401 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
6402 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
6403 \mtc@setlangopt{occitan}%
6404 \mtc@setlangopt{occitan2}%
6405 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
6406 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
6407 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
6408 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
6409 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
6410 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
6411 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
6412 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
6413 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
6414 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
6415 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
6416 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
6417 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
6418 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca}%
6419 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca1}%
6420 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lh}%
6421 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyralt}%
6422 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
6423 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrwin}%
6424 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
6425 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
6426 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
6427 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
6428 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
6429 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
6430 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
6431 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
6432 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
6433 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
6434 \mtc@setlangopt{swahili}%
6435 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
6436 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%

```

6437 \mtc@setlangopt{thai}%	6446 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
6438 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%	6447 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
6439 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%	6448 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
6440 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%	6449 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
6441 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%	6450 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
6442 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%	6451 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
6443 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraine}%	6452 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
6444 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%	6453 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%
6445 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%	

9.81 The hints option

\DeclareOption We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:
 \if@mtc@hints@

```
6454 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
6455 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}
```

\mtc@hints@begindoc The hints option is made of three parts: the first, \mtc@hints@begindoc, is executed via
 \AtBeginDocument \AtBeginDocument and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings
 about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some
 macros are called in the right order.

\mtc@hints@enddoc The third and last part, \mtc@hints@enddoc, is executed via \AtEndDocument and examines
 \AtEndDocument the flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the
document.log file and/or warnings on the screen and in the *document.log* file. The hints
 option *does not signal errors*, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the \LaTeX run.



9.81.1 First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc

\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for an \AtBeginDocument
 \mtc@hints@begindoc block):

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6456 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6457 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
6458 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6459 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
6460 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
6461 \mtcPackageInfo[I0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
6462 {==> You requested the hints option.
6463 \MessageBreak
6464 Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%
```

I0049

9.81.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [103]), and emit a
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6465 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
6466   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6467     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0025]{minitoc(hints)}%
6468     {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
6469       \MessageBreak
6470       It is incompatible
6471       \MessageBreak
6472       with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.81.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the appendix package [471]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`



```

6473 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
6474   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6475   \mtcPackageInfo[I0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
6476   {--- The appendix package is loaded.
6477     \MessageBreak
6478     See the minitoc package documentation
6479     \MessageBreak
6480     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.81.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the tocbibind package [472]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`



```

6481 \@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
6482   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6483     \mtcPackageInfo[I0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
6484     {--- The tocbibind package is loaded.
6485       \MessageBreak
6486       See the minitoc package documentation
6487       \MessageBreak
6488       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.81.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [343, 344, 399]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`



```

6489 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
6490   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6491     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6492     {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
6493       \MessageBreak
6494       See the minitoc package documentation
6495       \MessageBreak
6496       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6497 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
6498   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6499     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6500     {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
6501       \MessageBreak
6502       See the minitoc package documentation
6503       \MessageBreak
6504       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6505 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
6506   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6507     \mtcPackageInfo[I0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
6508     {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
6509       \MessageBreak
6510       See the minitoc package documentation
6511       \MessageBreak
6512       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.81.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [469]:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

I0047

```

6513 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
6514   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6515     \mtcPackageInfo[I0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
6516     {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
6517       \MessageBreak
6518       See the minitoc package documentation
6519       \MessageBreak
6520       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.81.1.6 Hint about the titlesec package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titlesec package [46], and emit a warning, because this package is
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6521 \@ifpackageloaded{titlesec}%
6522   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6523     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0099]{minitoc(hints)}%
6524     {--- The titlesec package is loaded.

```



```

6525      \MessageBreak
6526      It is incompatible
6527      \MessageBreak
6528      with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.81.1.7 Hint about the titletoc package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the titletoc package [46], and emit a warning, because this package is *incompatible* with minitoc:



```

6529 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6530     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6531     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6532     {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6533     \MessageBreak
6534     It is incompatible
6535     \MessageBreak
6536     with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.81.1.8 Hint about the placeins package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test if the placeins package [15] is loaded and, if yes, we check if the selected options are correct (see section 1.3.3 on page 29):



```

\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@ss@insection@
  \@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@
6537 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6538     {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6539     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
6540     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6541     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0031]{minitoc(hints)}%
6542     {--- The placeins package is loaded
6543     \MessageBreak
6544     without the section option,
6545     \MessageBreak
6546     but minitoc used the insection option
6547     \MessageBreak
6548     which implies it. Try to inverse the
6549     \MessageBreak
6550     loading order and use consistent options.
6551     \MessageBreak
6552     You may have got a message
6553     \MessageBreak
6554     ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6555     }%
6556     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6557     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6558     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0084]{minitoc(hints)}%
6559     {--- The placeins package is loaded

```

```

6560         \MessageBreak
6561         with the above option,
6562         \MessageBreak
6563         but minitoc used the insection option
6564         \MessageBreak
6565         which is incompatible with it.
6566         \MessageBreak
6567         Try to remove the above option
6568         \MessageBreak
6569         and use consistent options}%
6570     }{}%
6571 \ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
6572 { \@mtc@hints@given@true
6573   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0085]{minitoc(hints)}%
6574   {--- The placeins package is loaded
6575     \MessageBreak
6576     with the below option,
6577     \MessageBreak
6578     but minitoc used the insection option
6579     \MessageBreak
6580     which is incompatible with it.
6581     \MessageBreak
6582     Try to remove the below option
6583     \MessageBreak
6584     and use consistent options}%
6585   }{}%
6586 \fi
6587 \ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
6588   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6589   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0032]{minitoc(hints)}%
6590   {--- The placeins package loaded is
6591     \MessageBreak
6592     too old. You should use a version
6593     \MessageBreak
6594     dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
6595 }%
6596 }{}%

```

9.81.1.9 Hint about the memoir class

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [479, 481, 482] is loaded:
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

6597 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
6598 { \@mtc@hints@given@true
6599   \mtcPackageInfo[I0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
6600   {--- The memoir class is loaded.
6601     \MessageBreak
6602     See the minitoc package documentation
6603     \MessageBreak
6604     for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
6605 }{}%

```

I0044

9.81.1.10 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6606 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
6607   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6608     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0026]{minitoc(hints)}%
6609     {--- The amsart class is loaded.
6610       \MessageBreak
6611       It is incompatible
6612       \MessageBreak
6613       with the minitoc package}}}%
6614 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
6615   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6616     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0027]{minitoc(hints)}%
6617     {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
6618       \MessageBreak
6619       It is incompatible
6620       \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```



9.81.1.11 Hint about the amsbook class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6621 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
6622   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6623     \mtcPackageInfo[I0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
6624     {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
6625       \MessageBreak
6626       See the minitoc package documentation
6627       \MessageBreak
6628       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6629   }{}%

```

I0041

9.81.1.12 Hint about the abstract package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the abstract package [470], then its options:
`\@ifpackagewith`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6630 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
6631   {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
6632     \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
6633     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6634       \mtcPackageInfo[I0040]{minitoc(hints)}%
6635       {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
6636       \MessageBreak

```

I0040

```

6637         loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
6638         \MessageBreak
6639         You need to look at the
6640         \MessageBreak
6641         documentation to adjust.
6642         \MessageBreak}
6643     }}{}

```

9.81.1.13 Hint about the jura class

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is *incompatible* with
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` minitoc:

```

6644 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6645     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6646     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0029]{minitoc(hints)}%
6647     {--- The jura class is loaded.
6648     \MessageBreak
6649     It is incompatible
6650     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



9.81.1.14 Hint about the flowfram package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the flowfram package [433, 434], and emit a warning, because this
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` package is *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6651 \@ifpackageloaded{flowfram}%
6652     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6653     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0097]{minitoc(hints)}%
6654     {--- The flowfram package is loaded.
6655     \MessageBreak
6656     It is incompatible
6657     \MessageBreak
6658     with the minitoc package}}{}%

```



9.81.1.15 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been
`\chapter` altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing an
`\section` `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when
`\AtBeginDocument` it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For
`\mtc@hints@part` each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its
`\mtc@hints@chapter` unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [390] may interfere,
`\mtc@hints@section` hence the formal precautions in the messages.

9.81.1.15.1 Alteration of `\part`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart:
\@ifundefined
  \part 6659 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@part 6660 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
  \@part 6661   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@part 6662 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax
  \@spart 6663   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\mtc@hints@@spart 6664 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6665   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6666 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6667   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0030]{minitoc(hints)}%
6668   {--- The \string\part\space command is altered
6669       \MessageBreak
6670       after minitoc}
6671   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6672     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
6673     {--- It may be the consequence
6674         \MessageBreak
6675         of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6676   \fi
6677 \fi

```

W0030
W0023

9.81.1.15.2 Alteration of `\chapter`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\@ifundefined
  \chapter 6678 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 6679 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 6680   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 6681 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 6682   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 6683 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6684   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6685 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6686   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0028]{minitoc(hints)}%
6687   {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
6688       \MessageBreak
6689       after minitoc}
6690   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6691     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
6692     {--- It may be the consequence
6693         \MessageBreak
6694         of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6695   \fi
6696 \fi

```

W0028
W0023

9.81.1.15.3 Alteration of `\section`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\@ifundefined
  \section 6697 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 6698 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 6699 {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@sect 6700 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 6701 {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@ssect 6702 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6703 {\@ifundefined{section}}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6704 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
6705 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6706 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0039]{minitoc(hints)}%
6707 {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
6708 \MessageBreak
6709 after minitoc}
6710 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6711 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0023]{minitoc(hints)}%
6712 {--- It may be the consequence
6713 \MessageBreak
6714 of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
6715 \fi
6716 \relax\else\fi}%

```

W0039

W0023

9.81.1.16 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of the commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]tableofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]tableofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6717 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6718 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
6719 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6720 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 6721 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 6722 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6723 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 6724 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables
\if@mtc@lot@used@

```

```

6725 \def\listoffigures%
6726   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
6727 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
6728 \def\listoftables%
6729   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

```

\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents Then, their “fake” siblings:

```

\fakeableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6730 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\fakeableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 6731 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6732   {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6733 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fakeableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 6734 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\fakeableofcontents 6735   {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6736 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableofcontents 6737 \def\fakeableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6738   {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
6739 \fi

```

\mtc@hints@begindoc And the \mtc@hints@begindoc definition is finished (it begins in section [9.81.1 on page 414](#)):

```
6740 }
```

9.81.2 Final part: \mtc@hints@enddoc

\mtc@hints@enddoc The final part of the hints option is executed via \AtEndDocument. Its code is in the \AtEndDocument \mtc@hints@enddoc macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the \mtc@hints@enddoc macro:

```
6741 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

9.81.2.1 Hint about \sect-lof|lot and the insection option

\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

```

\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6742 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 6743 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 6744 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 6745 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
6746 \if@mtc@section@def@

```

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ If yes, we verify that the placeins package [15] has been loaded with the correct options or that
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ the insetion option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6747 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
6748 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
6749 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0056]{minitoc(hints)}%
6750 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
6751 \MessageBreak
6752 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
6753 \MessageBreak
6754 hence the ‘insection’ package
6755 \MessageBreak
6756 option is recommended}%
6757 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
6758 \fi
6759 \fi

```

W0056

9.81.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if \parttoc has been used without \doparttoc, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 6760 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6761 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6762 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6763 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0062]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6764 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6765 \MessageBreak
6766 but not \string\doparttoc}
6767 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6768 \fi
6769 \fi
6770 \if@partlof@used@
6771 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
6772 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0060]{minitoc(hints)}%
6773 {You have used \string\partlof,
6774 \MessageBreak
6775 but not \string\dopartlof}
6776 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6777 \fi
6778 \fi
6779 \if@partlot@used@
6780 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
6781 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0061]{minitoc(hints)}%
6782 {You have used \string\partlot,
6783 \MessageBreak
6784 but not \string\dopartlot}

```

W0062

W0060

W0061


```

6785 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6786 \fi
6787 \fi
6788 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
  \if@minitoc@used@
    \if@dominitoc@used@ 6789 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6790 \if@minitoc@used@
  \if@minilof@used@ 6791 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 6792 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0059]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@minilot@used@ 6793 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 6794 \MessageBreak
6795 but not \string\dominitoc}
6796 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6797 \fi
6798 \fi
6799 \if@minilof@used@
6800 \if@dominilof@used@\else
6801 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0057]{minitoc(hints)}%
6802 {You have used \string\minilof,
6803 \MessageBreak
6804 but not \string\dominilof}
6805 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6806 \fi
6807 \fi
6808 \if@minilot@used@
6809 \if@dominilot@used@\else
6810 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0058]{minitoc(hints)}%
6811 {You have used \string\minilot,
6812 \MessageBreak
6813 but not \string\dominilot}
6814 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6815 \fi
6816 \fi
6817 \fi

```

W0059

W0057

W0058

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
  \if@secttoc@used@
    \if@dosecttoc@used@ 6818 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6819 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 6820 \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6821 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0065]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 6822 {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6823 \MessageBreak
6824 but not \string\dosecttoc}
6825 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6826 \fi
6827 \fi
6828 \if@sectlof@used@

```

W0065

W0063

W0064

```

6829 \if@dosectlof@used@\else
6830 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0063]{minitoc(hints)}%
6831 {You have used \string\sectlof,
6832 \MessageBreak
6833 but not \string\dosectlof}
6834 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6835 \fi
6836 \fi
6837 \if@sectlot@used@
6838 \if@dosectlot@used@\else
6839 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0064]{minitoc(hints)}%
6840 {You have used \string\sectlot,
6841 \MessageBreak
6842 but not \string\dosectlot}
6843 \fi
6844 \fi
6845 \fi

```

9.81.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6846 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6847 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6848 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 6849 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0075]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6850 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 6851 \MessageBreak
6852 but not \string\parttoc}
6853 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6854 \fi
6855 \fi
6856 \if@dopartlof@used@
6857 \if@partlof@used@\else
6858 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0076]{minitoc(hints)}%
6859 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
6860 \MessageBreak
6861 but not \string\partlof}
6862 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6863 \fi
6864 \fi
6865 \if@dopartlot@used@
6866 \if@partlot@used@\else
6867 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0077]{minitoc(hints)}%
6868 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
6869 \MessageBreak
6870 but not \string\partlot}

```

W0075
W0076
W0077

```

6871 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6872 \fi
6873 \fi
6874 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
  \if@minitoc@used@ 6875 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6876 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 6877 \if@minitoc@used@\else
  \if@minilof@used@ 6878 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0078]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 6879 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
  \if@minilot@used@ 6880 \MessageBreak
    6881 but not \string\minitoc}
    6882 \@mtc@hints@given@true
    6883 \fi
    6884 \fi
    6885 \if@dominilof@used@
    6886 \if@minilof@used@\else
    6887 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0079]{minitoc(hints)}%
    6888 {You have used \string\dominilof,
    6889 \MessageBreak
    6890 but not \string\minilof}
    6891 \@mtc@hints@given@true
    6892 \fi
    6893 \fi
    6894 \if@dominilot@used@
    6895 \if@minilot@used@\else
    6896 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0080]{minitoc(hints)}%
    6897 {You have used \string\dominilot,
    6898 \MessageBreak
    6899 but not \string\minilot}
    6900 \@mtc@hints@given@true
    6901 \fi
    6902 \fi
    6903 \fi

```

W0078

W0079

W0080

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 6904 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6905 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6906 \if@secttoc@used@\else
  \if@sectlof@used@ 6907 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0081]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6908 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
  \if@sectlot@used@ 6909 \MessageBreak
    6910 but not \string\secttoc}
    6911 \@mtc@hints@given@true
    6912 \fi
    6913 \fi
    6914 \if@dosectlof@used@

```

W0081

W0082

W0083

```

6915 \if@sectlof@used@\else
6916 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0082]{minitoc(hints)}%
6917 {You have used \string\dosectlof,
6918 \MessageBreak
6919 but not \string\sectlof}
6920 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6921 \fi
6922 \fi
6923 \if@dosectlot@used@
6924 \if@sectlot@used@\else
6925 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0083]{minitoc(hints)}%
6926 {You have used \string\dosectlot,
6927 \MessageBreak
6928 but not \string\sectlot}
6929 \fi
6930 \fi
6931 \fi
6932 \fi

```

9.81.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6933 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6934 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6935 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6936 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0071]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6937 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6938 \MessageBreak
6939 \string\tableofcontents
6940 \MessageBreak
6941 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
6942 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6943 \fi
6944 \fi
6945 \if@partlof@used@
6946 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6947 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0069]{minitoc(hints)}%
6948 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
6949 \MessageBreak
6950 \string\listoffigures
6951 \MessageBreak
6952 nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
6953 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6954 \fi
6955 \fi

```

W0071
W0069
W0070

```

6956 \if@partlot@used@
6957   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6958     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0070]{minitoc(hints)}%
6959     {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
6960       \MessageBreak
6961       \string\listoftables
6962       \MessageBreak
6963       nor \string\fake\listoftables}
6964   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6965 \fi
6966 \fi
6967 \fi

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@minitoc@used@ 6968 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6969 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6970   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6971     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0068]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6972     {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6973       \MessageBreak
6974       \string\tableofcontents
6975       \MessageBreak
6976       nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
6977   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6978 \fi
6979 \fi
6980 \if@minilof@used@
6981   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6982     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0066]{minitoc(hints)}%
6983     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
6984       \MessageBreak
6985       \string\listoffigures
6986       \MessageBreak
6987       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
6988   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6989 \fi
6990 \fi
6991 \if@minilot@used@
6992   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6993     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0067]{minitoc(hints)}%
6994     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
6995       \MessageBreak
6996       \string\listoftables
6997       \MessageBreak
6998       nor \string\fake\listoftables}
6999   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7000 \fi
7001 \fi
7002 \fi

```

W0068

W0066

W0067

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 7003 \if@mtc@section@def@
    \ifmtc@toc@used@ 7004 \if@secttoc@used@
      \if@sectlof@used@ 7005 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
        \ifmtc@lof@used@ 7006 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0074]{minitoc(hints)}%
          \if@sectlot@used@ 7007 {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
            \ifmtc@lot@used@ 7008 \MessageBreak
              7009 \string\tableofcontents
              7010 \MessageBreak
              7011 nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
            7012 \@mtc@hints@given@true
            7013 \fi
          7014 \fi
        7015 \if@sectlof@used@
          \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
            7016 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0072]{minitoc(hints)}%
              7017 {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
                7018 \MessageBreak
                7019 \string\listoffigures
                7020 \MessageBreak
                7021 nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
              7022 \@mtc@hints@given@true
              7023 \fi
            7024 \fi
          7025 \fi
        7026 \if@sectlot@used@
          \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
            7027 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0073]{minitoc(hints)}%
              7028 {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
                7029 \MessageBreak
                7030 \string\listoftables
                7031 \MessageBreak
                7032 nor \string\fake\listoftables}
              7033 \@mtc@hints@given@true
              7034 \fi
            7035 \fi
          7036 \fi
        7037 \fi

```

W0074

W0072

W0073

9.81.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
  \if@mtc@longext@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
  \if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
    \value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 17, either redesign the document.
  \if@mtc@chapter@def@
  \if@mtc@section@def@ 7038 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
  7039 \if@mtc@longext@

```

W0054

W0053

W0055

¹⁷On the long term, a good investment.

```

7040 \else
7041   \if@mtc@part@def@
7042     \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
7043       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0054]{minitoc(hints)}%
7044       {You have used short extensions
7045       \MessageBreak
7046       and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
7047   \fi
7048 \fi
7049 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
7050   \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
7051     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7052     {You have used short extensions
7053     \MessageBreak
7054     and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
7055   \fi
7056 \else
7057   \if@mtc@section@def@
7058     \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax \@mtc@hints@given@true
7059     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0055]{minitoc(hints)}%
7060     {You have used short extensions
7061     \MessageBreak
7062     and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
7063   \fi
7064 \fi
7065 \fi
7066 \fi}
7067 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

9.81.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0037
 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ section 9.9.1 on page 275.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7068 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@\else
7069   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
7070     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0037]{minitoc(hints)}%
7071     {The sectsty package should be
7072     \MessageBreak
7073     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7074     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7075   \fi
7076 \fi

```

9.81.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0038
 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

section 9.9.2 on page 275.

```

7077 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \else
7078   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
7079     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0038]{minitoc(hints)}%
7080     {The varsects package should be
7081       \MessageBreak
7082       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7083     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7084   \fi
7085 \fi

```

9.81.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0086
 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.3 on page 275.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7086 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \else
7087   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
7088     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0086]{minitoc(hints)}%
7089     {The fncychap package should be
7090       \MessageBreak
7091       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7092     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7093   \fi
7094 \fi

```

9.81.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0092
 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ section 9.9.4 on page 275.
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7095 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \else
7096   \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
7097     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0092]{minitoc(hints)}%
7098     {The hangcaption package should be
7099       \MessageBreak
7100       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7101     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7102   \fi
7103 \fi

```


9.81.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@` We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0087
`\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@` section 9.9.5 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7104 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@\else
7105   \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
7106     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0087]{minitoc(hints)}%
7107     {The quotchap package should be
7108       \MessageBreak
7109       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7110     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7111   \fi
7112 \fi

```

9.81.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@` We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0088
`\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@` section 9.9.6 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7113 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@\else
7114   \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
7115     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0088]{minitoc(hints)}%
7116     {The romannum package should be
7117       \MessageBreak
7118       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7119     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7120   \fi
7121 \fi

```

9.81.2.12 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0089
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@` section 9.9.7 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7122 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
7123   \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
7124     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0089]{minitoc(hints)}%
7125     {The sfheaders package should be
7126       \MessageBreak
7127       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7128     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7129   \fi
7130 \fi

```

9.81.2.13 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0090
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@` section 9.9.8 on page 276.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7131 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
7132   \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
7133     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0090]{minitoc(hints)}%
7134     {The alnumsec package should be
7135       \MessageBreak
7136       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7137     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7138   \fi
7139 \fi

```

9.81.2.14 Final part of the hint about the captcont package

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0091
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@` section 9.9.9 on page 277.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7140 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
7141   \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
7142     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0091]{minitoc(hints)}%
7143     {The captcont package should be
7144       \MessageBreak
7145       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7146     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7147   \fi
7148 \fi

```

9.81.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0033
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@` section 9.9.10 on page 277.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7149 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
7150   \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
7151     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0033]{minitoc(hints)}%
7152     {The caption package should be
7153       \MessageBreak
7154       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7155     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7156   \fi
7157 \fi

```

9.81.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

`\if@mtc@captionIIloaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0034
`\if@mtc@captionIIloaded@a@` section 9.9.11 on page 277.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7158 \if@mtc@captionIIloaded@\else
7159   \if@mtc@captionIIloaded@a@
7160     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0034]{minitoc(hints)}%
7161     {The caption2 package should be
7162       \MessageBreak
7163       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7164     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7165   \fi
7166 \fi

```

9.81.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

`\if@mtc@ccaptionloaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0035
`\if@mtc@ccaptionloaded@a@` section 9.9.12 on page 277.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7167 \if@mtc@ccaptionloaded@\else
7168   \if@mtc@ccaptionloaded@a@
7169     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0035]{minitoc(hints)}%
7170     {The ccaption package should be
7171       \MessageBreak
7172       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7173     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7174   \fi
7175 \fi

```

9.81.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

`\if@mtc@mcaptionloaded@` We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See W0036
`\if@mtc@mcaptionloaded@a@` section 9.9.13 on page 278.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7176 \if@mtc@mcaptionloaded@\else
7177   \if@mtc@mcaptionloaded@a@
7178     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0036]{minitoc(hints)}%
7179     {The mcaption package should be
7180       \MessageBreak
7181       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7182     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7183   \fi
7184 \fi

```

9.81.2.19 Final part of the hint about the float package

`\if@mtc@floatLoaded@` We test if float has been loaded. See section 9.9.14 on page 278.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7185 \if@mtc@floatLoaded@
7186   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7187   {You have loaded the float package;
7188   \MessageBreak
7189   please be aware that the minitoc package
7190   \MessageBreak
7191   facilities can not be used for new types
7192   \MessageBreak
7193   of floats defined by the float package\@gobble}
7194   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7195 \fi

```

9.81.2.20 Final part of the hint about the floatrow package

`\if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@` We test if floatrow has been loaded. See section 9.9.15 on page 278.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7196 \if@mtc@floatrowLoaded@
7197   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7198   {You have loaded the floatrow package;
7199   \MessageBreak
7200   please be aware that the minitoc package
7201   \MessageBreak
7202   facilities can not be used for new types
7203   \MessageBreak
7204   of floats defined by the floatrow package\@gobble}
7205   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7206 \fi

```

9.81.2.21 Final part of the hint about the trivfloat package

`\if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@` We test if trivfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.16 on page 278.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7207 \if@mtc@trivfloatLoaded@
7208   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7209   {You have loaded the trivfloat package;
7210   \MessageBreak
7211   please be aware that the minitoc package
7212   \MessageBreak
7213   facilities can not be used for new types
7214   \MessageBreak
7215   of floats defined by the trivfloat package\@gobble}
7216   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7217 \fi

```

9.81.2.22 Final part of the hint about the rotfloat package

`\if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@` We test if rotfloat has been loaded. See section 9.9.17 on page 278.
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

I0053

```

7218 \if@mtc@rotfloatLoaded@
7219   \mtcPackageInfo[I0053]{minitoc(hints)}%
7220   {You have loaded the rotfloat package;
7221   \MessageBreak
7222   please be aware that the minitoc package
7223   \MessageBreak
7224   facilities can not be used for new types
7225   \MessageBreak
7226   of floats defined by the rotfloat package\@gobble}
7227   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7228 \fi

```

9.81.2.23 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` For parttocs:

W0046

```

7229 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
7230   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0046]{minitoc(hints)}%
7231   {You have attempted to insert
7232   \MessageBreak
7233   empty parttocs}
7234   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7235 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` For partlofs:

W0044

```

7236 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
7237   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0044]{minitoc(hints)}%
7238   {You have attempted to insert
7239   \MessageBreak
7240   empty partlofs}
7241   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7242 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

W0045

```

7243 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
7244   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0045]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

7245 {You have attempted to insert
7246   \MessageBreak
7247   empty partlots}
7248   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7249 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ For minitocs:

W0043

```

7250 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
7251   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0043]{minitoc(hints)}%
7252   {You have attempted to insert
7253   \MessageBreak
7254   empty minitocs}
7255   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7256 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilofs@ For minilofs:

W0041

```

7257 \if@mtc@empty@minilofs@
7258   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0041]{minitoc(hints)}%
7259   {You have attempted to insert
7260   \MessageBreak
7261   empty minilofs}
7262   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7263 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minilots@ For minilots:

W0042

```

7264 \if@mtc@empty@minilots@
7265   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0042]{minitoc(hints)}%
7266   {You have attempted to insert
7267   \MessageBreak
7268   empty minilots}
7269   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7270 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ For secttocs:

W0049

```

7271 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
7272   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0049]{minitoc(hints)}%
7273   {You have attempted to insert
7274   \MessageBreak
7275   empty secttocs}
7276   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7277 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@` For sectlofs:

W0047

```

7278 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
7279   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0047]{minitoc(hints)}%
7280   {You have attempted to insert
7281   \MessageBreak
7282   empty sectlofs}
7283   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7284 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@` For sectlots:

W0048

```

7285 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
7286   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0048]{minitoc(hints)}%
7287   {You have attempted to insert
7288   \MessageBreak
7289   empty sectlots}
7290   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7291 \fi

```

9.81.2.24 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

`\if@firstpartis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstpartis`:

W0051

```

7292 \if@firstpartis@used@
7293   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0051]{minitoc(hints)}%
7294   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7295   \MessageBreak
7296   command: \string\firstpartis}
7297   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7298 \fi

```

`\if@firstchapteris@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstchapteris`:

W0050

```

7299 \if@firstchapteris@used@
7300   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0050]{minitoc(hints)}%
7301   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7302   \MessageBreak
7303   command: \string\firstchapteris}
7304   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7305 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

W0052

```

7306 \if@firstsectionis@used@
7307   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0052]{minitoc(hints)}%
7308   {You have invoked an obsolete (ignored)
7309   \MessageBreak
7310   command: \string\firstsectionis}
7311   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7312 \fi

```

9.81.2.25 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the `hints` option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the `document.log` file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

W0024

I0019

```

7313 \if@mtc@hints@given@
7314   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[W0024]{minitoc(hints)}%
7315   {Some hints have been written
7316   \MessageBreak
7317   in the \jobname.log file}
7318 \else
7319   \mtcPackageInfo[I0019]{minitoc(hints)}%
7320   {No hints have been written
7321   \MessageBreak
7322   in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
7323 \fi
7324 }

```

9.82 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, `english`:

`\ExecuteOptions`

```

7325   \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
7326   {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```




```

\mtcPackageError Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
\providecommand
  \ptctitle 7327      {\mtcPackageError[E0036]{minitoc}%
  \plftitle 7328      {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
  \plttitle 7329      \MessageBreak
  \mtctitle 7330      The minitoc language object file (.mld),
  \mlftitle 7331      \MessageBreak
  \mlttitle 7332      english.mld is not found.
  \stctitle 7333      \MessageBreak
  \slftitle 7334      We will try to continue with default values}%
  \slttitle 7335      {See the minitoc documentation.
  \slttitle 7336      \MessageBreak
  7337      Please fix your minitoc installation.
  7338      \MessageBreak
  7339      Press <return> to continue}%
  7340      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  7341      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  7342      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  7343      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  7344      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  7345      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  7346      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  7347      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  7348      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  7349      }%

```

\ProcessOptions* Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7350 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

9.82.1 Processing the insection option

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@ For the insection option, we load the placeins package [15] with its options verbose and
  \RequirePackage section, after the flafter package (described in [288] and [330, page 286]); the correct loading
  \@ifpackageloaded is verified:
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
  7351 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
  7352   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
  7353   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
  7354   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
  7355   {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
  7356 \fi

```

9.82.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [14]:
`\RequirePackage`

```
7357 \if@mtc@notoccite@
7358   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
7359 \fi
```

9.82.3 Processing the listfiles option

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file `document.maf`. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions),
`\tf@mtc` then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the exist-
`\if@mtc@longext@` ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes `docu-`
`\mtc@maf@long` `ment.mtc` in the list (but *not* the `document.maf`¹⁸ file). We must also check the existence of
`\mtc@maf@short` `\jobname.mtc` if long extensions are used.
`\mtc@addtomaf` `\jobname.mtc`
`\IfFileExists`

I0009

```
\jobname 7360 \def\mtc@maf{%
7361   \mtcPackageInfo[I0009]{minitoc}%
7362   {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
7363   \MessageBreak
7364   Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
7365   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
7366   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
7367   \if@mtc@longext@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
7368   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
7369 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
7370   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
7371 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
7372   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7373   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc0}
7374   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7375     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
7376     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
7377     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
7378     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7379   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7380     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
7381     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
7382     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
7383     \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7384   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7385     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
7386     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
7387     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
7388     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
```

¹⁸ Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it must not be in the list.

```

7390 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
7391     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7392 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7393     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
7394     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
7395     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
7396     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7397 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7398     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
7399     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
7400     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
7401     \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7402 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7403     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
7404     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
7405     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
7406     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

```

\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in an \AtEndDocument block.
\AtEndDocument
\mtc@maf 7407 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}\else\fi

```

9.82.4 Processing the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in an \AtBeginDocument block and its third (last)
\AtBeginDocument part in an \AtEndDocument block:
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtEndDocument 7408 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 7409 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
7410 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
7411 \fi

```

9.82.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the `hints` option executed in the preamble):

```

\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
\part 7412 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 7413 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 7414 \let\mtc@hints@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@spart
\@spart

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
  \chapter 7415 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 7416 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
  \@chapter 7417 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@@schapter
  \@schapter

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
  \section 7418 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@@sect 7419 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
  \@sect 7420 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@@ssect
  \@ssect

```

9.83 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

`\mtc@classck` It may happen that you use a preparation command (like `\dominitoc`) or an insertion command (like `\dominitoc`) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like `article`). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in an `\AtBeginDocument` block.

E0037

```

7421 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
7422   \mtcPackageError[E0037]{minitoc}%
7423     {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
7424       \MessageBreak
7425       with the document class}%
7426     {Correct the source code.
7427       \MessageBreak
7428       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
7429 }%

```

`\AtBeginDocument` An `\AtBeginDocument` bloc:

```

7430 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

`\providecommand` Part-level preparation commands:

```

  \doparttoc
  \dopartlof 7431 \providecommand{\doparttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doparttoc}}%
  \dopartlot 7432 \providecommand{\dopartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dopartlof}}%
  7433 \providecommand{\dopartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dopartlot}}%

```

```

\dominitoc Chapter-level preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 7434 \providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dominitoc}}%
              7435 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dominilof}}%
              7436 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dominilot}}%

\dosecttoc Section-level preparation commands:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 7437 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dosecttoc}}%
              7438 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dosectlof}}%
              7439 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dosectlot}}%

\parttoc Part-level insertion commands:
\partlof
\partlot 7440 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\parttoc}}%
              7441 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\partlof}}%
              7442 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\partlot}}%

\minitoc Chapter-level insertion commands:
\minilof
\minilot 7443 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\minitoc}}%
              7444 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\minilof}}%
              7445 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\minilot}}%

\secttoc Section-level insertion commands:
\sectlof
\sectlot 7446 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\secttoc}}%
              7447 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\sectlof}}%
              7448 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\sectlot}}%
              7449 }

And the package is terminated.

7450 </minitoc>

```

9.84 The minitoc-fr.dtx file

```

\jobname This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set \jobname
\input   to minitoc-fr in place of minitoc. As minitoc.ins generates the minitoc.lan and
          minitoc-fr.lan files which set a language number \LANG, and minitoc.dtx reads then the
          \jobname.lan file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)
          in minitoc.dtx, the language being selected by \ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...
          \fi constructs. The \relax primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```

```
7451 \begin{document}
7452 \ProvidesFile{minitoc-fr.dtx}%
7453          [2018/07/12 minitoc v62 french documentation start file]
7454 \input{minitoc.dtx}
7455 \end{document}
```

Chapter 10

Commented code of the mtcoff package

Contents

10.1	Why mtcoff?	448
10.2	Identification of the package	448
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	449
10.4	Faking simple commands	452
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	453
10.6	Faking flags	454
10.7	Disabling the internal commands	454
10.8	Disabling the font commands	455
10.9	Disabling the \mtcset... commands	456
10.10	Disabling the \mtcpolym... commands	456
10.11	Disabling the new \l@... commands	456
10.12	Ignore the obsolete commands	457
10.13	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands	457
10.14	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	457
10.15	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	458
10.16	Disabling the mini-table features commands	458
10.17	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	459
10.18	Caution for some commands	460
10.19	Disabling commands for “coffee”	461
10.20	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments	461
10.21	Inhibition of the \mtc@[save restore]XXXdepth internal commands	462
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command	462
10.23	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command	462
10.24	Disabling the \mtcfixnomenclature command	462
10.25	Disabling the \addstarred... commands	463

10.1 Why `mtcoff`?

The `minitoc` package [156, 157] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, `mtcoff` (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the `minitoc` package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the `minitoc` package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of `minitoc`. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of \LaTeX ¹; we need the `mtcmess` package
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7456 \*mtcoff)
7457 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7458 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2018/07/12 v62 The mtcoff package]
7459 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

¹ This checking is not really useful for the `mtcoff` package itself, but it is good to check that your version of \LaTeX is not too old to support `minitoc`.

10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

```

\count@ As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using \count@
\dimen@ or \dimen@. For \mtcskipamount, we must use its default definition, \bigskipamount.
\c@minitocdepth
\mtcindent 7460 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@
\mtcskipamount 7461 \let\mtcindent\dimen@
\bigskipamount 7462 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
\c@parttocdepth 7463 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@
\mtcindent 7464 \let\ptcindent\dimen@
\c@secttocdepth 7465 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
\stcindent 7466 \let\stcindent\dimen@

```

```

\c@mtc The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:
\c@ptc
\c@stc 7467 \let\c@mtc\count@ \let\c@ptc\count@ \let\c@stc\count@

```

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:
\mtcgapafterheads
7468 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@} \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

```

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before
\kernafterparttoc the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros
\kernafterpartlof is used.
\kernafterpartlot

```

```

\kernaftersecttoc 7469 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 7470 \def\kernafterparttoc{%
\kernaftersectlot 7471 \mtcoffwarn@true
\kernafterminitoc 7472 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
\kernafterminilof 7473 {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc
\kernafterminilot 7474 \MessageBreak
7475 should not be used out of context
7476 \MessageBreak}%
7477 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7478 \def\kernafterpartlof{%
7479 \mtcoffwarn@true
7480 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7481 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof
7482 \MessageBreak
7483 should not be used out of context
7484 \MessageBreak}%
7485 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7486 \def\kernafterpartlot{%
7487 \mtcoffwarn@true
7488 \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7489 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot

```

F0008

```

7490         \MessageBreak
7491         should not be used out of context
7492         \MessageBreak}%
7493     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7494     }%
7495 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7496     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7497     {%
7498         \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7499             \mtcoffwarn@true
7500             \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7501             {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7502             \MessageBreak
7503             should not be used out of context
7504             \MessageBreak}%
7505             \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7506         \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7507             \mtcoffwarn@true
7508             \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7509             {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7510             \MessageBreak
7511             should not be used out of context
7512             \MessageBreak}%
7513             \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7514         \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7515             \mtcoffwarn@true
7516             \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7517             {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7518             \MessageBreak
7519             should not be used out of context
7520             \MessageBreak}%
7521             \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7522             }%
7523             }%
7524             {%
7525         \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7526             \mtcoffwarn@true
7527             \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7528             {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7529             \MessageBreak
7530             should not be used out of context
7531             \MessageBreak}%
7532             \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7533         \def\kernafterminilof{%
7534             \mtcoffwarn@true
7535             \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%
7536             {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7537             \MessageBreak
7538             should not be used out of context
7539             \MessageBreak}%
7540             \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7541         \def\kernafterminilot{%
7542             \mtcoffwarn@true
7543             \mtcPackageWarning[F0008]{mtcoff}%

```

```

7544             {The macro \string\kernafterminilot
7545             \MessageBreak
7546             should not be used out of context
7547             \MessageBreak}%
7548             \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.0ex}%
7549             }%

```

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the horizontal offsets of the mini-tables. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used.

F0009

```

\pltoffset 7550 \ifundefined{part}{}{}%
\stcoffset 7551 \def\ptcoffset{%
\slfoffset 7552 \mtcoffwarn@true
\sltoffset 7553 \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
\mtcoffset 7554 {The macro \string\ptcoffset
\slfoffset 7555 \MessageBreak
\slfoffset 7556 should not be used out of context
\mltoffset 7557 \MessageBreak}%
7558 \opt}%
7559 \def\plfoffset{%
7560 \mtcoffwarn@true
7561 \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7562 {The macro \string\plfoffset
7563 \MessageBreak
7564 should not be used out of context
7565 \MessageBreak}%
7566 \opt}%
7567 \def\pltoffset{%
7568 \mtcoffwarn@true
7569 \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7570 {The macro \string\pltoffset
7571 \MessageBreak
7572 should not be used out of context
7573 \MessageBreak}%
7574 \opt}%
7575 }%
7576 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
7577 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%
7578 {}%
7579 \def\stcoffset{%
7580 \mtcoffwarn@true
7581 \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7582 {The macro \string\stcoffset
7583 \MessageBreak
7584 should not be used out of context
7585 \MessageBreak}%
7586 \opt}%
7587 \def\slfoffset{%
7588 \mtcoffwarn@true
7589 \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7590 {The macro \string\slfoffset
7591 \MessageBreak

```

```

7592             should not be used out of context
7593             \MessageBreak}%
7594         Opt}%
7595     \def\sltoffset{%
7596         \mtcoffwarn@true
7597         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7598         {The macro \string\sltoffset
7599         \MessageBreak
7600         should not be used out of context
7601         \MessageBreak}%
7602     Opt}%
7603         }%
7604     }%
7605     {%
7606     \def\mtcoffset{%
7607         \mtcoffwarn@true
7608         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7609         {The macro \string\mtcoffset
7610         \MessageBreak
7611         should not be used out of context
7612         \MessageBreak}%
7613     Opt}%
7614     \def\slfoffset{%
7615         \mtcoffwarn@true
7616         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7617         {The macro \string\slfoffset
7618         \MessageBreak
7619         should not be used out of context
7620         \MessageBreak}%
7621     Opt}%
7622     \def\mltoffset{%
7623         \mtcoffwarn@true
7624         \mtcPackageWarning[F0009]{mtcoff}%
7625         {The macro \string\mltoffset
7626         \MessageBreak
7627         should not be used out of context
7628         \MessageBreak}%
7629     Opt}%
7630         }%

```

10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\fakeableofcontents Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeableoffigures
\fakeableoftables 7631 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\mtcskip 7632 \let\fakeableoffigures\relax
7633 \let\fakeableoftables\relax
7634 \let\mtcskip\relax

```

```

\adjustptc Basic adjustment commands are also easy:
\adjustmtc
\adjuststc 7635 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 7636 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 7637 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 7638 \let\decrementptc\relax \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementptc 7639 \let\decrementmtc\relax \let\incrementmtc\relax
\incrementmtc 7640 \let\decrementstc\relax \let\incrementstc\relax
\incrementstc

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 7641 \let\partend\relax \let\partbegin\relax
\sectend 7642 \let\chapterend\relax \let\chapterbegin\relax
\sectbegin 7643 \let\sectend\relax \let\sectbegin\relax

```

10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal \LaTeX macro `\ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
7644 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

```

\ifnextchar Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doarttoc
\doartlof 7645 \def\doarttoc{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\doartlot 7646 \def\doartlof{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc 7647 \def\doartlot{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof 7648 \def\parttoc{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot 7649 \def\partlof{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7650 \def\partlot{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\ifnextchar Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 7651 \def\dominitoc{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 7652 \def\dominilof{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minitoc 7653 \def\dominilot{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilof 7654 \def\minitoc{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilot 7655 \def\minilof{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7656 \def\minilot{\ifnextchar[\gobbleopt@{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 7657 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 7658 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 7659 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 7660 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 7661 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7662 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
7663 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

10.6 Faking flags

```

\ifinparttoc  We defines flags which were true when inside a mini-table of the matching type, false outside.
\ifinpartlof
\ifinpartlot 7664 \newif\ifinparttoc\inparttocfalse%
\ifinminitoc 7665 \newif\ifinpartlof\inpartloffalse%
\ifinminilof 7666 \newif\ifinpartlot\inpartlotfalse%
\ifinminilot 7667 \newif\ifinsecttoc\insecttocfalse%
\ifinsecttoc 7668 \newif\ifinsectlof\insectloffalse%
\ifinsectlof 7669 \newif\ifinsectlot\insectlotfalse%
\ifinsectlot 7670 \newif\ifinminitoc\inminitocfalse%
7671 \newif\ifinminilof\inminiloffalse%
7672 \newif\ifinminilot\inminilotfalse%

```

10.7 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
\tf@mtc      \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 7673 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 7674 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter 7675 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter 7676 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect 7677 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart 7678 \let\pchapter\relax
\xpart 7679 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect 7680 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect 7681 \let\xpart\relax
7682 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
7683 \let\xsect\relax

```

10.8 Disabling the font commands

`\empty` We disable the minitoc font commands (like `\mtcSSfont`) with `\empty`, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here.

```
\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 7684 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 7685 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 7686 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 7687 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 7688 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 7689 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 7690 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 7691 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 7692 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 7693 \let\pltfont\empty
          7694 \let\pltSfont\empty
          7695 \let\ptifont\empty

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 7696 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 7697 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 7698 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 7699 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 7700 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 7701 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 7702 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 7703 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 7704 \let\mltfont\empty
          7705 \let\mltSfont\empty
          7706 \let\mtifont\empty

\stcfont  Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 7707 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 7708 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 7709 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 7710 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 7711 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 7712 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont
\stifont
```

```

7713 \let\slfSfont\empty
7714 \let\sltfont\empty
7715 \let\sltSfont\empty
7716 \let\stifont\empty

```

`\coffeeont` Font for “coffee” ☕ lines:

```

7717 \let\coffeeont\empty

```

10.9 Disabling the `\mtcset...` commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetoffset 7718 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfont 7719 \let\mtcsetoffset\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 7720 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 7721 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 7722 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 7723 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 7724 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 7725 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
7726 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

10.10 Disabling the `\mtcpolym...` commands

```

\DeclareRobustCommand We simulate these commands by keeping only the fourth argument; they must still be robust.
\mtcpolymtoc
\mtcpolymlof 7727 % \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymtoc}[4]{{#4}}
\mtcpolymlof 7728 % \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlof}[4]{{#4}}
\mtcpolymlof 7729 % \DeclareRobustCommand{\mtcpolymlof}[4]{{#4}}

```

10.11 Disabling the new `\l@...` commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectioning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 7730 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 7731 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 7732 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph

```



```

7733 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@section}
7734 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
7735 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
7736 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

10.12 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 7737 \let\firstpartis\@gobble \let\firstchapteris\@gobble \let\firstsectionis\@gobble
\firstsectionis

```

10.13 Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage and \mtcloadmlo commands

```

\@gobble These command have one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
\mtcloadmlo 7738 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

10.14 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule 7739 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 7740 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule 7741 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 7742 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule 7743 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 7744 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule 7745 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 7746 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule 7747 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 7748 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule 7749 \let\noslfrule\relax
\nopltrule 7750 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule 7751 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 7752 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule 7753 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 7754 \let\sltrule\relax
7755 \let\nosltrule\relax
7756 \let\nosltrule\relax

```

10.15 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```

\ptcpagenumbers  These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 7757 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 7758 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers 7759 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 7760 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers 7761 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 7762 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers 7763 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 7764 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers 7765 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 7766 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7767 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7768 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers 7769 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 7770 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers 7771 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 7772 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers 7773 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7774 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax

```

10.16 Disabling the mini-table features commands

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

```
\renewcommand{\beforeparttoc}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

```

\beforeparttoc  Commands for part level mini-tables:
\beforepartlof
\beforepartlot 7775 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
\afterparttoc 7776 \let\beforepartlof\empty
\afterpartlof 7777 \let\beforepartlot\empty
\afterpartlot 7778 \let\afterparttoc\empty
\openparttoc 7779 \let\afterpartlof\empty
\openpartlof 7780 \let\afterpartlot\empty
\openpartlot 7781 \let\openparttoc\empty
\closeparttoc 7782 \let\openpartlof\empty
\closepartlof 7783 \let\openpartlot\empty
\closepartlot 7784 \let\closeparttoc\empty
\thispageparttocstyle 7785 \let\closepartlof\empty
\thispagepartlofstyle
\thispagepartlotstyle

```

```

7787 \let\thispageparttocstyle\empty
7788 \let\thispagepartlofststyle\empty
7789 \let\thispagepartlotstyle\empty

```

```

\beforeminitoc  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 7790 \let\beforeminitoc\empty
\afterminitoc  7791 \let\beforeminilof\empty
\afterminilof  7792 \let\beforeminilot\empty
\afterminilot  7793 \let\afterminitoc\empty
\openminitoc   7794 \let\afterminilof\empty
\openminilof   7795 \let\afterminilot\empty
\openminilot   7796 \let\openminitoc\empty
\closeminitoc  7797 \let\openminilof\empty
\closeminilof  7798 \let\openminilot\empty
\closeminilot  7799 \let\closeminitoc\empty
\thispageinitocstyle 7800 \let\closeminilof\empty
\thispageinitocstyle 7801 \let\closeminilof\empty
\thispageinitocstyle 7802 \let\thispageinitocstyle\empty
\thispageinitocstyle 7803 \let\thispageinitocstyle\empty
\thispageinitocstyle 7804 \let\thispageinitocstyle\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot  7805 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc   7806 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof   7807 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot   7808 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\opensecttoc    7809 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\opensectlof    7810 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\opensectlot    7811 \let\opensecttoc\empty
\closesecttoc   7812 \let\opensectlof\empty
\closesectlof   7813 \let\opensectlot\empty
\closesectlot   7814 \let\closesecttoc\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 7815 \let\closesectlof\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 7816 \let\closesectlot\empty
\thispagesectlofststyle 7817 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\thispagesectlofststyle 7818 \let\thispagesectlofststyle\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7819 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

10.17 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@mtc@longext@  There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 7820 \newif\if@mtc@longext@ \@mtc@longext@true
\ifundottedmtc 7821 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
\l@listof
\ifmtcsecondpart
\chapter

```

```

7822 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
7823 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
7824 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
7825 \let\l@listof\chapter

```

10.18 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and an `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:



F0007

```

7826 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
7827 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
7828   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[F0007]{mtcoff}%
7829   {You should scan (backwards) your .log
7830   \MessageBreak
7831   file to find some commands needing
7832   \MessageBreak
7833   to be replaced if you decide to
7834   \MessageBreak
7835   DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
7836   \MessageBreak
7837   document. It is more wise to keep the
7838   \MessageBreak
7839   \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcff
7840   \MessageBreak
7841   and to comment out only one of them}
7842 \fi}

```

`\mtcaddchapter` Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the line number):

```

\mtcaddsection
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@
\mtc@ck
\addcontentsline
7843 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7844   \mtcPackageWarning[F0004]{mtcoff}%
7845   {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
7846   \MessageBreak
7847   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7848   \MessageBreak}
7849 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7850 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7851 \else
7852   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
7853 \fi}
7854 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7855   \mtcPackageWarning[F0006]{mtcoff}%
7856   {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
7857   \MessageBreak

```

F0004

F0006

F0005

```

7858      by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7859      \MessageBreak}
7860 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7861 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7862 \else
7863   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7864 \fi}
7865 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7866   \mtcPackageWarning[F0005]{mtcoff}%
7867   {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
7868   \MessageBreak
7869   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7870   \MessageBreak}
7871 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7872 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7873 \else
7874   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7875 \fi}

```

10.19 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 7876 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 7877 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
7878 \let\l@coffee\relax
7879 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
7880 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

10.20 Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 7881 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
7882 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}
7883 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]{\empty}{\empty}

```

10.21 Inhibition of the `\mtc@[save|restore]XXXdepth` internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcff package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 7884 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 7885 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
                    7886 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
                    7887 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
                    7888 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
                    7889 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixglossary` command

`\mtcfixglossary` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7890 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax]
```

10.23 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7891 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

10.24 Disabling the `\mtcfixnomenclature` command

`\mtcfixnomenclature` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7892 \newcommand{\mtcfixnomenclature}[1][\relax]
```

10.25 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

```

\ifmtcoffwarn@ These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but mtcoff simulates and gives a
\addstarredpart warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection 7893 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
\addcontentsline 7894   \mtcPackageWarning[F0002]{mtcoff}%
7895   {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
7896   \MessageBreak
7897   \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7898   \MessageBreak}
7899   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
7900 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7901   \mtcPackageWarning[F0001]{mtcoff}%
7902   {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
7903   \MessageBreak
7904   \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7905   \MessageBreak}
7906   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
7907 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7908   \mtcPackageWarning[F0003]{mtcoff}%
7909   {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
7910   \MessageBreak
7911   \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7912   \MessageBreak}
7913   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}

```

F0002

F0001

F0003

And the mtcoff package is terminated.

```
7914 </mtcoff>
```

Chapter 11

Commented code of the mtcmess package

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 7915 <(*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 7916 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 7917 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 7918 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][[]%
7919     {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7920 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][[]%
7921     {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7922 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][[]%
7923     {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
7924 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][[]%
7925     {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
7926 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

¹ For instance, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

Chapter 12

Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.



```
7927 <*mtcpatchmem>
7928 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7929 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
7930   [2018/07/12 v62 package mtcpatchmem]
7931 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
7932 \mtcPackageInfo[M0001]{mtcpatchmem}%
7933   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
7934 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][ ]{%
7935   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
7936   \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
7937 }
7938 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
7939 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
7940 % entry for all fields.
7941   \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
7942     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
7943     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
7944   \else
7945 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If|#1| is empty then only
7946 % one was found.
7947     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
7948     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
7949       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
7950     \else
7951       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
7952     \fi
7953   \fi
7954   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
7955     \if@mainmatter
7956       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

7957     \fi
7958   \fi
7959   \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
7960   \ifartopt
7961     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7962     \@afterheading
7963   \else
7964     \insertchapterspace
7965     \if@twocolumn
7966       \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
7967     \else
7968       \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7969     \fi
7970     \@afterheading
7971   \fi
7972   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
7973     \if@mainmatter
7974       \ifanappendix
7975         \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
7976           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7977       \else
7978         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
7979           \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7980       \fi
7981     \else
7982       \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7983     \fi
7984   \else
7985     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7986   \fi
7987   \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
7988 }
7989 </mtcpatchmem>

```

Chapter 13

Language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

Contents

13.1	Overview	471
13.2	“Acadian” language: acadian.mld	472
13.3	“Acadien” language: acadien.mld	472
13.4	“Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld	473
13.5	“Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld	473
13.6	“Albanian” language: albanian.mld	473
13.7	“American” language: american.mld	474
13.8	“Arab” language: arab.mld	474
13.9	“Arab2” language: arab2.mld	475
13.10	“Arabi” language: arabi.mld	475
13.11	“Arabic” language: arabic.mld	476
13.12	“Armenian” language: armenian.mld	476
13.13	“Australian” language: australian.mld	476
13.14	“Austrian” language: austrian.mld	477
13.15	“Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld	477
13.16	“Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld	477
13.17	“Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld	478
13.18	“Bangla” language: bangla.mld	478
13.19	“Basque” language: basque.mld	479
13.20	“Bengali” language: bengali.mld	479
13.21	“Bicig” language: bicig.mld	479
13.22	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld	480
13.23	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld	480
13.24	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld	481
13.25	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld	481
13.26	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld	482
13.27	“Breton” language: breton.mld	482
13.28	“British” language: british.mld	483
13.29	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld	483
13.30	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld	483

13.31	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld	484
13.32	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld	485
13.33	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld	485
13.34	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld	485
13.35	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld	486
13.36	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld	486
13.37	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld	486
13.38	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.ml[d o]	487
13.39	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d o]	487
13.40	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld	487
13.41	“Czech” language: czech.mld	488
13.42	“Danish” language: danish.mld	488
13.43	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld	489
13.44	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld	489
13.45	“English” language: english.mld	490
13.46	“English1” language: english1.mld	490
13.47	“English2” language: english2.mld	491
13.48	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld	492
13.49	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld	492
13.50	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld	492
13.51	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld	493
13.52	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld	493
13.53	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld	494
13.54	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.ml[d o]	494
13.55	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d o]	495
13.56	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld	495
13.57	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld	495
13.58	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld	496
13.59	“Francais” language: francais.mld	496
13.60	“French” language: french.mld	497
13.61	“French1” language: french1.mld	497
13.62	“French2” language: french2.mld	498
13.63	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld	498
13.64	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld	499
13.65	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld	499
13.66	“Galician” language: galician.mld	499
13.67	“German” language: german.mld	500
13.68	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld	500
13.69	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld	501
13.70	“Greek” language: greek.mld	501
13.71	“Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld	502
13.72	“Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld	502
13.73	“Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld	503
13.74	“Guarani” language: guarani.mld	504
13.75	“Hangul1” language: hangul1.ml[d o]	505
13.76	“Hangul2” language: hangul2.ml[d o]	505
13.77	“Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d o]	506
13.78	“Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d o]	506
13.79	“Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.ml[d o]	507
13.80	“Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld.ml[d o]	507
13.81	“Hanja2” language: hanja2.ml[d o]	508
13.82	“Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.ml[d o]	508
13.83	“Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld	508

13.84	“Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	509
13.85	“Hindi” language: hindi.mld	510
13.86	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	510
13.87	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	510
13.88	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	511
13.89	“Indon” language: indon.mld	511
13.90	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	511
13.91	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	512
13.92	“Irish” language: irish.mld	512
13.93	“Italian” language: italian.mld	513
13.94	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	513
13.95	“Japanese” language: japanese.ml[d o]	514
13.96	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.ml[d o]	514
13.97	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.ml[d o]	515
13.98	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.ml[d o]	515
13.99	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.ml[d o]	516
13.100	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.ml[d o]	516
13.101	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	517
13.102	“Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld	517
13.103	“Latin” language: latin.mld	517
13.104	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	518
13.105	“Latinc” language: latinc.mld	518
13.106	“Latinc2” language: latinc2.mld	519
13.107	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	519
13.108	“Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld	520
13.109	“Letton” language: letton.mld	520
13.110	“Letton2” language: letton2.mld	521
13.111	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	521
13.112	“Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld	521
13.113	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	522
13.114	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	522
13.115	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	523
13.116	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	523
13.117	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	524
13.118	“Malay” language: malay.mld	524
13.119	“Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld	524
13.120	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	525
13.121	“Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld	525
13.122	“Malayalam-mr” language: malayalam-mr.mld	526
13.123	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.ml[d o]	526
13.124	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	527
13.125	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	527
13.126	“Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld	528
13.127	“Manju” language: manju.mld	528
13.128	“Mexican” language: mexican.mld	528
13.129	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	529
13.130	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	529
13.131	“Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	530
13.132	“Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	531
13.133	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	531
13.134	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	531
13.135	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	531
13.136	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	532

13.137 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	532
13.138 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld	533
13.139 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	533
13.140 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	534
13.141 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	534
13.142 “Occitan” language: occitan.mld	535
13.143 “Occitan2” language: occitan2.mld	535
13.144 “Polish” language: polish.mld	536
13.145 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld	536
13.146 “Polski” language: polski.mld	537
13.147 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld	537
13.148 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	537
13.149 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld	538
13.150 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	538
13.151 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	539
13.152 “Russian” language: russian.mld	539
13.153 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	540
13.154 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	541
13.155 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	541
13.156 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	542
13.157 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.ml[d o]	543
13.158 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.ml[d o]	543
13.159 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.ml[d o]	544
13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.ml[d o]	544
13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.ml[d o]	544
13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.ml[d o]	545
13.163 “Samin” language: samin.mld	545
13.164 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	546
13.165 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	546
13.166 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	547
13.167 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	547
13.168 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	548
13.169 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	548
13.170 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	549
13.171 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	549
13.172 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	550
13.173 “Swahili” language: swahili.mld	550
13.174 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	551
13.175 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	551
13.176 “Thai” language: thai.ml[d o]	552
13.177 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	552
13.178 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	552
13.179 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	553
13.180 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	553
13.181 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	553
13.182 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	553
13.183 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	554
13.184 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	554
13.185 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	555
13.186 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	555
13.187 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	555
13.188 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	556
13.189 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	556

13.190 “Xalx” language: <code>xalx.mld</code>	557
13.191 “Xalx2” language: <code>xalx2.mld</code>	557
13.192 “Xalx3” language: <code>xalx3.mld</code>	558

13.1 Overview

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details.

For some languages, I have added a map (and a flag) of the country or area where the language is spoken, if it is not trivial. The origin of each map is given by an URL to the graphic file or to the WEB page where I found it. Note that the [294] and [229] Web sites are useful sources. Maps from [229] are under the Creative Commons License, see http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/1.0/deed.en_GB. The site <http://www.expatries.senat.fr/pays.html> allows to look at the maps of many countries (but not of France!). The Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection [395] (The University of Texas at Austin, <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps>) contains countless maps.

Many free maps were also found by a search in the vast Wikipedia (i.e. <http://en.wikipedia.org>, <http://fr.wikipedia.org>, <http://de.wikipedia.org>, <http://simple.wikipedia.org>, etc.). If you are curious and brave, you can also find many maps and documents about Eastern Europa and about Asia at <http://www.hunmagyar.org>; that site give many historical informations.

A .mld file is loaded either via a package option in the `\usepackage` command for the minitoc package (or a global option for the document), either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage      \mtcselectlanguage{<language>}
```

```
\ptctitle Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents,
\plftitle mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):
\plttitle
\mtctitle      • \ptctitle                • \mtctitle                • \stctitle
\mlftitle      • \plftitle                • \mlftitle                • \slftitle
\mltttitle     • \plttitle                • \mltttitle               • \sltttitle
\stctitle      •
\slftitle      •
\sltttitle     •
```

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the babel package [54, 60, 61, 74], the CJK system [127, 297, 298], the H_AL_AT_EX system [266, in korean], the Antomega system [272], the Arab_TE_X [276, 277], Bang_TE_X [362], Devanāgarī for _TE_X [364], ethiop [44], Farsi_TE_X [162]¹, guarani [45], malayalam [4] et omal [5], Mon_TE_X [137, 140], or Arm_TE_X [142] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.



`filecontents` But for some oriental languages², the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult
`\mtcselectlanguage` to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file³, not
 generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. To go around this
 limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses filecontents environments to generate the .mlo files.
 The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via the
`\mtcselectlanguage` command.



Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language*.mld file (and of the *language*.mlo file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document.log* file. But the presence of the *english.mld* file is mandatory, because english is the default language. If some .mld or .mlo files are missing, the list of this files is given in the .log file. You should find these files on CTAN.

I0050
I0051
E0036
E0038
W0094

13.2 “Acadian” language: `acadian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The acadian language⁴ is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.60 on page 497):

```
7990 <*acadian>
7991 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7992 </acadian>
```

13.3 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “acadien” language⁴ is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.60 on page 497):

¹ By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and the Farsi_TE_X Project Group. See the Farsi_TE_X site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

² Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

³ The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

⁴ Spoken in Acadia and some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.


```

7993 < *acadien>
7994 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7995 < /acadien>

```

13.4 “Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld

The titles for the “afrikaan” language⁵ come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Stoffel LOMBARD) in the `babel` package [55, 60, 61]:

```

7996 < *afrikaan>
7997 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]%
7998 %% Afrikaan(s) titles from dutch.dtx (babel) by Braams, Johannes~L.
7999 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
8000 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
8001 \def\pltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
8002 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
8003 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
8004 \def\mltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
8005 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
8006 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
8007 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
8008 < /afrikaan>

```

13.5 “Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load `afrikaan.mld` (see section 13.4):

```

8009 < *afrikaans>
8010 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
8011 < /afrikaans>

```

13.6 “Albanian” language: albanian.mld

The albanian language (*shqip*) is spoken in Albania and some regions of Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia and Kosovo. The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the `albanian.dtx` file (with a contribution of Adi ZAIMI) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 101]:

⁵ Spoken in South Africa and Namibia, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.44 on page 489. See also <http://www.tifq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/afrikaans.htm> in [294].

```

8012 <*albanian>
8013 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8014 %% Albanian titles from albabian.dtx (babel).
8015 %% Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com / adizaimi at yahoo.com).
8016 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
8017 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
8018 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
8019 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
8020 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
8021 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
8022 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
8023 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
8024 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
8025 </albanian>

```

13.7 “American” language: american.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “american” language is just like “english” (the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules, some spellings and phonetics), so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```

8026 <*american>
8027 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8028 </american>

```

13.8 “Arab” language: arab.mld

The titles for the “arab” language (al-ʿArabiyyah) are taken from the ArabTeX package [276, 277] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The arabic language is spoken in: Algeria, Bahrain, Egypt, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Mauritania, Morocco, Oman, Palestinian territories, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Sudan, Syria, Tunisia, United Arab Emirates, Western Sahara, Yemen by a majority; it is also the liturgical language of Islam.

```

8029 <*arab>
8030 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8031 %% Arabic titles. Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8032 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8033 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8034 \def\plttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8035 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
8036 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8037 \def\mlttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8038 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%

```

```

8039 \def\slfttitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
8040 \def\sltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
8041 \</arab>

```

13.9 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

\mtcArabTok The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the ArabT_EX package [276, 277] (by
\tcArabTok Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab”
\atok language.

```

8042 \<arab2>
8043 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8044 %% Arabic titles. Variant. Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
8045 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\atok}%
8046 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8047 \def\plfttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8048 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8049 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8050 \def\mlfttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8051 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8052 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
8053 \def\slfttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
8054 \def\sltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
8055 \</arab2>

```

13.10 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

\R The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the Arabi package [243] (by Youssef JABRI),
which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

8056 \<arabi>
8057 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]%
8058 %% Arabic titles (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
8059 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package, by Youssef Jabri)
8060 \def\ptctitle{\R{alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8061 \def\plfttitle{\R{qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8062 \def\pltttitle{\R{qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8063 \def\mtctitle{\R{alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8064 \def\mlfttitle{\R{qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8065 \def\mltttitle{\R{qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8066 \def\stctitle{\R{alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
8067 \def\slfttitle{\R{qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace\alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8068 \def\sltttitle{\R{qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\Tspace\alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8069 \</arabi>

```

13.11 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.8 on page 474):

```
8070 <*arabic>
8071 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]\mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
8072 </arabic>
```

13.12 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language (*hayeren*) are taken from the ArmTeX package [142] (by Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts. The armenian language is spoken in Armenia, in a part of Azerbaidjan and in the armenian diaspora.

```
8073 <*armenian>
8074 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]%
8075 %% Armenian titles from ArmTeX. Sergueï Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr),
8076 %% Arnak Dalalyan & Vartan Akopian
8077 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8078 \def\plftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
8079 \def\plttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
8080 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8081 \def\mlftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
8082 \def\mlttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
8083 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
8084 \def\slftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
8085 \def\slttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
8086 </armenian>
```

13.13 “Australian” language: australian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8087 <*australian>
8088 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8089 </australian>
```

13.14 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.67 on page 500):

```
8090 (*austrian)
8091 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{german}%
8092 </austrian>
```

13.15 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.16):

```
8093 (*bahasa)
8094 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8095 </bahasa>
```

13.16 “Bahasai” language: `bahasai.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language⁶ (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 82]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.17 on the following page. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.15 and 13.89 to 13.90 on page 511.

```
8096 (*bahasai)
8097 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8098 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles from bahasa.dtx in the babel package.
8099 %% Knappen, Jörg & Mart, Terry
8100 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8101 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8102 \def\pltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8103 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8104 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8105 \def\mltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8106 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
8107 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
8108 \def\sltttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
8109 </bahasai>
```

⁶ Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant. See http://www.tifq.ulaval.ca/axl/asiae/indonesie-1_languages.htm in [294].

13.17 “Bahasam” language: `bahasam.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)⁷ are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 83]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.15 on the page before. For other names for this language, see sections 13.118 on page 524 and 13.129 on page 529.

```

8110 <(*bahasam)
8111 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]%
8112 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles from bahasam.dtx in the babel package
8113 %% Knappen, Jörg & Mart, Terry & Margolis, Bob
8114 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
8115 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8116 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8117 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
8118 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8119 \def\mlttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8120 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
8121 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8122 \def\slttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8123 </bahasam>

```

13.18 “Bangla” language: `bangla.mld`

The titles for the “bangla” (bengali) language⁸ are taken from the `BangTeX` package [362] (by Palash Baran PAL); they need specific fonts (the bengali alphabet is derived from sanskrit).

```

8124 <(*bangla)
8125 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8126 %% Bangla titles from BangTeX. Needs specific fonts.
8127 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}% <-----
8128 \def\plftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8129 \def\plttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8130 \def\mtctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8131 \def\mlftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8132 \def\mlttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8133 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8134 \def\slftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8135 \def\slttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8136 </bangla>

```

⁷ Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

⁸ Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India, like Occidental Bengal (19), Orissa (21), Assam (18), Bihar (10) and Tripura (16).

13.19 “Basque” language: `basque.mld`

The titles for the “basque” language⁹ (*euskara*) are taken from the `basque.dtx` file in the `babel` package [60–62], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA AZKONA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

```

8137 <(*basque)
8138 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8139 %% Basque titles from basque.dtx (babel).
8140 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. <wtpagagj at lg.ehu.es> WWW: http://tp.lc.ehu.es/jma.html
8141 %% & Sanchez, Julio <jsanchez at gmv.es>,
8142 %% and help from Izaola Azkona, Zunbeltz <wmbizazz at lg dot ehu>
8143 %% Needs special fonts.
8144 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8145 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8146 \def\plttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8147 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8148 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8149 \def\mlttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8150 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8151 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8152 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8153 </basque>

```

13.20 “Bengali” language: `bengali.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “bengali” language is a synonym for the “bangla” language, so we load the file `bangla.mld` (see section 13.18 on the preceding page):

```

8154 <(*bengali)
8155 \ProvidesFile{bengali.mld}[2007/07/23]\mtcselectlanguage{bangla}%
8156 </bengali>

```

13.21 “Bicig” language: `bicig.mld`

`\bcg` The titles for the “bicig” language¹⁰ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.22 to 13.23 on the following page, and 13.130 on page 529.

⁹ Spoken in the basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.

¹⁰ The `bicig` is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as `Uighur` or `Bichig`. See also section 13.178 on page 552.

```

8157 <{*bicig>
8158 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8159 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles needs mongol fonts
8160 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8161 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8162 \def\pltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8163 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8164 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8165 \def\mltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8166 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8167 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
8168 \def\sltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
8169 </bicig>

```

13.22 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language¹¹ are taken from the MonT_EX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 on the page before, and 13.23, and 13.130 on page 529.

```

8170 <{*bicig2>
8171 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]%
8172 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8173 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8174 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8175 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8176 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8177 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8178 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8179 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8180 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8181 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8182 </bicig2>

```

13.23 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language¹² are taken from the MonT_EX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 to 13.22 on pages 479–480 and 13.130 on page 529.

¹¹The `bicig`, or `uighur`, is a written form of the mongolian language, `bicig2` is a variant. See also section 13.179 on page 553.

¹²The `bicig`, or `uighur`, is a written form of the mongolian language, `bicig3` is a variant. See also section 13.180 on page 553.


```

8183 <{*bicig3}
8184 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]%
8185 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8186 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8187 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8188 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8189 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8190 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8191 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8192 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8193 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8194 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8195 </bicig3>

```

13.24 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language¹³ are taken from the MonT_EX package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.127 on page 528 and 13.130 on page 529. The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to eliminate all the ambiguities of Mongolian.

```

8196 <{*bithe}
8197 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]%
8198 %% Manju (bithe) titles (needs mongol fonts)
8199 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8200 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8201 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8202 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8203 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8204 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8205 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8206 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8207 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8208 </bithe>

```

13.25 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language (*português brasileiro* or *português do Brasil*)¹⁴ are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (for portuguese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 92]:

¹³The `bithe` is a written form of the `manju` variant of the mongolian language.

¹⁴It is the main portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. Note that these titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed to brazilian translations. See section 13.148 on page 537.

```

8209 < *brazil>
8210 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8211 %% Portugues (brazil) titles, from portuges.dtx (babel)
8212 %% Ramalhetes, Jose Pedro & "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8213 \def\ptctitle{Sum\ 'ario}%
8214 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8215 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8216 \def\mtctitle{Sum\ 'ario}%
8217 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8218 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8219 \def\stctitle{Sum\ 'ario}%
8220 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8221 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8222 < /brazil>

```

13.26 “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.25 on the page before):

```

8223 < *brazilian>
8224 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8225 < /brazilian>

```

13.27 “Breton” language: breton.mld

The titles for the “breton” language (*brezhoneg*)¹⁵ are taken from the `breton.dtx` file (by Christian ROLLAND) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 93]:

```

8226 < *breton>
8227 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8228 %% Breton titles from breton.dtx (babel) by Rolland, Christian
8229 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8230 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\ 'u}%
8231 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolenno\ 'u}%
8232 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8233 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\ 'u}%
8234 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolenno\ 'u}%
8235 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8236 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\ 'u}%
8237 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolenno\ 'u}%
8238 < /breton>

```

¹⁵Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany. See also <http://www.ofis-bzh.org>, <http://www.geobreizh.com/breizh/images/cartes/carte-bretagne-langue-fr.jpg> and <http://www.geobreizh.com/breizh/images/cartes/carte-bretagne-langue-br.jpg>.

13.28 “British” language: `british.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8239 <{*british}
8240 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8241 </{*british}
```

13.29 “Bulgarian” language: `bulgarian.mld`

`\cyr` The titles for the “bulgarian” language (*bǎlgarski*) are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi N. BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [60, 61, 67]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.30.

```
8242 <{*bulgarian}
8243 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2007/03/08]%
8244 %% Bulgarian titles from bulgarian.dtx (babel) (needs special cyrillic fonts)
8245 %% by Boshnakov, Georgi N. <georgi.boshnakov at umist.ac.uk>
8246 \def\ptctitle{%
8247   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8248 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
8249   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8250 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
8251   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8252 \def\mtctitle{%
8253   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8254 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
8255   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8256 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
8257   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8258 \def\stctitle{%
8259   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8260 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
8261   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8262 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
8263   \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8264 </{*bulgarian}
```

13.30 “Bulgarianb” language: `bulgarianb.mld`

`\cyr` The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) of the

babel package [60, 61, 84, 286]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.29 on the preceding page.

```

8265 <*bulgarianb>
8266 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]%
8267 %% Upper bulgarian titles from russianb.dtx. Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian.
8268 \def\ptctitle{%
8269   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8270 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
8271   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8272 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
8273   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8274 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8275   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8276 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
8277   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8278 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
8279   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8280 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8281   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8282 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
8283   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8284 \def\slttitle{% Tablici
8285   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8286 </bulgarianb>

```

13.31 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

\mnr The titles for the “buryat” language¹⁶ are taken from the MonT_EX package [137, 140]. This
\sh language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.130 on page 529.

```

8287 <*buryat>
8288 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8289 %% Buryat titles. Needs special fonts.
8290 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8291 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8292 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8293 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8294 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8295 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8296 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8297 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8298 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8299 </buryat>

```

¹⁶Spoken in some regions of Mongolia and in the Buryatia republic, near Lake Baikal.

13.32 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.31 on the preceding page) are taken from the `MonTeX` package [137, 140]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.130 on page 529.

```
8300 <*buryat2>
8301 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8302 %% Buryat2 titles. Needs special fonts.
8303 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8304 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8305 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8306 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8307 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8308 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8309 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8310 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8311 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8312 </buryat2>
```

13.33 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
8313 <*canadian>
8314 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8315 </canadian>
```

13.34 “Canadien” language: canadien.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.60 on page 497):

```
8316 <*canadien>
8317 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8318 </canadien>
```

13.35 “Castillan” language: castillan.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “castillan” language is better known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.169 on page 548):

```
8319 < *castillan>
8320 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8321 < /castillan>
```

13.36 “Castillian” language: castillian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` “Castillian” is just the english name for “castillan”, so we just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.169 on page 548):

```
8322 < *castillian>
8323 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8324 < /castillian>
```

13.37 “Catalan” language: catalan.mld

The titles for the “catalan” language (*català, valencià*)¹⁷ are taken from the `catalan.dtx` file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 64]:

```
8325 < *catalan>
8326 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8327 %% Catalan titles from catalan.dtx (babel) (Badenes, Gonçal)
8328 \def\ptctitle{\'Index}%
8329 \def\plftitle{\'Index de figures}%
8330 \def\pltttitle{\'Index de taules}%
8331 %%
8332 \def\mtctitle{\'Index}%
8333 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8334 \def\mltttitle{Taules}%
8335 \def\stctitle{\'Index}%
8336 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8337 \def\sltttitle{Taules}%
8338 < /catalan>
```

¹⁷Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona, and in Roussillon, in France.

13.38 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.ml[d|o]

`\mtcloadmlo` There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.39. See [418] about the history of China and the chinese language. The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```
8339 <*chinese1>
8340 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
8341 %% From file Bg5.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs with LaTeX2e
8342 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8343 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
8344 </chinese1>
```

13.39 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.ml[d|o]

`\mtcloadmlo` The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.38. The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese2.mlo.

```
8345 <*chinese2>
8346 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
8347 %% From file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs with LaTeX2e
8348 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8349 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
8350 </chinese2>
```

13.40 “Croatian” language: croatian.mld

The titles for the “croatian” language (*hrvatski*) are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file (by Alan PAIĆ) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 89]:

```
8351 <*croatian>
8352 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8353 %% Croatian titles from croatian.dtx (babel). Pai\{c}, Alan.
8354 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8355 \def\plftitle{Popis slika}%
```

```

8356 \def\pltttitle{Popis tablica}%
8357 \def\mtcttitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8358 \def\mlfttitle{Popis slika}%
8359 \def\mltttitle{Popis tablica}%
8360 \def\stcttitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8361 \def\slfttitle{Slike}%
8362 \def\slttitle{Tablice}%
8363 </croatian>

```

13.41 “Czech” language: czech.mld

The titles for the “czech” language (*čeština*, *český jazyk*) are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Miloš V. LOKAJČEK) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 87]:

```

8364 <*czech>
8365 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2007/12/04]%
8366 %% Czech titles from czech.dtx (babel). Lokaj{\'\i}\v{c}ek, Milo\v{s} V.
8367 \def\ptcttitle{Obsah}%
8368 \def\plfttitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
8369 \def\pltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8370 \def\mtcttitle{Obsah}%
8371 \def\mlfttitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
8372 \def\mltttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8373 \def\stcttitle{Obsah}%
8374 \def\slfttitle{Seznam obr\'azk\r{u}}%
8375 \def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8376 </czech>

```

13.42 “Danish” language: danish.mld

The titles for the “danish” language ¹⁸ are taken from the `danish.dtx` file (by Henning LARSEN) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 85]:

```

8377 <*danish>
8378 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8379 %% Danish titles from danish.dtx (babel). Larsen, Henning (larsen@cernvm.cern.ch)
8380 \def\ptcttitle{Indhold}%
8381 \def\plfttitle{Figurer}%
8382 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
8383 \def\mtcttitle{Indhold}%
8384 \def\mlfttitle{Figurer}%
8385 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
8386 \def\stcttitle{Indhold}%

```

¹⁸The danish (*dansk*) language is spoken in Denmark, in the Faeroe Islands and in Greenland.


```

8387 \def\slfttitle{Figurer}%
8388 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
8389 </danish>

```

13.43 “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the devanagari.sty and captions.dn files (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [364] (Devanāgarī). See also section 13.85 on page 510.

```

\dn Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is http://devnag.sarovar.org.
\qva See also [148] about the hindi language.
\re
\rs 8390 <*devanagari>
\8 8391 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]%
\2 8392 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles from devanagari.sty by
    8393 %% Pandey, Anshuman & Radhakrishnan, C.~V. & Wagner, Zden\v{e}k &
    8394 %% Smith, John & Carmody, Kevin & Mahoney, Richard & Wujastyk, Dominik
    8395 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
    8396 \def\plfttitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
    8397 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
    8398 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
    8399 \def\mlfttitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
    8400 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
    8401 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
    8402 \def\slfttitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
    8403 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
    8404 </devanagari>

```

13.44 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language¹⁹ are taken from the dutch.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [55, 60, 61]:

```

8405 <*dutch>
8406 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8407 %% Dutch titles from dutch.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8408 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8409 \def\plfttitle{L"yst van figuren}%
8410 \def\pltttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%

```

¹⁹The dutch language (*nederlands*) is spoken in the Netherlands and a part of Belgium.

```

8411 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8412 \def\mlftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
8413 \def\mltttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
8414 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8415 \def\slftitle{L"yst van figuren}%
8416 \def\slttitle{L"yst van tabellen}%
8417 </dutch>

```

13.45 “English” language: english.mld

The titles for the “english” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [56, 60, 61]. *The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*



See also sections 13.7 on page 474, 13.13 on page 476, 13.28 on page 483, 13.33 on page 485, 13.134 on page 531, 13.181 on page 553, and 13.185 on page 555.

```

8418 <(*english>
8419 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8420 %% English titles from english.dtx (babel) (Braams, Johannes~L.)
8421 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
8422 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
8423 \def\plttitle{List of Tables}%
8424 %%
8425 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8426 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8427 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8428 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8429 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8430 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8431 </english>

```

13.46 “English1” language: english1.mld

`\ifnum` The titles for the “english1” language come from the `english.dtx` file (written by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [56, 60, 61], with some adaptations for the `\Roman` part-level titles.

```

8432 <(*english1>
8433 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]%
8434 %% English titles from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8435 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
8436 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8437   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
8438   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%

```

```

8439 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8440   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
8441   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8442 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8443   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
8444   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8445 %%
8446 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8447 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8448 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8449 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8450 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8451 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8452 </english1>

```

13.47 “English2” language: english2.mld

```

\mtcEnglishIIpart The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the english.dtx file (written
\ifcase by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [56, 60, 61], with adaptations at the part level.
\value
\Roman
8453 (*english2)
8454 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]%
8455 %% English titles from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8456 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JFPD)
8457 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8458 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or the Third Part
8459 \or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or the Sixth Part
8460 \or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or the Ninth Part
8461 \or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or the Twelfth Part
8462 \or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part \or the Fifteenth Part
8463 \or the Sixteenth Part \or the Seventeenth Part \or the Eighteenth Part
8464 \or the Nineteenth Part\or the Twentieth Part \else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
8465 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8466 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8467 \def\plttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8468 %%
8469 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8470 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8471 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8472 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8473 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8474 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8475 </english2>

```

13.48 “Esperant” language: `esperant.mld`

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 94]. The esperanto artificial language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Ludwig Lejzer ZAMENHOF²⁰ (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```
8476 <*esperant>
8477 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]%
8478 %% Esperanto titles from esperanto.dtx (babel) Ruiz-Altaba, Marti & Knappen, Jörg
8479 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8480 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8481 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8482 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
8483 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8484 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8485 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
8486 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8487 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8488 </esperant>
```

13.49 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.48):

```
8489 <*esperanto>
8490 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8491 </esperanto>
```

13.50 “Estonian” language: `estonian.mld`

The titles for the “estonian” language²¹ are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 95]:

```
8492 <*estonian>
8493 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8494 %% Estonian titles from estonian.dtx (babel) Saar, Enn
8495 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8496 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%

```

²⁰See http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/L.L._Zamenhof, <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information; his first names are sometimes spelled “Ludvic Lazarus” or “Louis-Lazare”, with small variations.

²¹Estonian (*eesti keel*) is *not* a baltic language, but a language from the uralian family.

```

8497 \def\pltttitle{Tabelid}%
8498 \def\mtcttitle{Sisukord}%
8499 \def\mlfttitle{Joonised}%
8500 \def\mltttitle{Tabelid}%
8501 \def\stcttitle{Sisukord}%
8502 \def\slfttitle{Joonised}%
8503 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
8504 </estonian>

```

13.51 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

`\eth@doaltchar` The titles for the “ethiopia” language (amharic, *āmarīīīā*) are taken from the `ethiop` package [44] (written by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.53 on the next page. for the repartition of the various ethiopian dialects.

```

8505 <ethiopia>
8506 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8507 %% Ethiopian titles. Needs special fonts.
8508 \def\ptcttitle{yezate}%
8509 \def\plfttitle{%
8510   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8511 \def\pltttitle{%
8512   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8513 \def\mtcttitle{yezate}%
8514 \def\mlfttitle{%
8515   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8516 \def\mltttitle{%
8517   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8518 \def\stcttitle{yezate}%
8519 \def\slfttitle{%
8520   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8521 \def\slttitle{%
8522   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149} mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8523 </ethiopia>

```

13.52 “Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.51).

```

8524 <ethiopian>
8525 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
8526 </ethiopian>

```

13.53 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [44] (by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the page before.

```

8527 <*ethiopian2>
8528 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]%
8529 %% Ethiopian titles with Omega. Needs special fonts
8530 \def\ptctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
8531 \def\plftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d ^^121b^^^12cd^^^132b}%
8532 \def\pltttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
8533 ^^121b^^^12cd^^^132b}%
8534 \def\mtctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
8535 \def\mlftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d ^^121b^^^12cd^^^132b}%
8536 \def\mltttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
8537 ^^121b^^^12cd^^^132b}%
8538 \def\stctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
8539 \def\slftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d ^^121b^^^12cd^^^132b}%
8540 \def\sltttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
8541 ^^121b^^^12cd^^^132b}%
8542 </ethiopian2>

```

13.54 “Farsi1” language: `farsi1.ml[d|o]`

`\mtcloadmlo` There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX [162] system²², by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.55 on the following page. The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

```

8543 <*farsi1>
8544 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]\mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
8545 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8546 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu), Hassan Abolhassani, & others.
8547 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8548 </farsi1>

```

²²By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and the FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

13.55 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.ml[d|o]

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiT_EX system [162]²³, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.54 on the page before.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

```
8549 <(*farsi2)
8550 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]\mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8551 %% From farsi.sty (FarsiTEX project: http://www.farsitex.org). Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8552 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu), Hassan Abolhassani, & others.
8553 </farsi2>
```

13.56 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

`\FR` There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran and Afghanistan. The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.ldf` file in the Arabi system [243], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```
8554 <(*farsi3)
8555 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]%
8556 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system by Youssef Jabri.
8557 \def\ptctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8558 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8559 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8560 \def\mtctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8561 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8562 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8563 \def\stctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8564 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8565 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8566 </farsi3>
```

13.57 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language (*suomi*) are taken from the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the babel package [60, 61, 80]. See also section 13.58 on the following page.

²³ By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and the FarsiT_EX Project Group. See the FarsiT_EX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```

8567 <(*finnish)
8568 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]%
8569 %% Finnish titles from finnish.dtx (babel). Kanerva, Mikko & Reino, Keranen
8570 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}%
8571 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8572 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8573 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}%
8574 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8575 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8576 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt{o}%
8577 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8578 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8579 </finnish>

```

13.58 “Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 80]. See also section 13.57 on the page before.

```

8580 <(*finnish2)
8581 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8582 %% Finnish titles (variant) from finnish.dtx (babel). Kanerva, Mikko & Reino, Keranen
8583 \def\ptctitle{Sis\allys}%
8584 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8585 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8586 \def\mtctitle{Sis\allys}%
8587 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8588 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8589 \def\stctitle{Sis\allys}%
8590 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8591 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8592 </finnish2>

```

13.59 “Francais” language: francais.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “*francais*” (*français*) language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.60 on the following page):

```

8593 <(*francais)
8594 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8595 </francais>

```


13.60 “French” language: french.mld

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the babel package [60, 61, 75]. See also sections 13.2 to 13.3 on page 472, 13.34 on page 485, 13.59 on the page before, and 13.63 to 13.65 on pages 498–499.

```

8596 <{*french}
8597 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]%
8598 %% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
8599 \def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
8600 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
8601 \def\plttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
8602 %%
8603 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8604 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8605 \def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
8606 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8607 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8608 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8609 </french>

```

13.61 “French1” language: french1.mld

\ifnum The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx (by Daniel FLIPO) file
\value in the babel package [60, 61, 75], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.
\Roman

```

8610 <{*french1}
8611 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]%
8612 %% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
8613 %% ptctitle, plftitle and plttitle modified (JPFD)
8614 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8615   Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8616   \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8617 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8618   Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8619   \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8620 \def\plttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8621   Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8622   \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8623 %%
8624 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8625 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8626 \def\mlttitle{Tableaux}%
8627 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8628 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8629 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8630 </french1>

```

13.62 “French2” language: french2.mld

`\mtcFrenchIIpart` The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file (by Daniel Flipo) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 75], with some adaptations for the part-level titles²⁴. See also `\ifmtcsecondpart` section 9.5.8 on page 273, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See `\value` the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 92.

`\Roman`

```

8631 <{*french2}
8632 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]%
8633 %% French titles from frenchb.dtx (babel). Flipo, Daniel
8634 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPDFD)
8635 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8636 \or premi\‘ere partie\or
8637 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\‘eme\fi} partie\or
8638 troisi\‘eme partie\or quatri\‘eme partie\or cinq\‘eme partie\or
8639 sixi\‘eme partie\or septi\‘eme partie\or huiti\‘eme partie\or
8640 neuvi\‘eme partie\or dixi\‘eme partie\or onzi\‘eme partie\or
8641 douzi\‘eme partie\or treizi\‘eme partie\or quatorzi\‘eme partie\or
8642 quinzi\‘eme partie\or seizi\‘eme partie\or dix-septi\‘eme partie\or
8643 dix-huiti\‘eme partie\or dix-neuvi\‘eme partie\or
8644 vingti\‘eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8645 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8646 Sommaire \else Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8647 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8648 Liste des figures\else
8649 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}%
8650 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8651 Liste des tableaux\else
8652 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}%
8653 %%
8654 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8655 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8656 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8657 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8658 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8659 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
8660 </french2>

```

13.63 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the `french.mld` file. See section 13.60 on the preceding page.

```

8661 <{*frenchb}
8662 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8663 </frenchb>

```

²⁴This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the `minitoc` package.

13.64 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 497. See also [179].

```
8664 < *frenchle>
8665 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8666 < /frenchle>
```

13.65 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.60 on page 497. See also [180, 181].

```
8667 < *frenchpro>
8668 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]\mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8669 < /frenchpro>
```

13.66 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language (*galego*)²⁵ are taken from the galician.dtx file, (by Manuel CARRIBA and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA) derived from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier BEZOS) in the babel package [60, 61, 70, 71]:

```
8670 < *galician>
8671 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8672 %% Galician titles from galician.dtx (babel).
8673 %% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
8674 %% Javier A. Música de Rivera (jmugica@dig21.net)
8675 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8676 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8677 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8678 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8679 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8680 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\mtctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8681 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8682 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8683 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
8684 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}\else \def\stctitle{\'Indice xeral}\fi%
8685 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8686 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de t\'aboas}%
8687 < /galician>
```

²⁵Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

13.67 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language (*deutsch*) are taken from the `babel` package [60, 61]. See also the section 13.14 on page 477.

```
8688 <*german>
8689 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]%
8690 %% German titles
8691 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8692 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%
8693 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8694 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8695 \def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
8696 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
8697 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8698 \def\slftitle{Figuren}%
8699 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8700 </german>
```

13.68 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “germanb” language is a variant for the “german” language. The titles come from `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 90]:

```
8701 <*germanb>
8702 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]%
8703 %% German titles (variant) from germanb.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Raichle, Bernd
8704 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8705 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8706 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8707 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8708 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8709 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8710 %%
8711 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8712 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8713 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8714 </germanb>
```

13.69 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “germanb2” language is a variant for the “german” language, with short titles. See also section [13.68 on the preceding page](#). The titles are taken from the file `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [\[60, 61\]](#):

```

8715 <*germanb2>
8716 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8717 %% German titles (variant)
8718 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
8719 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
8720 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
8721 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
8722 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
8723 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
8724 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8725 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8726 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
8727 </germanb2>

```

13.70 “Greek” language: `greek.mld`

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek, *νέα ελληνικά*) are taken from the `greek.dtx` file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the `babel` package [\[60, 61, 98, 427\]](#). Greek fonts are required.

```

8728 <*greek>
8729 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8730 %% Greek titles from greek.dtx (babel) by Syropoulos, Apostolos. Needs greek fonts.
8731 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8732 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
8733 \def\pltttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
8734 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8735 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
8736 \def\mltttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
8737 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8738 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
8739 \def\sltttitle{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
8740 </greek>

```

13.71 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-mono” language²⁶ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]:

```

8741 <*greek-mono>
8742 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8743 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
8744 %% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8745 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8746 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8747 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8748 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8749 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8750 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8751 ^03bd}}%
8752 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8753 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8754 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8755 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8756 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8757 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8758 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8759 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8760 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8761 ^03bd}}%
8762 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8763 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8764 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8765 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8766 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8767 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8768 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8769 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8770 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8771 ^03bd}}%
8772 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8773 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8774 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8775 </greek-mono>

```

13.72 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language²⁷ are taken from the file omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]:

²⁶ Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

²⁷ Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```

8776 (*greek-polydemo)
8777 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8778 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.
8779 %% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8780 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8781 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8782 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8783 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8784 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8785 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8786 ^03bd}}%
8787 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
8788 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8789 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8790 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8791 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8792 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8793 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8794 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8795 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8796 ^03bd}}%
8797 \def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
8798 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8799 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8800 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8801 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8802 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8803 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8804 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8805 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8806 ^03bd}}%
8807 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
8808 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8809 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8810 </greek-polydemo)

```

13.73 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

\localgreek The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language²⁸ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]:

```

8811 (*greek-polykatha)
8812 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]%
8813 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project). Needs Omega.

```

²⁸Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAI, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

8814%% Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
8815\def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8816 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8817 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8818\def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8819 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8820 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9^03bd}}%
8821\def\plttitle{\localgreek%
8822 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8823 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8824\def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8825 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8826 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8827\def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8828 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8829 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9^03bd}}%
8830\def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8831 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8832 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8833\def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8834 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8835 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8836\def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8837 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8838 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9^03bd}}%
8839\def\slttitle{\localgreek%
8840 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8841 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8842</greek-polykatha>

```

13.74 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” (guaraní) language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guaraní and Spanish, known as Jopará or Yopará, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [45]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

8843<*guarani>
8844\ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]%
8845%% Guaraní titles from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos. Input encoding win-gn.def needed.
8846\def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
8847\def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8848\def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8849\def\mtctitle{\'Indice general}%
8850\def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8851\def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8852\def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
8853\def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8854\def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8855</guarani>

```


13.75 “Hangul1” language: `hangul1.ml[d|o]`

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [453]. See [214, page 150], [216] and [365].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file `hangul.cap` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.76 to 13.82 on pages 505–508.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul1.mlo`.

```
8856 (*hangul1)
8857 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
8858 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8859 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8860 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions
8861 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8862 \hangul1
```

13.76 “Hangul2” language: `hangul2.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file `hangul.cpx` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.75 and 13.77 to 13.82 on pages 506–508.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul2.mlo`.

```
8863 (*hangul2)
8864 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
8865 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8866 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8867 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003), Hangul captions
8868 %% char. set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8869 \hangul2
```

13.77 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 to 13.76 on the preceding page and 13.78 to 13.82 on pages 506–508.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```
8870 \(*hangul3)
8871 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
8872 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8873 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8874 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2
8875 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8876 \(/hangul3)
```

13.78 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 to 13.77 on pages 505–506, and 13.79 to 13.82 on pages 507–508.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```
8877 \(*hangul4)
8878 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
8879 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8880 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8881 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003) Hangul captions set 2,
8882 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8883 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8884 \(/hangul4)
```

13.79 “Hangul-u8” language: `hangul-u8.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the H_LA_TE_X system [266, in korean] by Un KOAUNGHIL. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.75 to 13.78 on pages 505–506, and 13.80 to 13.82 on pages 507–508. See [214, page 150], [216] and [365].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```
8885 < *hangul-u8 >
8886 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]\mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
8887 %% Hangul captions for Lambda. From the file u8hangul.tex
8888 %% of the HLaTeX package by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8889 < /hangul-u8 >
```

13.80 “Hanja1” language: `hanja1.mld.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course.

See also sections 13.75 to 13.79 on pages 505–507, and 13.81 to 13.82 on the next page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```
8890 < *hanja1 >
8891 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
8892 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8893 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Hanja captions.
8894 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>, Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8895 %% Character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8896 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8897 < /hanja1 >
```

13.81 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.75 to 13.80 on pages 505–507, and 13.82.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.

```
8898 < *hanja2>
8899 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
8900 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package for using Asian logographs
8901 %% (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e. Hanja captions.
8902 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>.
8903 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8904 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung). Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
8905 < /hanja2>
```

13.82 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.ml[d|o]

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the HLaTeX system [266, in korean] by Un KOAUNghi. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also sections 13.75 to 13.81 on pages 505–508. See [214, page 150], [216] and [365].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja-u8.mlo`.

```
8906 < *hanja-u8>
8907 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]\mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
8908 %% Hanja captions for Lambda. From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
8909 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8910 < /hanja-u8>
```

13.83 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the “hebrew” language (*ivrit*) are taken from the ArabTeX package [276, 277] (by Klaus LAGALLY), with the associated fonts. See also section 13.84 on the next page. See the hebrew alphabet (*alefbet*): <http://www.jewfaq.org/graphics/hebrew.gif>.

```

8911 (*hebrew)
8912 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]%
8913 %% Hebrew titles. Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
8914 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8915 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8916 \def\pltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
8917 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8918 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8919 \def\mltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
8920 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\ \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
8921 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
8922 \def\sltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\ \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
8923 </hebrew>

```

13.84 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

\@ensure@R The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris LAVVA and Rama PORRAT) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 86], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.83 on the preceding page.

```

8924 (*hebrew2)
8925 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]%
8926 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package. Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
8927 %% Need hebrew fonts.
8928 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
8929 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8930 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
8931 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8932 \def\pltttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
8933 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}}%
8934 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
8935 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8936 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
8937 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8938 \def\mltttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
8939 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}}%
8940 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hebvav\hebkafe\hebfinalnun\ %
8941 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8942 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
8943 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}}%
8944 \def\sltttitle{\@ensure@R{\hebreash\hebshein\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
8945 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}}%
8946 </hebrew2>

```

13.85 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load devanagari.mld (see section 13.43 on page 489):

```
8947 (*hindi)
8948 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]\mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
8949 \end{hindi}
```

13.86 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [364] (Devanāgarī) after conversion. See also section 13.43 on page 489. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.sarovar.org>.

```
\dn
\qva
\re 8950 (*hindi-modern)
\rs 8951 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]%
\2 8952 %% Hindi modern titles from captions.dn in ‘Devanagari for TeX’
\8 8953 %% by Pandey, Anshuman & Radhakrishnan, C.~V. & Wagner, Zden\v{e}k &
8954 %% Smith, John & Carmody, Kevin & Mahoney, Richard & Wujastyk, Dominik
8955 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8956 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8957 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8958 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8959 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8960 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8961 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8962 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8963 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8964 \end{hindi-modern}
```

13.87 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.115 on page 523.

```

8965 <(*hungarian)
8966 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
8967 </hungarian>

```

13.88 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld

The titles for the “icelandic” language (*íslenska*) are taken from the `icelandic.dtx` file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 63]. See also [236].

```

8968 <(*icelandic)
8969 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8970 %% From icelandic.dtx (babel). Needs inputenc with 8-bits encoding. Árnason, Einar
8971 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8972 \def\plftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8973 \def\pltttitle{T\'{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8974 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8975 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8976 \def\mltttitle{T\'{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8977 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
8978 \def\slftitle{Myndaskr\'{a}}%
8979 \def\sltttitle{T\'{o}fluskr\'{a}}%
8980 </icelandic>

```

13.89 “Indon” language: indon.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 477):

```

8981 <(*indon)
8982 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8983 </indon>

```

13.90 “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 477):

```

8984 <(*indonesian)
8985 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
8986 </indonesian>

```

13.91 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 81]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages²⁹. See also:

- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua>, <http://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Interlingua>,
- Union Interlinguiste de France: <http://www.interlingua.com.fr/>
- interlingua-english dictionary: <http://www.interlingua.com/ied/>
- interlingua grammar (in french): <http://filip.ouvaton.org/ia/gram/entra1.html>
- some sites in interlingua: <http://www.dmoz.org/World/Interlingua>
- other sites about interlingua: <http://www.cle.unicamp.br/wcp3/interlingua.htm>

```

8987 <*interlingua>
8988 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2007/12/18]%
8989 %% Interlingua titles from interlingua.dtx (babel). Kleiweg, Peter
8990 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
8991 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuras}%
8992 \def\pltttitle{Lista de tabellas}%
8993 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
8994 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
8995 \def\mltttitle{Tabellas}%
8996 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
8997 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
8998 \def\sltttitle{Tabellas}%
8999 </interlingua>

```

13.92 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language (*gaeilge*) come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [57, 60, 61]:

```

9000 <*irish>
9001 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]%
9002 %% From irish.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Gunn, Marion & Grant, Fraser
9003 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9004 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9005 \def\pltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%

```

²⁹The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it.


```

9006 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9007 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9008 \def\mltttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9009 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9010 \def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9011 \def\slttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9012 </irish>

```

13.93 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language (*italiano*) come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 73]. See also section 13.94.

```

9013 <*italian>
9014 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9015 %% Italian titles from italian.dtx (babel). Same authors.
9016 %% Maurizio Codogno (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it) & Claudio Beccari (beccari@polito.it)
9017 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
9018 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9019 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9020 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
9021 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9022 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9023 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
9024 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9025 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9026 </italian>

```

13.94 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.93.

```

9027 <*italian2>
9028 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9029 %% Italian titles. Variant, from italian.dtx (babel). Same authors.
9030 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
9031 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9032 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9033 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
9034 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9035 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9036 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
9037 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%

```

```
9038 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9039 </italian2>
```

13.95 “Japanese” language: `japanese.ml[d|o]`

There are several variants for the japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the “japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³⁰.

But see also other variants in sections 13.96 to 13.100 on pages 514–516.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```
9040 <*japanese>
9041 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
9042 %% Japanese titles. Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9043 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki <kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp>
9044 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9045 </japanese>
```

13.96 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese2” language (japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95, and 13.97 to 13.100 on pages 515–516.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

```
9046 <*japanese2>
9047 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
9048 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
9049 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9050 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9051 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: EUC
9052 </japanese2>
```

³⁰ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.97 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld[o]`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG).

Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 to 13.96 on the page before, and 13.98s+mld+japanese6. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```
9053 <{*japanese3}
9054 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9055 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9056 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9057 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9058 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9059 </japanese3>
```

13.98 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld[o]`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 to 13.97 on pages 514–515, and 13.99 to 13.100 on the next page.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```
9060 <{*japanese4}
9061 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9062 %% From SJIS.cap in CJK package for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean)
9063 %% with LaTeX2e. Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28/03/2003).
9064 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
9065 </japanese4>
```

13.99 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [127, 297, 298] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.95 to 13.98 on pages 514–515, and 13.100. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```
9066 <*japanese5>
9067 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9068 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9069 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e.
9070 %% Created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>. Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9071 %% Character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9072 </japanese5>
```

13.100 “Japanese6” language: `japanese6.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³¹. See also sections 13.95 to 13.99 on pages 514–516.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese6.mlo`.

```
9073 <*japanese6>
9074 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]\mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9075 %% Japanese6 titles. Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9076 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki <kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp>
9077 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9078 </japanese6>
```

13.101 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state (main town: Bangalore) of India. Titles are taken in the `kanl1.sty` package file from the KannadaT_EX project [485]³² by C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. Specific fonts are required. See the alphabet here: <http://www.omniglot.com/writing/kannada.htm>.

³¹ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

³² <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

```

9079 (*kannada)
9080 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2007/02/22]%
9081 %% From kanlel.sty of KannadateX
9082 %% (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in yogacs@users.sarovar.org)
9083 %% (K. K. Subramaniam subbuk@users.sarovar.org)
9084 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}%
9085 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9086 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9087 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}%
9088 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9089 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9090 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}%
9091 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}%
9092 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}%
9093 \end{kannada}

```

13.102 “Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` “khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load `xalx.mld` (see sections 13.190 to 13.192 on pages 557–558):

```

9094 (*khalkha)
9095 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]\mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9096 \end{khalkha}

```

13.103 “Latin” language: latin.mld

The titles for the “latin” language (medieval) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 65]. See also section 13.104 on the next page. The latin language is still used by the Catholic Church and the Vatican for archives and some texts.

```

9097 (*latin)
9098 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9099 %% Latin (medieval) titles from latin.dtx (babel)
9100 %% Beccari, Claudio & Tabacco, Raffalla & {\Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9101 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9102 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9103 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9104 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9105 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9106 \def\mltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9107 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9108 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9109 \def\sltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%

```

```
9110 </latin>
```

13.104 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

\ae The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, medieval, abbreviated variant) are taken from the latin.dtx (by Claudio BECCARI, Raffaella TABACCO, and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the babel package [60, 61, 65], but abbreviated. See also section 13.103 on the preceding page.

```
9111 <(*latin2)
9112 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2007/04/06]%
9113 %% Latin (medieval) titles (abbreviated) from latin.dtx (babel)
9114 %% Beccari, Claudio & Tabacco, Raffalla & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9115 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9116 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9117 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9118 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9119 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9120 \def\mltttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9121 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9122 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9123 \def\sltttitle{{Tabul\ae}}%
9124 </latin2>
```

13.105 “Latinc” language: latinc.mld

The titles for the “latinc” language (classical latin) are taken from the latin.dtx file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the babel package [60, 61, 65]. See also section 13.106 on the next page.

```
9125 <(*latinc)
9126 \ProvidesFile{latinc.mld}[2007/04/13]%
9127 %% Latin (classical) titles from latin.dtx (babel)
9128 %% Beccari, Claudio & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9129 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9130 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9131 \def\pltttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9132 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9133 \def\mlftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9134 \def\mltttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9135 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9136 \def\slftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9137 \def\sltttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9138 </latinc>
```

13.106 “Latinc2” language: `latinc2.mld`

The titles for the “latinc2” language (classical latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [60, 61, 65], but abbreviated. See also section 13.105 on the preceding page.

```

9139 <*latinc2>
9140 \ProvidesFile{latinc2.mld}[2007/04/06]%
9141 %% Latin (classical) titles (abbreviated) from latin.dtx (babel)
9142 %% Beccari, Claudio & {\.Zelechowski}, Krzysztof Konrad
9143 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9144 \def\plftitle{Conspectvs descriptionvm}%
9145 \def\plttitle{Conspectvs tabvlarvm}%
9146 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9147 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9148 \def\mlttitle{Tabvlae}%
9149 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9150 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9151 \def\slttitle{Tabvlae}%
9152 </latinc2>

```

13.107 “Latvian” language: `latvian.mld`

The titles for the “latvian” language³³ (*latviešu valoda*) come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]. See also section 13.109 on the next page.

```

9153 <*latvian>
9154 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9155 %% From latvian.ldf (Antomega project).
9156 %% Needs Omega. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
9157 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
9158 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^}\0113lu saraksts}}%
9159 \def\plttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9160 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
9161 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^}\0113lu saraksts}}%
9162 \def\mlttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9163 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
9164 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^}\0113lu saraksts}}%
9165 \def\slttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9166 </latvian>

```

³³Note that “latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

13.108 “Latvian2” language: latvian2.mld

The titles for the “latvian2” language come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Andris Lasis and Ivars Driķis) at <http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf>. See also section 13.107 on the preceding page.

```

9167 <*latvian2>
9168 \ProvidesFile{latvian2.mld}[2007/06/05]%
9169 % Andris Lasis (andris_lisis@simms.lv) Ivars Driķis (drikis@lanet.lv)
9170 % http://home.lanet.lv/~drikis/TeX/2e/latvian.ldf
9171 \def\ptctitle{Saturdays}%
9172 \def\plftitle{Attēlu rādītājs}%
9173 \def\pltttitle{Tabulu rādītājs}%
9174 \def\mtctitle{Saturdays}%
9175 \def\mlftitle{Attēlu rādītājs}%
9176 \def\mltttitle{Tabulu rādītājs}%
9177 \def\stctitle{Saturdays}%
9178 \def\slftitle{Attēlu rādītājs}%
9179 \def\sltttitle{Tabulu rādītājs}%
9180 </latvian2>

```

13.109 “Letton” language: letton.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.107 on the page before.

```

9181 <*letton>
9182 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]\mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
9183 </letton>

```

13.110 “Letton2” language: letton2.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “letton2” language is a synonym for the “latvian2” language, so we just load `latvian2.mld`. See section 13.108 on the preceding page.

```

9184 <*letton2>
9185 \ProvidesFile{letton2.mld}[2007/06/05]\mtcselectlanguage{latvian2}%
9186 </letton2>

```


13.111 “Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian” language (*lietuvių kalba*) are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file³⁴ (by Sigita Tolušis) for the `babel` package [60, 61]. See also section 13.112.

```

9187 <{*lithuanian}
9188 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9189 %% Lithuanian titles from lithuanian.ldf
9190 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip
9191 %% by Tolušis, Sigita (sigita@vtex.lt)
9192 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9193 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9194 \def\pltttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9195 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9196 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9197 \def\mltttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9198 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9199 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\k u s\protect\k ara\protect\v sas}%
9200 \def\sltttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9201 </lithuanian>

```

13.112 “Lithuanian2” language: lithuanian2.mld

The titles for the “lithuanian2” language (variant) are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file, found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/litex/littex-20070713.tar.gz>, (by Sigita Tolušis) for the `babel` package [60, 61]. See also section 13.111. The L7x encoding and the Latin Modern fonts are needed.

```

9202 <{*lithuanian2}
9203 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian2.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9204 %% Lithuanian titles (variant) from lithuanian.ldf
9205 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/litex/littex-20060928.tar.gz
9206 %% by Tolušis, Sigita (sigita@vtex.lt)
9207 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9208 \def\plftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9209 \def\pltttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9210 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9211 \def\mlftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9212 \def\mltttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9213 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9214 \def\slftitle{Iliustracij\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}as}%
9215 \def\sltttitle{Lenteli\k{u} s\k{a}ra\v{s}}%
9216 </lithuanian2>

```

³⁴Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/zip/babel.zip>.

13.113 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language³⁵ (*dolnoserbski, dolnoservščina*) are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 99]. See also section 13.184 on page 554. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.114).

```

9217 (*lowsorbian)
9218 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]%
9219 %% Lower sorbian titles from lsorbian.dtx (babel) by Werner, Eduard
9220 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9221 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9222 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9223 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9224 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9225 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9226 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9227 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9228 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9229 \end{lowersorbian}

```

13.114 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowsorbian”, so we just need to load `lowersorbian.mld`. See section 13.113.

```

9230 (*lsorbian)
9231 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
9232 \end{lsorbian}

```

13.115 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the `magyar.dtx` (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the `babel` package [60, 61, 66]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.87 on page 510). See also sections 13.116 to 13.117 on pages 523–524 for variants.

```

9233 (*magyar)
9234 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]%
9235 %% Magyar titles from magyar.dtx (babel). Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József

```

³⁵Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```

9236 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9237 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
9238 \def\plttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
9239 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9240 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
9241 \def\mlttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
9242 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9243 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
9244 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
9245 </magyar>

```

13.116 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the `magyar.dtx` file of the `babel` package [60, 61] (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI). See also sections 13.115 and 13.117 on the following page.

```

9246 <magyar2>
9247 \ProvidesFile{magyar2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9248 %% Magyar2 titles (variant) from magyar.dtx (babel).
9249 %% Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
9250 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9251 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9252 \def\plttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9253 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9254 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9255 \def\mlttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9256 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9257 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9258 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9259 </magyar2>

```

13.117 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the `magyar.dtx` file (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 66]³⁶. See also sections 13.115 to 13.116 on the page before.

```

9260 <magyar3>
9261 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]%
9262 %% Magyar3 titles (variant) from magyar.dtx (babel).
9263 %% Bíró, Árpád & Bérces, József
9264 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9265 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%

```

³⁶The situation of the magyar language in the `babel` package is not clear; some experimental versions exist.

```

9266 \def\pltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
9267 \def\mtcttitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
9268 \def\mlfttitle{\\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
9269 \def\mltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
9270 \def\stcttitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
9271 \def\slfttitle{\\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
9272 \def\sltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
9273 </magyar3>

```

13.118 “Malay” language: malay.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.17 on page 478):

```

9274 <{*malay}>
9275 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9276 </malay>

```

13.119 “Malayalam-b” language: malayalam-b.mld

`\mm` The titles for the “malayalam-b” language are taken from the malayalam package [4]
`\X` by A.J. ALEX. The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to
`\<>` the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian lan-
guages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from
the 8th or 9th centuries. This language option requires specific fonts (depending on the
option of the malayalam package). It should be used with the following options of the
malayalam package³⁷: aathira, ambili, anahka, ashtamudi, aswathi, ayilyambold,
bhanu, bhavana, chippi, gauri, gopika, indulekha, ISMashtamudi, ISMkarthika,
ISMkaumudi, ISMrevathi, jaya, karthika, kaumudi, kottakkal, makam, malavika
mridula, payippad, periyar, ravivarma, revathi, sabari, sarada, sruthy, and
triruvathira. See also sections 13.120 to 13.126 on pages 525–528.

```

9277 <{*malayalam-b}>
9278 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-b.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9279 \def\ptcttitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\X{<119>}}%
9280 \def\plfttitle{\mm \X{<78>}\X{<110>}\X{<123>}\X{<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9281 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\X{<83>}\X{<95>}\X{<110>}\X{<102>}\X{<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9282 \def\mtcttitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\X{<119>}}%
9283 \def\mlfttitle{\mm \X{<78>}\X{<110>}\X{<123>}\X{<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9284 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\X{<83>}\X{<95>}\X{<110>}\X{<102>}\X{<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9285 \def\stcttitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\X{<119>}}%
9286 \def\slfttitle{\mm \X{<78>}\X{<110>}\X{<123>}\X{<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9287 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\X{<83>}\X{<95>}\X{<110>}\X{<102>}\X{<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%

```

³⁷There is a great variety of fonts for malayalam; hence I have attempted to limit the number of .mld files.

9288 </malayalam-b>

13.120 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the
 \X malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also
 \< sections 13.119 on the page before and 13.121 to 13.126 on pages 525–528.

```

9289 (*malayalam-keli)
9290 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9291 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
9292 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9293 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9294 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9295 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9296 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9297 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9298 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9299 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<110>}\X{<123>}\<88>}\X{<167>}\X{<196>}}%
9300 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9301 </malayalam-keli>

```

13.121 “Malayalam-keli2” language: malayalam-keli2.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-keli2” language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by
 \X A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (keli second variant). See also sections 13.119
 \< to 13.120 on pages 524–525 and 13.122 to 13.126 on pages 526–528.

```

9302 (*malayalam-keli2)
9303 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli2.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9304 % Keli fonts (mkl)
9305 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9306 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9307 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9308 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9309 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9310 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9311 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<197>}\X{<83>}\X{<161>}\<119>}%
9312 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9313 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<116>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<110>}\X{<102>}\<112>}\X{<73>}\X{<196>}}%
9314 </malayalam-keli2>

```

13.122 “Malayalam-mr” language: `malayalam-mr.mld`

`\mm` The titles for the “malayalam-mr” language are taken from the malayalam package [4] by
`\X` A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (traditional rachana). See also sections 13.119
`\<>` to 13.121 on pages 524–525 and 13.123 to 13.126 on pages 526–528.

```

9315 \*malayalam-mr
9316 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-mr.mld}[2007/12/04]%
9317 % mr fonts (rachana: mr1,...,mr6)
9318 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}
9319 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9320 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9321 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}
9322 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9323 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9324 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}
9325 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}
9326 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}
9327 \malayalam-mr

```

13.123 “Malayalam-omega” language: `malayalam-omega.ml[d|o]`

`\mtcloadmlo` This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* (Λ) (the version of \LaTeX for Omega) via the `omal` package [5] (by A.J. ALEX) of the Malayalam-Omega project³⁸. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the `omal` package. See also sections 13.119 to 13.122 on pages 524–526 and 13.124 to 13.126 on pages 527–528.

```

9328 \*malayalam-omega
9329 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}%
9330 %% from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
9331 \malayalam-omega

```

13.124 “Malayalam-rachana” language: `malayalam-rachana.mld`

`\mm` The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts
`\X` (old lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires
`\C` specific fonts. See also sections 13.119 to 13.123 on pages 524–526 and 13.125 to 13.126 on
`\F` pages 527–528.

`\<>` ³⁸ <http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

```

9332 (*malayalam-rachana)
9333 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]%
9334 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
9335 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9336 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9337 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9338 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9339 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9340 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9341 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9342 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9343 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9344 (/malayalam-rachana)

```

13.125 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new
\X lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific
\< fonts. See also sections 13.119 to 13.124 on pages 524–527 and 13.126 on the following page.

```

9345 (*malayalam-rachana2)
9346 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]% %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
9347 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9348 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9349 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9350 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9351 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9352 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9353 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9354 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9355 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9356 (/malayalam-rachana2)

```

13.126 “Malayalam-rachana3” language: malayalam-rachana3.mld

\mm The titles for the “malayalam-rachana3” language are taken from the malayalam pack-
\X age [4] by A.J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts (rachana). See also sections 13.119
\< to 13.125 on pages 524–527.

\C

\F 9357 (*malayalam-rachana3)

```

9358 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana3.mld}[2007/12/04]% % Rachana fonts (mr2,...,mr6)
9359 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%

```

```

9360 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\C\<94>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9361 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9362 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9363 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\C\<94>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9364 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9365 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9366 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\C\<94>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9367 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9368 \</malayalam-rachana3>

```

13.127 “Manju” language: manju.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load bithe.mld (see section 13.24 on page 481):

```

9369 \<manju>
9370 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]\mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
9371 \</manju>

```

13.128 “Mexican” language: mexican.mld

The titles for the “mexican” language (*español mexicano*) are taken from the mexican.ldf file (by Luis RIVERA) in <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/spanish/nonstandard/mx/>. Mexican is a spanish (castillan) dialect. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.172 on page 550.

```

9372 \< mexican>
9373 \ProvidesFile{mexican.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9374 %% Spanish titles (from mexican.ldf) Rivera, Luis (jlrn77@gmail.com)
9375 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9376 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi % <----
9377 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9378 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9379 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
9380 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9381 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9382 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
9383 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9384 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9385 \</mexican>

```


13.129 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.17 on page 478):

```
9386 < *meyalu >
9387 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9388 < /meyalu >
```

13.130 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [137, 140] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.21 to 13.24 on pages 479–481, 13.31 to 13.32 on pages 484–485, and 13.190 to 13.192 on pages 557–558.

```
9389 < *mongol >
9390 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9391 %% Mongol (xalx) titles. Needs mongol fonts
9392 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9393 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9394 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9395 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9396 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9397 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9398 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9399 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9400 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9401 < /mongol >
```

13.131 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the `mongolian.dtx` file [26] (by Dorjgotov BATMUNKH) for the `babel` package [60, 61] (hence the final “b” in “mongolb”).

`\cyr` The titles for the “mongolb” language use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG).

```

9402 <*mongolb>
9403 \ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]%
9404 %% Mongolian titles from mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9405 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9406 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9407 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru) & Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9408 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9409   \def\ptctitle{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9410 \else\relax
9411   \def\ptctitle{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9412 \fi
9413 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9414   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9415 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9416   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9417 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9418   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9419 \else\relax
9420   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9421 \fi
9422 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9423   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9424 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9425   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9426 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9427   \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9428 \else\relax
9429   \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9430 \fi
9431 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9432   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9433 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9434   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9435 </mongolb>

```

13.132 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the babel package [60, 61] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load mongolb.mld. See section 13.131 on the preceding page.

```

9436 <*mongolian>
9437 \ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]\mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}%
9438 </mongolian>

```

13.133 “Naustrian” language: `naustrian.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language), so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section [13.136 on the next page](#).

```
9439 <*naustrian>
9440 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9441 </naustrian>
```

13.134 “Newzealand” language: `newzealand.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (section [13.45 on page 490](#)):

```
9442 <*newzealand>
9443 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
9444 </newzealand>
```

13.135 “Ngerman” language: `ngerman.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language³⁹, so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section [13.136 on the next page](#).

```
9445 <*ngerman>
9446 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9447 </ngerman>
```

13.136 “Ngermanb” language: `ngermanb.mld`

The titles for the “ngermanb” language⁴⁰ are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [[60](#), [61](#), [91](#)]. See also sections [13.133 on the preceding page](#), and [13.135 on the page before](#).

³⁹A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language.

⁴⁰A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

```

9448 <*ngermanb>
9449 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9450 %% New german (B) titles from ngermanb.dtx (babel). Raichle, Bernd & Schmidt, Walter
9451 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%      % oder nur: Inhalt % <-----
9452 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9453 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9454 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9455 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9456 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9457 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9458 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9459 \def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9460 </ngermanb>

```

13.137 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language (revised spelling and short titles) are taken from the `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 91], and abbreviated. See also section 13.136.

```

9461 <*ngermanb2>
9462 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]%
9463 %% New german (B) short (2) titles
9464 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
9465 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
9466 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
9467 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9468 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
9469 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
9470 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9471 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
9472 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9473 </ngermanb2>

```

13.138 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [58, 60, 61], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.140 on the next page.

```

9474 <*norsk>
9475 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9476 %% Norsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Helstrup, Haavard
9477 %% & Holme, Alv Kjetil & Iversen, Per Steinar & Petterst, Terje Engeset

```

```

9478 %% & Kleveland, Rune. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9479 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9480 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
9481 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
9482 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9483 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
9484 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
9485 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9486 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
9487 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
9488 </norsk>

```

13.139 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the babel package [58, 60, 61], with help from Dag LANGMYHR, and abbreviated.

```

9489 <(*norsk2)
9490 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]%
9491 %% Short norsk titles. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9492 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
9493 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9494 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
9495 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
9496 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9497 \def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
9498 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
9499 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9500 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9501 </norsk2>

```

13.140 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language⁴¹ are taken from the norsk.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the babel package [58, 60, 61], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.138 on the preceding page.

```

9502 <(*nynorsk)
9503 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9504 %% Nynorsk titles from norsk.dtx (babel). Braams, Johannes~L. & Helstrup, Haavard
9505 %% & Holme, Alv Kjetil & Iversen, Per Steinar & Petterst, Terje Engeset

```

⁴¹ Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialects spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.

```

9506%% & Kleveland, Rune. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9507 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9508 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
9509 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
9510 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9511 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
9512 \def\pltttitle{Tabellar}%
9513 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9514 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
9515 \def\sltttitle{Tabellar}%
9516 </nynorsk>

```

13.141 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.140.

```

9517 < *nynorsk2>
9518 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9519%% Nynorsk titles. Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9520 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9521 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9522 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9523 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9524 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9525 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9526 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9527 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9528 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9529 </nynorsk2>

```

13.142 “Occitan” language: occitan.mld

The occitan language⁴² is still spoken in the south of France, from Limoges (Letmòges), Bordeaux (Bordèu) and Toulouse (Tolosa⁴³) to Marseille (Marselha) and Nice (Niça), with many local variants. This bilingual street sign in Toulouse (Tolosa), like many such signs found in historical parts of the city, is maintained primarily for its antique charm; it is typical of what little remains of the “lenga d’oc” in southern French cities. See also <http://www.orbilat.com/Maps/Occitan/Occitan.gif>. See also [122].

⁴²I used the site <http://www.panoccitan.org/diccionari.aspx> for the translations.

⁴³*Per Tolosa totjorn mai!*

```

9530 <*occitan>
9531 \ProvidesFile{occitan.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9532 %% Occitan titles (translations using http://www.panoccitan.org/diccionari.aspx)
9533 \def\ptctitle{Ensenhador}%
9534 \def\plftitle{Ti\'era de las figurats}%
9535 \def\plttitle{Ti\'era de las taulas}%
9536 \def\mtctitle{Ensenhador}%
9537 \def\mlftitle{Ti\'era de las figurats}%
9538 \def\mlttitle{Ti\'era de las taulas}%
9539 \def\stctitle{Ensenhador}%
9540 \def\slftitle{Ti\'era de las figurats}%
9541 \def\slttitle{Ti\'era de las taulas}%
9542 </occitan>

```

13.143 “Occitan2” language: occitan2.mld

The occitan2 language provides an example of variants for the occitan titles.

```

9543 <*occitan2>
9544 \ProvidesFile{occitan2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9545 % Occitan titles (variants)
9546 \def\ptctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
9547 \def\plftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
9548 \def\plttitle{Lista dels tabl\'eus}%
9549 \def\mtctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
9550 \def\mlftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
9551 \def\mlttitle{Lista dels tabl\'eus}%
9552 \def\stctitle{Taula dels ensenhadors}%
9553 \def\slftitle{Lista de las figuras}%
9554 \def\slttitle{Lista dels tabl\'eus}%
9555 </occitan2>

```

13.144 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language (*język polski*) are taken from the polish.dtx file (by Elmar SCHALÜCK and Michael JANICH) in the babel package [60, 61, 96]. See also sections 13.145 to 13.146 on pages 536–537.

```

9556 <*polish>
9557 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9558 %% Polish titles from polish.dtx (babel). Schalück, Elmar & Janich, Michael
9559 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9560 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9561 \def\plttitle{Spis tablic}%
9562 \def\mtctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9563 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%

```

```

9564 \def\mltttitle{Spis tablic}%
9565 \def\stcttitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9566 \def\slfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9567 \def\sltttitle{Spis tablic}%
9568 </polish>

```

13.145 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

\localpolish The titles for the “polish2” language⁴⁴ are taken from the omega-polish.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]. See also sections 13.144 and 13.146 on the next page.

```

9569 <polish2>
9570 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9571 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega). Needs Omega. Alexej M. Kryukov, Dmitry Ivanov
9572 \def\ptcttitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9573 \def\plfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9574 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9575 \def\mtcttitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9576 \def\mlfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9577 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9578 \def\stcttitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9579 \def\slfttitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9580 \def\sltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9581 </polish2>

```

13.146 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI) in the polski package [357, 463]. See also sections 13.144 to 13.145 on the preceding page.

```

9582 <polski>
9583 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2008/01/15]%
9584 %% Polski titles from polski.dtx. Olko, Mariusz & Woli\'nski, Marcin.
9585 \def\ptcttitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9586 \def\plfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9587 \def\pltttitle{Spis tabel}%
9588 \def\mtcttitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9589 \def\mlfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9590 \def\mltttitle{Spis tabel}%
9591 \def\stcttitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9592 \def\slfttitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%

```

⁴⁴ “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.


```

9593 \def\sltttitle{Spis tabel}%
9594 </polski>

```

13.147 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

\mtcselectlanguage The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.148), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```

9595 <{*portuges}
9596 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]\mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
9597 </portuges>

```

13.148 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld

The titles for the “portuguese” language (*português*) are taken from the portuges.dtx file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the babel package [60, 61, 92]. The portuguese language is spoken in Portugal (with the islands of Azores and Madeira), in Brazil, and in former portuguese colonies like Angola, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, Cape Verde Islands, São Tomé and Príncipe Islands, East Timor, and some old trading posts like Macao and Goa. See also section 13.25 on page 481, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```

9598 <{*portuguese}
9599 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9600 %% Portuguese titles from portuges.dtx (babel).
9601 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
9602 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9603 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9604 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9605 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9606 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9607 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9608 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9609 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9610 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9611 </portuguese>

```

13.149 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

The titles for the “romanian” language (*română*) come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Umstatter HORST and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 78]. See also sections 13.150 to 13.151 on pages 538–539.

```

9612 <*romanian>
9613 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9614 %% Romanian titles from romanian.dtx (babel).
9615 %% Horst, Umstatter & Juhasz, Robert
9616 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9617 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9618 \def\pltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9619 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9620 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9621 \def\mltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9622 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9623 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9624 \def\sltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9625 </romanian>

```

13.150 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `RomanianTeX` package [397]. See also sections 13.149 and 13.151 on the following page. Alas, `RomanianTeX` is not compatible with the `babel` package [60, 61].



```

9626 <*romanian2>
9627 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]%
9628 %% Titles in RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx). Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl),
9629 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9630 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9631 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9632 \def\pltttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9633 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9634 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9635 \def\mltttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9636 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9637 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9638 \def\sltttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9639 </romanian2>

```

13.151 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianTeX package [397]. See also sections 13.149 to 13.150 on the page before. Alas, RomanianTeX *is not compatible* with the babel package [60, 61].



```

9640 ⟨*romanian3⟩
9641 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]%
9642 %% Romanian titles from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
9643 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
9644 %% Bernd Raichle (raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de)
9645 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9646 \def\plttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9647 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
9648 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9649 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9650 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
9651 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9652 \def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9653 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
9654 ⟨/romanian3⟩

```

13.152 “Russian” language: `russian.mld`

\cz The titles

\mz

for the “russian” language (*russkiy yazyk*) are taken from the babel package [60, 61]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```

9655 ⟨*russian⟩
9656 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9657 %% Russian titles
9658 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9659 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9660 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9661 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9662 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9663 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9664 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9665 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9666 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9667 ⟨/russian⟩

```

13.153 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld

`\localrussian` The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russian2m.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on the preceding page.

```

9668 <*russian2m>
9669 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9670 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
9671 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
9672 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9673 {^{}^{}^{}041e^{}^{}^{}0433^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0432^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0435^{}^{}^{}043d^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0435}}%
9674 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9675 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a ^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}043b%
9676 ^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}044e^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0440^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0446^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0439}}%
9677 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
9678 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a ^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0430%
9679 ^{}^{}^{}0431^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0446}}%
9680 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9681 {^{}^{}^{}041e^{}^{}^{}0433^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0432^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0435^{}^{}^{}043d^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0435}}%
9682 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9683 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a ^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}043b%
9684 ^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}044e^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0440^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0446^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0439}}%
9685 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9686 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a ^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0430%
9687 ^{}^{}^{}0431^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0446}}%
9688 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9689 {^{}^{}^{}041e^{}^{}^{}0433^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0432^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0435^{}^{}^{}043d^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0435}}%
9690 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9691 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a ^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}043b%
9692 ^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}044e^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0440^{}^{}^{}0430^{}^{}^{}0446^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0439}}%
9693 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
9694 {^{}^{}^{}0421^{}^{}^{}043f^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0441^{}^{}^{}043e^{}^{}^{}043a ^{}^{}^{}0442^{}^{}^{}0430%
9695 ^{}^{}^{}0431^{}^{}^{}043b^{}^{}^{}0438^{}^{}^{}0446}}%
9696 </russian2m>

```

13.154 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

`\localrussian` The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the `omega-russian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [272]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 539.

```

9697 <*russian2o>
9698 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]%
9699 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)

```

```

9700%% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts. Alexej M. Kryukov & Dmitry Ivanov
9701\def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9702 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
9703\def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9704 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0438%
9705  ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
9706\def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
9707 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0442%
9708  ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
9709\def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9710 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
9711\def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9712 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0438%
9713  ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
9714\def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9715 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0442%
9716  ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
9717\def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9718 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
9719\def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9720 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0438%
9721  ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
9722\def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
9723 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0442%
9724  ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
9725</russian2o>

```

13.155 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

`\cyr` The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 84, 286]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 539. The `parttoc` title varies depending on the presence of chapters defined or not by the document class.

```

9726<*\russianb>
9727\ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]%
9728%% Russian (russianb) titles from russianb.dtx (babel)
9729%% Lapko, Olga & Volovitch, Vladimir & Lemberg, Werner
9730\expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9731\def\ptctitle{%
9732  {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
9733\else\def\ptctitle{%
9734  {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9735\fi
9736\def\plftitle{%
9737  {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9738    \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9739\def\pltttitle{%

```

```

9740 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9741 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9742 \def\mtctitle{%
9743 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9744 \def\mlftitle{%
9745 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9746 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9747 \def\mltttitle{%
9748 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9749 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9750 \def\stctitle{%
9751 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9752 \def\slftitle{%
9753 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9754 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9755 \def\sltttitle{%
9756 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9757 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9758 </russianb>

```

13.156 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

\xalx The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [137, 140]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.152 on page 539.

```

9759 (*russianc)
9760 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]%
9761 %% Russian titles (Mongolia). Needs cyrillic fonts.
9762 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
9763 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9764 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9765 %%
9766 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9767 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9768 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9769 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9770 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9771 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9772 </russianc>

```

13.157 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.ml[d|o]

They are several variants for the russian titles with the `cmcyralt` fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the `cmcyralt` package [53].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```
9773 <*russian-cca>
9774 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
9775 %% Russian-cca titles. From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
9776 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) & Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
9777 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
9778 </russian-cca>
```

13.158 “Russian-cca1” language: `russian-cca1.ml[d|o]`

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the `cmcyralt.sty` file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package [222].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca1.mlo`.

```
9779 <*russian-cca1>
9780 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
9781 %% Russian-cca1 titles. From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
9782 %% with cmcyr fonts in alt encoding.
9783 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu) & Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
9784 %% & Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
9785 </russian-cca1>
```

13.159 “Russian-lh” language: `russian-lh.ml[d|o]`

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the `russian.sty` file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [342].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lh.mlo`.

```
9786 <*russian-lh>
9787 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
9788 %% Russian-lh titles from russian.sty in the LH package
9789 %% LH fonts in special encoding. By Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
9790 </russian-lh>
```

13.160 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: **russian-lhcyralt.mld[o]**

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the `lhcyralt.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [487].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
9791 < *russian-lhcyralt >
9792 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
9793 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles from lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
9794 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866).
9795 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9796 < /russian-lhcyralt >
```

13.161 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: **russian-lhcyrkoi.mld[o]**

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the `lhcyrkoi.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [487].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo`. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
9797 < *russian-lhcyrkoi >
9798 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
9799 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles from lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
9800 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8. Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9801 < /russian-lhcyrkoi >
```

13.162 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: **russian-lhcyrwin.mld[o]**

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the `lhcyrwin.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [487].

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrwin.mlo`. The input encoding is CP1251.


```

9802 <*russian-lhcyrwin>
9803 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]\mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
9804 %% Russian titles from lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
9805 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in encoding CP1251. Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
9806 </russian-lhcyrwin>

```

13.163 “Samin” language: `samin.mld`

The titles for the “samin” language come from the `samin.dtx` file (by Regnor JERNSLETTEN) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 79]. Specific fonts are required. Note that several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sámi case⁴⁵. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group. See also [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sápmi_\(area\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sápmi_(area)).

```

9807 <*samin>
9808 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9809 %% North Sámi (samin) titles from samin.dtx (babel). Jernsletten, Regnor
9810 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9811 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
9812 \def\pltttitle{Tabeallat}%
9813 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9814 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
9815 \def\mltttitle{Tabeallat}%
9816 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
9817 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
9818 \def\sltttitle{Tabeallat}%
9819 </samin>

```

13.164 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language (gaelic scottish, *gàidhlig*) come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` language [60, 61, 76]:

```

9820 <*scottish>
9821 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9822 %% Scottish titles from scottish.dtx (babel). Grant, Fraser
9823 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
9824 \def\plftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
9825 \def\pltttitle{Liosta Chl\'ar}%
9826 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
9827 \def\mlftitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%

```

⁴⁵ Adapted from the `samin.dtx` file.

```

9828 \def\mltttitle{Liosta Chl\‘ar}%
9829 \def\stcttitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
9830 \def\slfttitle{Liosta Dhealbh}%
9831 \def\sltttitle{Liosta Chl\‘ar}%
9832 </scottish>

```

13.165 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) (*srpski jezik*, *srpskohrvatski jezik*) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 88]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.166 on the following page .

```

9833 <{*serbian}>
9834 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9835 %% Serbian titles in serbian.dtx (babel). Muhamedagi\‘{c}, Dejan & Slobodan, Jankovic
9836 \def\ptcttitle{Sadr\{v\{z\}aj}%
9837 \def\plfttitle{Slike}%
9838 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
9839 \def\mtcttitle{Sadr\{v\{z\}aj}%
9840 \def\mlfttitle{Slike}%
9841 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
9842 \def\stcttitle{Sadr\{v\{z\}aj}%
9843 \def\slfttitle{Slike}%
9844 \def\sltttitle{Tabele}%
9845 </serbian>

```

13.166 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

\cyr The titles for the “serbianc” language⁴⁶ have been gently provided by Marko ЂEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.165 on the page before.

⁴⁶The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

9846 <*serbianc>
9847 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9848 %% Serbian cyrillic titles. Marko Ćehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
9849 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
9850 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
9851 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
9852 \def\pltttitle{{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}}%
9853 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
9854 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
9855 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}}%
9856 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
9857 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
9858 \def\sltttitle{{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}}%
9859 </serbianc>

```

13.167 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language (*slovenčina*, *slovenký jazyk*) are taken from the `slovak.dtx` file (Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 72].

```

9860 <*slovak>
9861 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9862 %% Slovak titles from slovak.dtx (babel). Chlebíková, Jana & Schlemmer, Tobias. T1 encoding.
9863 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
9864 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
9865 \def\pltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
9866 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
9867 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
9868 \def\mltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
9869 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
9870 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
9871 \def\sltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
9872 </slovak>

```

13.168 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The slovene language (*slovenščina*, *slovenski jezik*) is spoken in Slovenia, but somewhat also in Italy (Frioul), in Austria (Carinthia and Styria), in Hungary (Szlovénviék and Porabje), in West Germany and Sweden. The titles for the “slovene” language come from the `slovene.dtx` file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 102]:

```

9873 <*slovene>
9874 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9875 %% Slovene titles from slovene.dtx (babel). Zavrtanik, Danilo & \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
9876 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%

```

```

9877 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
9878 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
9879 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
9880 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
9881 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
9882 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
9883 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
9884 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
9885 </slovene>

```

13.169 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” (*español, castellano*) language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the `babel` package [48, 60, 61]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.35 on page 486). But note also that other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.19 on page 479), “catalan” (section 13.37 on page 486), and “galician” (section 13.66 on page 499). Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.170 on the following page). And “spanish3” (see section 13.171 on the next page) is a version for the Antomega [272] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 13.172 on page 550).

```

9886 <*spanish>
9887 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9888 %% Spanish titles from spanish.dtx (babel) by Bezos, Javier & CervanTeX
9889 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9890 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}\else\def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}\fi
9891 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9892 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9893 %%
9894 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
9895 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9896 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9897 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
9898 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9899 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9900 </spanish>

```

13.170 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [48, 60, 61], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.169 on the page before.

```

9901 <*spanish2>
9902 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2008/04/03]%
9903 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
9904 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9905 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de tablas}%
9906 \def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
9907 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
9908 \def\mlttitle{Tablas}%
9909 \def\stctitle{Contenido}%
9910 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
9911 \def\slttitle{Tablas}%
9912 </spanish2>

```

13.171 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

`\localspanish` The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the `omega-spanish.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV) of the Antomega project [272]. See section 13.169 on the preceding page.

```

9913 <*spanish3>
9914 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]%
9915 %% Spanish titles from omega-spanish.ldf of the Antomega project.
9916 \def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
9917 \def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
9918 \def\plttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
9919 \def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
9920 \def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
9921 \def\mlttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
9922 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
9923 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
9924 \def\slttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
9925 </spanish3>

```

13.172 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier Bezos) from the `CervanTEX` package [47]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.169 on page 548.

```

9926 <*spanish4>
9927 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]%
9928 %% Spanish titles (from spanish.dtx in CervanTeX) Bezos, Javier
9929 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9930 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice} \else \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general} \fi
9931 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9932 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
9933 %%
9934 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
9935 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9936 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
9937 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
9938 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
9939 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
9940 </spanish4>

```

13.173 “Swahili” language: swahili.mld

The titles for the “swahili” language (*kiswahili*) are taken from the *obsolete swahili.tex* file⁴⁷, with adaptations and corrections given on the `comp.text.tex` news group (messages 57662, 57713, and 57717) by Giancarlo Bassi and Enrico Gregorio. Swahili is the main Bantu language and is spoken in East Africa: Tanzania, Kenya, Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi, Zanzibar and in the area of the Great Lakes in the Democratic Republic of Congo (Congo-Kinshasa, formerly Zaire) and in the Republic of Congo (Congo-Brazzaville), in the north of Mozambique and the south of Somalia⁴⁸. See [135, page 991] .

```

9941 <*swahili>
9942 \ProvidesFile{swahili.mld}[2007/07/02]%
9943 %% Swahili titles from swahili.tex in articles: 57662,57713,57717
9944 %% in comp.text.tex by Giancarlo Bassi <g.bassi@iperbole.bologna.it>
9945 %% & Enrico Gregorio <gregorio@math.unipd.it>
9946 \def\ptctitle{Yaliyomo}%
9947 \def\plftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
9948 \def\plttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
9949 \def\mtctitle{Yaliyomo}%
9950 \def\mlftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
9951 \def\mlttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
9952 \def\stctitle{Yaliyomo}%
9953 \def\slftitle{Picha zilizomo}%
9954 \def\slttitle{Orodha ya Mfano}%
9955 </swahili>

```

⁴⁷ <http://mirror.ctan.org/obsolete/macros/latex209/contrib/ml/swahili.tex>

⁴⁸ See <http://www.tfq.ulaval.ca/AXL/monde/swahili.htm>, <http://www.tfq.ulaval.ca/axl/afrique/czaire.htm> in [294], http://www.glcom.com/hassan/swahili_history.html, and <http://www.omniglot.com/writing/swahili.htm> .

13.174 “Swedish” language: `swedish.mld`

The titles for the “swedish” (*svenska*) language come from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michael RYNNING) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 77]. The swedish language is spoken in Sweden and in some regions of Finland like the Åland Islands. See also section 13.175.

```

9956 < *swedish >
9957 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]%
9958 %% Swedish titles from swedish.dtx (babel). Hellman, Sten & Östhols, Erik
9959 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9960 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
9961 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
9962 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9963 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
9964 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
9965 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9966 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
9967 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
9968 < /swedish >

```

13.175 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for swedish) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSON) in the `SLATEX` package [318]. See also section 13.174.

```

9969 < *swedish2 >
9970 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]%
9971 %% Swedish2 titles from rapport.doc (slatex). Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
9972 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9973 \def\plftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
9974 \def\pltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
9975 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9976 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
9977 \def\mltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
9978 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
9979 \def\slftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
9980 \def\sltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
9981 < /swedish2 >

```

13.176 “Thai” language: `thai.ml[d|o]`

The titles for the “thai” language come from the `thaicjk.ldf` file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [127, 297, 298]. The `thailatex` package [320] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

`\mtcloadmlo` The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`. See also [255].

```
9982 <*thai>
9983 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]\mtcloadmlo{thai}%
9984 %% From thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
9985 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9986 </thai>
```

13.177 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

The The turkish language (*türkçe*) is spoken mainly in Turkey and in Cyprus. The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre A. MacKAY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 68].

```
9987 <*turkish>
9988 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2007/12/18]%
9989 %% Turkish titles from turkish.dtx (babel). Burc, Mustafa
9990 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
9991 \def\plftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
9992 \def\pltttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
9993 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
9994 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
9995 \def\mltttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
9996 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
9997 \def\slftitle{\c Sekil Listesi}%
9998 \def\sltttitle{Tablo Listesi}%
9999 </turkish>
```

13.178 “Uighur” language: `uighur.mld`

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section 13.21 on page 479):


```
10000 <*uighur>
10001 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10002 </uighur>
```

13.179 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig2.mld file (see section [13.22 on page 480](#)):

```
10003 <*uighur2>
10004 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10005 </uighur2>
```

13.180 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section [13.21 on page 479](#)):

```
10006 <*uighur3>
10007 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]\mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10008 </uighur3>
```

13.181 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section [13.45 on page 490](#)):

```
10009 <*UKenglish>
10010 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10011 </UKenglish>
```

13.182 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section [13.183 on the following page](#).

```

10012 (*ukraineb)
10013 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{ukrainian}%
10014 </ukraineb>

```

13.183 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld

\cyr The titles for the “ukrainian” language (*ukrayins'ka mova*) come from the `ukraineb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 97]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is `ukraineb` (see section 13.182 on the page before).

```

10015 (*ukrainian)
10016 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]%
10017 %% Ukrainian titles from ukraineb.dtx (babel). Shvaika, Andrij & Lapko, Olga
10018 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10019 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10020 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10021           \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10022 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10023           \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10024 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10025 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10026           \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10027 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10028           \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10029 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10030 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10031           \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10032 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10033           \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10034 </ukrainian>

```

13.184 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language⁴⁹ (*hornjoserbsce*, *hornjoserbšćiba*) are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [60, 61, 100]. See

⁴⁹Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

also section 13.113 on page 522. A shorter language name is usorbian (see section 13.186 on the next page).

```
10035 <*uppersorbian>
10036 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]%
10037 %% Upper sorbian titles from usorbian.dtx (babel). Needs cyrillic fonts. Werner, Eduard
10038 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
10039 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10040 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10041 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10042 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10043 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10044 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
10045 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10046 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10047 </uppersorbian>
```

13.185 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”⁵⁰, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.45 on page 490):

```
10048 <*USenglish>
10049 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10050 </USenglish>
```

13.186 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just have to load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.184 on the page before.

```
10051 <*usorbian>
10052 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2007/12/04]\mtcselectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
10053 </usorbian>
```

13.187 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language (*tiếng việt*) are taken from the `vietnam` package [299] (by Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN). Vietnamese fonts are required; see [206, 208].

⁵⁰It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules, see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_English.

The vietnamese language is spoken in Vietnam and in the vietnamese diaspora. See also section [13.188 on the following page](#).

```
10054 <*vietnam>
10055 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]% Vietnamese titles
10056 \def\ptctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
10057 \def\plftitle{Dan h s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
10058 \def\plttitle{Dan h s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10059 \def\mtctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
10060 \def\mlftitle{Dan h s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
10061 \def\mlttitle{Dan h s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10062 \def\stctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
10063 \def\slftitle{Dan h s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
10064 \def\slttitle{Dan h s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10065 </vietnam>
```

13.188 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

`\mtcselectlanguage` The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load `vietnam.mld`. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section [13.187 on the page before](#).

```
10066 <*vietnamese>
10067 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]\mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
10068 </vietnamese>
```

13.189 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language (*cymraeg*) come from the `welsh.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [[59–61](#)]:

```
10069 <*welsh>
10070 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]%
10071 %% Welsh titles from welsh.dtx (babel), by Braams, Johannes~L.
10072 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
10073 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10074 \def\plttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10075 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
10076 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10077 \def\mlttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10078 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
10079 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10080 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10081 </welsh>
```

13.190 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [137, 140] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). Xalx (Khalkha) is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper.

Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.102 on page 517 and 13.191 to 13.192 on pages 557–558.

```
10082 <*xalx>
10083 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]%
10084 %% Mongol (xalx) titles
10085 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10086 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10087 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10088 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10089 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10090 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10091 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10092 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10093 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10094 </xalx>
```

13.191 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

`\mnr` The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [137, 140] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.190).

```
10095 <*xalx2>
10096 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]%
10097 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles
10098 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10099 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10100 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10101 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10102 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10103 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10104 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10105 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10106 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10107 </xalx2>
```

13.192 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

\xalx The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonTeX package [137, 140] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.190 on the preceding page).

```
10108 <*xalx3>
10109 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]%
10110 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles
10111 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10112 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10113 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10114 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10115 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10116 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10117 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10118 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10119 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10120 </xalx3>
```

Part III

Complements

Contents of the Third Part

Bibliography	561	Acknowledgments	634
Changes history	597		

Bibliography

This bibliography contains many URLs; you must be aware that some of them might be inaccessible because they are obsolete, or because their site is down or encounters some unexpected problem. Note also that the response of some sites may be slow (several seconds). For instance, the entries [257–259], from the <http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/> site, are very difficult to contact.

The URLs beginning with “https:” to the TUGboat site may have a restricted access to the TUG members during one year after publication. Being a member of TUG is useful and cheap!

Some URLs may contain an extension not supported by your Web browser; in such cases, you should try to access to the document manually. An example is [29], whose extension is .ps.gz.

Some URLs are too long for some tools; when possible, I shortened the URL to display only the contents the directory, as for [209], or by using an URL to the catalogue entry (as for [243] and [272]); when not possible, you should try to access to the document manually.

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 561
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX pour l’Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUDEMANCHE, <mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>.
- [3] Stéphane AICARDI. *Codages de caractères ASCII, latin-1, UTF-8, etc*, March 2006. Journées Mathrice, Nantes. Available from: <http://www.mathrice.org/rencontres/mars.2006/codages.pdf>.
- [4] A.J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using T_EX 2_ε*, November 2007. malayalamtex@gmail.com and <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 44, 205, 472, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528

- [5] A.J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω/\aleph* , November 2007. <mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/malayalam-omega.html>. 44, 205, 472, 526
- [6] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using \LaTeX* [online], January 2007. Available from: http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html. <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>, Department of Physics at Washington University in St. Louis.
- [7] Viviane ALLETON. *L'écriture chinoise: le défi de la modernité*. In *Bibliothèque Idées*. Albin Michel, March 2008.
- [8] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - \LaTeX* . Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. See `instr-1.pdf`. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/>. 88, 208
- [9] Jacques ANDRÉ and Jean-Côme CARPENTIER. *Lexique anglo-fraçais du Companion*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 49:19–45, October 2007.
- [10] Jacques ANDRÉ and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes numériques. Document numérique*, 9(3-4), 2006. Éditions Lavoisier, Paris.
- [11] Patrick ANDRIES. *Unicode 5.0 en pratique*. In *InfoPro*. Dunod, April 2008. <http://hapax.qc.ca>.
- [12] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICAUREAU. *\LaTeX pour l' impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html.
- [13] Jouko ARPONEN. *Practical \LaTeX Guide* [online], August 2004. Available from: http://www.helsinki.fi/~tfo_www/instr/latex-guide.html.
- [14] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 52, 88, 232, 251, 274, 301, 304, 307, 408, 442
- [15] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 29, 88, 217, 219, 234, 251, 417, 424, 441
- [16] Donald ARSENEAU. *The cite package*, November 2003. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty>. 627
- [17] Donald ARSENEAU. *The overcite package*, May 2003. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cite/overcite.sty>. 210
- [18] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 134, 227, 240

- [19] Donald ARSENEAU. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004.
<mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 60, 212, 229
- [20] Donald ARSENEAU. *The url package*, June 2005. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/url.sty>.
- [21] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T_EX Using the CJK B_TE_X Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfT_EX under Windows* [online], February 2007. Available from:
<http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>.
<mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.
- [22] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], February 2007. Available from:
<http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>.
<mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.
- [23] Jason BALDRIDGE. *Reconciling Linguistic Diversity: The History and the Future of Language Policy in India* [online], August 1996. Available from:
<http://www.ling.upenn.edu/~jason2/papers/natlang.htm>. University of Toledo Honors Thesis.
- [24] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 100
- [25] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002.
<mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>.
 Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 60, 210
- [26] Dorjgotov BATMUNKH. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, March 2007.
 Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf>. 530
- [27] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [28]. 563
- [28] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [27], Kluwer Academic Publishers. 563
- [29] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour B_TE_X 2_ε*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/info/JoliManuelPourLaTeX.ps.gz>. 49, 561
- [30] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>.
<mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>.
- [31] Claudio BECCARI. *Graphics in B_TE_X. The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007.
<mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, Politecnico di Torino, Turin, Italia. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/beccari/beccari.pdf>.

- [32] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>.
- [33] Nelson H. F. BEEBE. *Notes on fonts* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.math.utah.edu/~beebe/fonts/>.
- [34] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.1* [online], January 2007. Available from: <http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/index.html>.
<http://iml.univ-mrs.fr/~beffara/contact.html>, <mailto:beffara@iml.univ-mrs.fr>. 61, 236
- [35] Rachid BELMOUHOUB. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006.
- [36] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T_EX: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>.
- [37] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>.
- [38] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encodings for L^AT_EX 2_ε multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>.
- [39] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in L^AT_EX 2_ε and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>.
- [40] Jens BERGER. *The hypernat package*, July 2001.
<http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/hypernat.html>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/hypernat.sty>.
- [41] Tobias BERNDT. *L^AT_EX*. Addison-Wesley, München, first edition, December 2007. In german.
- [42] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 584
- [43] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>.
- [44] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 44, 215, 472, 493, 494

- [45] JAVIER BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T_EX*, July 2004. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 44, 218, 472, 504
- [46] JAVIER BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.tex-tipografia.com/contact.html>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 88, 238, 257, 416, 417, 630
- [47] JAVIER BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, February 2007. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://www.tex-tipografia.com/archive/spanish.pdf>. 44, 550
- [48] JAVIER BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2007. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 548, 549
- [49] GIUSEPPE BILOTTA. *The \aleph (Aleph) Project*. TUGboat, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 233
- [50] JUSTIN K. BISANWA and MICHEL TÉTU. *La Francophonie en Amérique: quatre siècles d'échanges Europe-Afrique-Amérique*. CIDEF-AFI, Université Laval, Québec, 2005.
- [51] DENIS BITOUZÉ and JEAN-CÔME CHARPENTIER. *LT_EX*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006.
- [52] PATRICK BOMAN and CHRISTIAN LAUCOU. *La typographie: cent règles*. Le Polygraphe, May 2005.
- [53] VICTOR BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 543
- [54] JOHANNES L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with LT_EX's standard document styles*. TUGboat, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 472
- [55] JOHANNES L. BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 473, 489
- [56] JOHANNES L. BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 490, 491
- [57] JOHANNES L. BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from MARION GUNN and FRASER GRANT, <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 512
- [58] JOHANNES L. BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>, HÅVARD HELSTRUP (<mailto:haavard@cernvm>) and ALV KJETIL HOLME (<mailto:holmea@cernvm>); the “nynorsk” variant has been supplied by PER STEINAR IVERSEN (<mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch>) and TERJE ENGESSET PETERST (<mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no>); RUNE KLEVELAND (<mailto:runekl@math.uio.no>) added the shorthand definitions. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 533, 534

- [59] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 556
- [60] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 38, 44, 75, 209, 215, 249, 472, 473, 477, 478, 479, 481, 482, 483, 484, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 509, 511, 512, 513, 517, 518, 519, 521, 522, 523, 524, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 536, 537, 538, 539, 541, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 551, 552, 554, 556
- [61] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes (user)*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 38, 44, 75, 209, 215, 249, 472, 473, 477, 478, 479, 481, 482, 483, 484, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 509, 511, 512, 513, 517, 518, 519, 521, 522, 523, 524, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 536, 537, 538, 539, 541, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 551, 552, 554, 556
- [62] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Julio SANCHEZ, and Zunbeltz IZAOLA AZKONA. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 479
- [63] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 511
- [64] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Gonçal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 486
- [65] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, with help from Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, (<mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl>). Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 517, 518, 519
- [66] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, with help from Attila KOPPANYI (<mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch>). Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 523, 524
- [67] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Georgi N. BOSHPANOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 483
- [68] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rz.uni-hamburg.de>, with help from Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR (<mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr>). Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 552

- [69] Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L^AT_EX 2_ε Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/source2e.tex>.
- [70] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>, <mailto:jmugica@digi21.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/galician/galician.pdf>. 499
- [71] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Galician support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 499
- [72] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 547
- [73] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 513
- [74] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L^AT_EX styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 472
- [75] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *A Babel language definition file for French*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 497, 498
- [76] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 546
- [77] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik ÖSTHOLS (mailto:erik_osthols@yahoo.com). Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 551
- [78] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 538
- [79] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Regnor JERNSLETTEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 545

- [80] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 495, 496
- [81] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 512
- [82] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 477
- [83] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 478
- [84] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 484, 541
- [85] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 488
- [86] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 509
- [87] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Miloš V. LOKAJČEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 488
- [88] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@unix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 546
- [89] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 487
- [90] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 500

- [91] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 532
- [92] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2008. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations and suggestions for enhancements. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm>, mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail, <mailto:arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 481, 537
- [93] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 482
- [94] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 492
- [95] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 492
- [96] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 536
- [97] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Andrij SHVAIKA, Olga LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 554
- [98] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 501
- [99] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/lsorbian.dtx>. 522
- [100] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2008. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 554
- [101] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, October 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/albanian.dtx>. 473

- [102] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 548
- [103] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/jura/jura.pdf>. 88, 208, 220, 415
- [104] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>.
- [105] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The ε -T_EX manual (version 2)*. The $\mathcal{N}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{S}$ Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf. 214, 215, 233, 268
- [106] Roland BRETON. *Atlas des minorités dans le monde*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, February 2008.
- [107] Roland BRETON, Krystyna MAZOYER, and Joshua-A. FISHMAN. *Atlas des langues du monde (Une pluralité fragile)*. In *Mini-Atlas*. Éditions Autrement, September 2003.
- [108] Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *On the localization of T_EX in Hungary*. *TUGboat*, 23(1):21–26, March 2002. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/bujdosowetl.pdf>. 570
- [109] Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ and Ferenc WETTL. *Adapter T_EX à la langue hongroise*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:3–15, November 2004. French translation of [108] by Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. Available from: <ftp://gutemberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/42-hufflen.pdf>.
- [110] Patrick BURGEL. *Le petit livre des pluriels*. First Editions, August 2006. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>.
- [111] Philippe CADÈNE and Guillaume BALAVOINE. *Atlas de l'Inde: une fulgurante ascension*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, March 2008.
- [112] Samuele CARCAGNO. *My L^AT_EX Notes, The Messy Notes of a L^AT_EX User*. Available from: http://xoomer.alice.it/sam_psy/soft/my_latex_notes.pdf.
- [113] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L^AT_EX*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006.
- [114] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/xr.pdf>. 27, 241, 314
- [115] David P. CARLISLE. *The afterpage package*, October 1995. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/afterpage.pdf>. 27, 208, 615
- [116] David P. CARLISLE. *The file ltxdoc.dtx for use with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1999. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltxdoc.dtx>. 25, 213, 222

- [117] David P. CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 241
- [118] David P. CARLISLE. *The ifthen package*, May 2001. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>.
Available from: <http://www.ifi.uio.no/it/latex-links/ifthen.pdf>. 219
- [119] David P. CARLISLE. *The textcase package*, October 2004.
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/textcase/textcase.pdf>.
- [120] David P. CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005.
<mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 115
- [121] David P. CARLISLE and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Back referencing from bibliographical citations*, October 2006. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/backref.pdf>.
- [122] Raymond CHABBERT[†]. *Lire et écrire l'occitan*. In LENGUA. Vent Terral, Pôle d'acrivité Val 81, 81340 Valence d'Albigeois, January 2005. <mailto:info@ventterral.com>.
Available from: <http://www.ventterral.com>. 535
- [123] Winston CHANG. *TEX 2_ε Cheat Sheet*, October 2006. Available from:
<http://www.stdout.org/~winston/latex/latexsheet.pdf>.
- [124] Jean-Pascal CHAUVET. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from:
<http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>.
- [125] Pehong CHEN and Michael A. HARRISON. *Index preparation and processing. Software – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988.
- [126] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts and Unicode in PdfTEX* [online], April 2007. Available from: <http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/ipe/pdftex.html>.
<mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr> and <http://tclab.kaist.ac.kr/~otfried/>.
- [127] Jin-Hwam CHO and Haruhiko OKUMURA. *Typesetting CJK Languages with Omega. Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, 3130:139–148, 2004. TEX XML, and Digital Typography. 38, 44, 212, 237, 238, 472, 487, 505, 506, 507, 508, 514, 515, 516, 552
- [128] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make TEX (teTEX) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>.
<mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 215
- [129] André CHUVIN, René LÉTOILE, and Sébastien PEYROUSE. *Histoire de l'Asie centrale contemporaine*. Fayard, Paris, January 2008.
- [130] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/>. 33, 88, 140, 228, 237
- [131] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 54, 76, 88, 210, 254, 277

- [132] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004.
<mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 33, 88, 146, 210, 228,
 237, 395
- [133] COLLECTIVE. *Lexique des règles typographiques en usage à l’Imprimerie Nationale*.
 Imprimerie Nationale, August 2002.
- [134] COLLECTIVE. *OIF*. In *La Francophonie dans le monde 2004–2005*, Paris, March
 2005. Organisation Internationale de la Francophonie, Larousse.
- [135] Bernard COMRIE, editor. *The Worlds’s Major Languages*. Oxford University Press,
 USA, June 1990. 550
- [136] Bernard COMRIE, Sthephen MATTHEWS, Maria POLINSKY, and COLLECTIVE. *Atlas des
 langues (L’origine et le développement des langues dans le monde)*. Acropole
 Belfond, September 2004. Catherine BRICOUT for the translation.
- [137] Oliver CORFF. *MonTeX – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002.
<mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 44, 205, 225,
 472, 479, 480, 481, 484, 485, 529, 542, 557, 558
- [138] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available
 from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch/Pentaglot.html>.
<mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 226
- [139] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from:
<http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on
 Mongolian Affairs. 225
- [140] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *MonTeX – Mongolian for L^AT_EX 2_ε, Implementation
 Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available
 from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 44, 205,
 225, 472, 479, 480, 481, 484, 485, 529, 542, 557, 558
- [141] Olivier DABÈNE and Aurélie BOISSIÈRE. *Atlas de l’Amérique latine: violences,
 démocratie participative et promesse de développement*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions
 Autrement, June 2006.
- [142] Sergueï DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vartan AKOPIAN. *ArmTeX: a System for Writing
 in Armenian with T_EX and L^AT_EX* (written in armenian), June 1999.
<mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>,
<http://www-scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 44, 209, 472, 476, 602
- [143] Patrick W. DALY. *Graphics and Colour with L^AT_EX*. Max Plank Institut für Aeronomie;
 D-37191 Katlenburg-Lindnau, Federal Republic of Germany, June 1998. Available
 from: <http://tex.loria.fr/graph-pack/grf/grf.pdf>.
- [144] Patrick W. DALY. *A package to Set Margins to Full Page*, February 1999. Available
 from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/preprint/fullpage.pdf>. 137, 138, 146

- [145] Patrick W. DALY. *Natural Sciences Citations and References (Author-Year and Numerical Schemes)*, February 2007. This paper describes the natbib package (version 8.0), <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natbib.pdf>. 210, 229, 628
- [146] Patrick W. DALY. *Reference sheet for natbib package*, February 2007. <mailto:daly@mps.mpg.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/natbib/natnotes.pdf>. 210, 229, 628
- [147] Peter T. DANIELS and William BRIGHT, editors. *The World's Writing Systems*. Oxford University Press, USA, February 1996.
- [148] Alice DAVISON. *Syntax and Morphology in Hindi and Urdu: A Lexical Resource* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.uiowa.edu/~linguist/faculty/davison/HINDIVERBPROJECT>. <mailto:alice-davison@uiowa.edu>, Department of Linguistics, University of Iowa, 570 English-Philosophy Building, Iowa City, Iowa 52242 USA. 218, 489
- [149] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 213
- [150] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *TEX, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003.
- [151] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 215
- [152] Christine DETIG and Joachim SCHROD. *Donald E. Knuth, Literate Programming*. TUGboat, 15(1):25–27, March 1994.
- [153] Antoni R. DILLER. *TEX, Line by Line (Tips and Techniques for Document Processing)*. John Wiley & Sons, Chicester, second edition, January 1993. <mailto:A.R.Diller@cs.bham.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~ard/latex/latex.html>.
- [154] Gérard DOREL. *Atlas de l'empire américain: États-Unis: géostratégie de l'hyperpuissance*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, September 2006.
- [155] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.pdf>. 20, 99, 237, 598
- [156] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, July 2008. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc-fr.pdf>. 99, 448
- [157] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, July 2008. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 99, 448, 594
- [158] Victor EIJKHOUT. *TEX by Topic: A T_EXnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley, Wokingham (England), 1992. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.cs.utk.edu/~eijkhout/texbytopic-a4.pdf>.
- [159] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>.
- [160] Victor EIJKHOUT and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Introduction to the Dutch TEX document classes*, February 1994. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/classdoc.pdf>.

- [161] Brian ELMGAARD and Patrick EGAN. *The nomentbl package*, April 2006.
<mailto:be@mek.dtu.dk>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/nomentbl/nomentbl.pdf>. 51, 404
- [162] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiT_EX and the Iranian T_EX Community*.
TUGboat, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 44, 216, 472, 494, 495
- [163] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from:
<http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>.
- [164] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T_EX FAQ. Your 423 Questions Answered*. Also visible here:
<http://www.tex.ac.uk/faq>, November 2007. Version 3.17. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>.
- [165] Simon FEAR. *Publication quality tables in L^AT_EX (with the booktabs package)*, March 2003. In the absence of the author, contact Danie ELS, <mailto:dnjels@sun.ac.za>.
 Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/booktabs/booktabs.pdf>.
 21, 210
- [166] Jürgen FENN. *Managing Citations and Your Bibliography with B_BT_EX. The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Neu-Isenburg, Germany. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/fenn/fenn.pdf>.
- [167] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516,
 November 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf>.
- [168] Peter FLOM. *L^AT_EX for academics and researchers who (think they) don't need it*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(4), November 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and
<http://cduhr.ndri.org>, National Development and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West
 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/flom/flom.pdf>.
- [169] Peter FLOM, Hans HAGEN, Joe HOGG, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Philip TAYLOR, Christina
 THIELE, and David WALDEN. *What is T_EX?* *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005.
<mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk> and <mailto:dave@walden-family.com>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/walden-whatish/all.pdf>.
- [170] Peter L. FLOM. *A L^AT_EX Fledgling Struggles to Take Flight*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(2),
 April 2005. <mailto:flom@ndri.org> and <http://cduhr.ndri.org>, National Development
 and Research Institutes, Inc., 11 West 23rd St, 8th floor, New York, NY 10010.
 Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/flom/flom.pdf>.
- [171] Peter FLYNN. *A categorized search of CTAN*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005.
 Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/flynn/flynn.pdf>.
- [172] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with
 L^AT_EX*, March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>.
- [173] Peter FLYNN. *Rolling your own Document Class: Using L^AT_EX to keep away from the
 Dark Side*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Silmaril Consultants. Available
 from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/flynn/flynn.pdf>.

- [174] Peter FLYNN. *The very short guide to typesetting with \LaTeX* , April 2007. Available from: <http://latex.silmaril.ie/veryshortguide/veryshortguide.pdf>.
- [175] Louis FRÉDÉRIC. *Le Japon: dictionnaire et civilisation*. In *Bouquins*. Robert Laffont, September 1999.
- [176] Federico GARCIA. *Capabilities of PDF interactivity*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/garcia1/garcia1.pdf>.
- [177] Federico GARCIA. *Hypertext capabilities with pdf \LaTeX* . *TUGboat*, 28(1):129–132, March 2007. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-1/tb88garcia.pdf>.
- [178] Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Josef TKADLEC. *The pict2e package*, June 2008. <mailto:HubertJG@open.min.de>, <mailto:Rolf.Niepraschk@ptb.de>, <mailto:j.tkadlec@email.cz>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/pict2e/pict2e.pdf>. 58
- [179] Bernard GAULLE[†]. *L’extension frenchle pour \LaTeX (notice d’utilisation)*, February 1997. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/french/frenchle/frenchle.pdf>. 499
- [180] Bernard GAULLE[†]. *Notice d’utilisation de l’extension frenchpro pour \LaTeX* , June 1997. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/french/frenchpro/french/ALIRE.pdf>. 499
- [181] Bernard GAULLE[†]. *Comment peut-on personnaliser l’extension french de \LaTeX ?* *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28-29:153–157, March 1998. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-gaulle.pdf>. 499
- [182] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>.
- [183] Chuck GENSCHTE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 234
- [184] Jacques GERNET. *Le monde chinois: 1. de l’âge de bronze au Moyen Âge*. In *Pocket Agora*. Pocket, April 2006.
- [185] Jacques GERNET. *Le monde chinois: 2. l’époque moderne Xe-XIXe siècle*. In *Pocket Agora*. Pocket, April 2006.
- [186] Jacques GERNET. *Le monde chinois: 3. l’époque contemporaine*. In *Pocket Agora*. Pocket, April 2006.
- [187] Helen GILHOLLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006.
- [188] François GIRON. *Rédiger un document avec les programmes \TeX et \LaTeX 2 ϵ* , October 2006. <http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/index.html>. Available from: <http://homepage.mac.com/fgiron/fgaccueil/LaTeX/surlatex.pdf>.

- [189] Michel GOOSSENS, Frank MITTELBACH, Sebastian RAHTZ, Denis B. ROEGEL, and Herbert VOSS. *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, July 2007.
- [190] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S. SUTOR. *The L^AT_EX Web Companion: Integrating T_EX, HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999.
- [191] Raymond G. GORDON, Jr. and Barbara F. GRIMES, editors. *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*. SIL International, Dallas, Texas, fifteenth edition, January 2005. Online version: <http://www.ethnologue.com>.
- [192] Bruce K. GRANT. *A Guide to Korean Chars: Reading and Writing Hangul and Hanja*. Hollym International Corporation, February 2000.
- [193] George GRÄTZER. *First Steps into L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser, Boston, August 1999.
- [194] George GRÄTZER. *Math into L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser and Springer-Verlag, Boston, third edition, 2000.
- [195] George GRÄTZER. *More Math into L^AT_EX*. Springer, fourth edition, October 2007.
- [196] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, March 2007.
<http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 215, 218, 240, 254, 618
- [197] George D. GREENWADE. *The Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network (CTAN)*. *TUGboat*, 14(3):342–351, October 1993. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf>.
- [198] Enrico GREGORIO. *Babel, how to enjoy writing in different languages*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:Enrico.Gregorio@sci.univr.it>, Dipartimento di Informatica, Università di Verona, Italia. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/gregorio/gregorio.pdf>.
- [199] Enrico GREGORIO. *Enjoying babel*. *TUGboat*, 28(2):247–255, July 2007. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-2/tb89gregorio.pdf>.
- [200] Klaus GUNTERMANN and Joachim SCHROD. *WEB adapted to C*. *TUGboat*, 7(3):134–137, October 1986.
- [201] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph 8*, July 2004. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 233
- [202] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>.
- [203] Reinhard F. HAHN. *Lowlands-L, Anniversary Celebration (One story in hundred of languages and dialects)* [online], 2007. Available from:
<http://www.lowlands-l.net/anniversary/index.php>. <mailto:lowlands.list@gmail.com>.
- [204] Thé Thành HÀN. *The pdfT_EX Program*. In *EuroT_EX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from:
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>. 214

- [205] Thế Thành HÀN. *Micro-typographic extensions to the T_EX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>.
- [206] Thế Thành HÀN. *Making Type 1 fonts for Vietnamese*. *TUGboat*, 24(1):79–84, July 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb24-1/thanh.pdf>. 555
- [207] Thế Thành HÀN. *Font-specific issues in pdfT_EX*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):36–41, February 2008. Available from: <https://www.tug.org/members/TUGboat/tb29-1/tb91thanh-fonts.pdf>.
- [208] Thế Thành HÀN. *Typesetting Vietnamese with VnT_EX (and with the T_EX Gyre fonts too)*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):95–100, February 2008. Available from: <https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb69thanh.pdf>. 555
- [209] Thế Thành HÀN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, Paweł JACKOWSKI, and Martin SCHRÖDER. *The pdfT_EX user manual*, January 2007. See `pdftex-a.pdf`. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/texlive/Contents/live/texmf/doc/pdftex/manual/>. 561
- [210] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 60, 210, 229
- [211] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 60, 229
- [212] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 90, 94, 221, 621
- [213] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman T_EX for Mac and PC*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf>.
- [214] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, <mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>, April 2004. English translation in [216]. Available from: <http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X>. 505, 507, 508, 577
- [215] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Voyage au centre de T_EX: composition, paragraphage, césure*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 44:75–125, November 2004. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-haralambous.pdf>.
- [216] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fonts & Encodings*. O'Reilly Media, September 2007. English translation of [214]. 505, 507, 508, 577
- [217] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of Ω: Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 232
- [218] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Ω, a T_EX extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes*. In Wlodek BZYL and Tomasz PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European T_EX Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 232, 577

- [219] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from:
http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf.
- [220] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/39-yannis.pdf>.
- [221] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL. Ω , une extension de $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [218]. Available from:
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/20-yannis.pdf>. 232
- [222] Alexander HARIN, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Vadim MASLOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 543
- [223] Stephen HARTKE. *A Survey of Free Math Fonts for $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and \LaTeX* . *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/hartke/hartke.pdf>.
- [224] Jim HEFFERON. *CTAN for Starters*. *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [225] Jim HEFFERON. *Minutes in Less Than Hours: Using \LaTeX Resources*. *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 1(4), October 2005. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [226] Jim HEFFERON. *What I Wish I Had . . . When I Was A Lad — Using \LaTeX resources*. *The Prac $T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Journal*, 2(4), November 2006. <mailto:ftpmaint@tug.ctan.org>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/hefferon/hefferon.pdf>.
- [227] Thomas HENLICH. *The Marvosym Font Package*, May 2006. <mailto:thomas@henloch.de>, The font was designed by Martin VOGEL, <mailto:marvosym.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/fonts/psfonts/marvosym/marvodoc.pdf>. 224
- [228] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 222, 278
- [229] Pr. Thomas J. HINNEBUSCH and Dr. Barbara BLANKENSHIP. *UCLA Language Materials Project* [online]. Available from: <http://www.lmp.ucla.edu>. University of California, Los Angeles; <mailto:lmp@international.ucla.edu>. 471
- [230] Taco HOEKWATER. $\text{LUA}T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$. *TUGboat*, 28(3):312–313, September 2007. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb28-3/tb90hoekwater-luatex.pdf>. 233
- [231] Taco HOEKWATER, Hartmut HENKEL, and Hans HAGEN. *$\text{LUA}T_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Reference*, July 2007. <http://www.luatex.org/>. Available from:
<http://context.aanhet.net/luatex/beta/manual/luatexref-t.pdf>. 233

- [232] Alan HOENIG. *T_EX Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L^AT_EX & T_EX Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More.
- [233] Klaus HÖPPNER. *Strategies for including graphics in L^AT_EX documents*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/hoepner/hoepner.pdf>.
- [234] Don HOSEK. *The morefloats package*, July 1990. <mailto:dhosek@ymir.claremont.edu>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/morefloats.sty>.
- [235] Jean-Michel HUFFLEN. *Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et L^AT_EX*. In *Congrès GUTenberg 2000, Toulouse*, volume 35-36 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 169–214, may 2000. Available from:
<ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/35-hufflen.pdf>.
- [236] ICELANDIC LANGUAGE INSTITUTE. *ICELANDIC – At once ancient and modern –*. Ministry of Education, Science and Culture, Sölvhólsgrata 4, 150 Reykjavik, 2001. <mailto:postur@mrn.stjr.is>, Web site: <http://www.menntamalaraduneyti.is>. Available from: <http://www.iceland.is/media/Utgafa/Icelandic.pdf>. 511
- [237] Roberto IERUSALIMSKY. *Programming in Lua*. Lua.Org, January 2005.
- [238] Roberto IERUSALIMSKY, Luiz Henrique DE FIGUEIREDO, and Waldemar CELES. *Lua 5.1 Reference Manual*. Lua.Org, August 2006.
- [239] Hiroya IKEDA. *pL^AT_EX 2_ε*. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>, September 2001. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 234
- [240] Victor IVRIL. *T_EX Freak (first part)*. Department of Mathematics, University of Toronto, September 2007. Available from:
http://www.math.toronto.edu/Research/preprints/TeX_Talk_2A.pdf.
- [241] Victor IVRIL. *T_EX Freak (second part)*. Department of Mathematics, University of Toronto, September 2007. Available from:
http://www.math.toronto.edu/Research/preprints/TeX_Talk_2B.pdf.
- [242] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in L^AT_EX*⁵¹, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and <mailto:furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp>. Available from:
http://www.moiivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf.
- [243] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the A_{ar}abi package. The Users Guide*, December 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/arabi.html>. 38, 44, 209, 475, 495, 561, 623
- [244] Paweł JACKOWSKI. *T_EX beauties and oddities* [online], 2007. Available from:
<http://www.pawcoo.com/>. <mailto:pearls@gust.org.pl>.
- [245] Roland JACQUES. *Portuguese Pioneers of Vietnamese Linguistics*. Orchid Press, PO Box 19, Yuttitham Post Office, Bangkok 10907, Thailand, July 2002. Available from:
<http://orchidpress.net/>.

⁵¹This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [246] Christophe JACQUET. *Memento L^AT_EX*. In *Memento*. Eyrolles, Paris, first edition, November 2007.
- [247] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in L^AT_EX 2_ε*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>.
- [248] Alan JEFFREY and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *The file ltnews.dtx for use with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, July 2001. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltnews.cls>. 25, 213, 222
- [249] Zhuhan JIANG. *The vruler package*, October 1996.
<mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at
<http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>.
- [250] David M. JONES. *The hangcaption package*, August 1992.
<mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 53, 79, 88, 218, 255, 275
- [251] Jean-Joseph JULAUD. *Le français correct pour les nuls*. In *Pour les Nuls Classic Pratique*. First Editions, August 2001. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from:
<http://www.efirst.com>. 273
- [252] Jean-Joseph JULAUD. *Le petit livre de la conjugaison correcte*. First Editions, April 2002. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>.
- [253] Jean-Joseph JULAUD. *Le petit livre de la grammaire facile*. First Editions, August 2004. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from: <http://www.efirst.com>.
- [254] Akira KAKUTO. W32T_EX [online], March 2007. Available from:
<http://www.fsci.fuk.kindai.ac.jp/kakuto/win32-ptex/web2c75-e.html>.
<mailto:kakuto@fuk.kindai.ac.jp>, School of Humanity-Oriented Science and Engineering, Kinki University, Iizuka 820-8555, Japan. 234
- [255] Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN. *Standardization and Implementations of Thai Language*. National Electronics and Computer Technology Center, National Science and Technology Development Agency, Ministry of Science and Technology and Environment, THAILAND, 1999. <mailto:thep@links.nectec.or.th>. 552
- [256] Jonathan KEW. *The X_YT_EX typesetting system* [online], February 2007. Available from:
<http://www.scripts.sil.org/xetex>. 233
- [257] Ki-Joo KIM. *A BibT_EX Guide via Examples*, April 2004.
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:
http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/bibtex_guide.pdf. 561
- [258] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from L^AT_EX*, April 2004.
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:
<http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex2pdf.pdf>. 561
- [259] Ki-Joo KIM. *L^AT_EX Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/kijoo2000/latex_fonts.pdf. 561

- [260] Ingo KLÖCKL. *ℒ_TE_X – Tipps und Tricks*. Dpunkt. Verlag GmbH, Ringstraße 19, 69115 Heidelberg, <mailto:i.kloeckl@2k-software.de>, January 2002.
- [261] Jörg KNAPPEN. *Schnell ans Ziel mit ℒ_TE_X 2_ε*. Oldenbourg Wissenschaftsverlag GmbH, Rosenheimer Straße 145, 81671 München, second edition, May 2004. Available from: <http://www.oldenbourg-verlag.de>.
- [262] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 35, 213
- [263] Donald E. KNUTH. *The T_EXbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover T_EX3, 1991. 211, 221, 238, 239, 580
- [264] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 213
- [265] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T_EXbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [263], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 211, 221, 238, 239
- [266] Un KOAUNGI. *Hℒ_TE_X: a ℒ_TE_X package for the Korean language support*. In korean, April 2005. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 205, 219, 472, 507, 508
- [267] Helmut KOPKA. *Ergänzungen: Bd 2*. In *ℒ_TE_X*. Pearson Studium, München, third edition, May 2002.
- [268] Helmut KOPKA. *Erweiterungen: Bd 3*. In *ℒ_TE_X*. Pearson Studium, München, third edition, July 2002.
- [269] Helmut KOPKA. *Einführung: Bd 1*. In *ℒ_TE_X*. Pearson Studium, München, third edition, March 2005.
- [270] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to ℒ_TE_X*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 233
- [271] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in ℒ_TE_X 2_ε*. *MAPS*, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf.
- [272] Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/entries/antomega.html>. 44, 208, 472, 502, 503, 519, 536, 540, 541, 548, 549, 561
- [273] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>, Computer Laboratory, University of Cambridge.
- [274] Frank KÜSTER. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/alnumsec.pdf>. 54, 76, 88, 208, 254, 276

- [275] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de T_EX et L^AT_EX*. Masson, Paris, December 1997.
- [276] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT_EX—Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European T_EX Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf. 38, 44, 209, 472, 474, 475, 508
- [277] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT_EX Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 38, 44, 209, 472, 474, 475, 508
- [278] Leslie LAMPORT. *MakeIndex, An Index Processor For L^AT_EX*, 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf>.
- [279] Leslie LAMPORT. *L^AT_EX: A Document Preparation System — User’s Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 58, 221
- [280] Leslie LAMPORT, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *NTG Document Classes for L^AT_EX version 2e*, June 2004. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ntgclass/ntgclass.pdf>.
- [281] Leslie LAMPORT, L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Producing proceedings articles with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, November 1995. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/proc.dtx>. 25, 213
- [282] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBAACH, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for L^AT_EX version 2e*, September 2005. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 25, 60, 71, 205, 209, 210, 213, 235
- [283] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBAACH, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *Standard Letter Document Class for L^AT_EX version 2e*, April 1999. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/letter.dtx>. 60, 213, 221
- [284] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG’96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>.
- [285] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 30, 54, 88, 164, 217, 257, 270, 278, 629
- [286] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 38, 484, 541
- [287] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>. 21
- [288] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 30, 234, 441

- [289] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for authors*, July 2001. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 205
- [290] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for Class and Package writers*, December 2003.
Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 205
- [291] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection*, February 2004. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 205, 229, 297, 377, 381
- [292] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX font encodings*, January 2006. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 215, 229
- [293] Olivier LECARME. *L^AT_EX en bref*, August 2004. Available from:
<http://deptinfo.unice.fr/~ol/L3MI/LaTeX/latexenbref.pdf>.
- [294] Jacques LECLERC. *L'aménagement linguistique dans le monde* [online], March 2008.
Available from: <http://www.tlfq.ulaval.ca/axl>. TLFQ (Trésor de la langue française au Québec), Université Laval, Québec. 471, 473, 477, 550
- [295] Iksop LEE and S. Robert RAMSEY. *The Korean Language*. State University of New York Press, December 2000.
- [296] Philipp LEHMAN. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/info/Type1fonts/fontinstallationguide/>.
- [297] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for L^AT_EX 2_ε — Multilingual support beyond babel*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintr600.pdf>. 38, 44, 212, 237, 238, 472, 487, 505, 506, 507, 508, 514, 515, 516, 552
- [298] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], October 2006. Available from:
<http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 38, 44, 212, 237, 238, 472, 487, 505, 506, 507, 508, 514, 515, 516, 552
- [299] Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN. *The vietnam package*, October 2006.
<mailto:wl@gnu.org>, <mailto:hanthethanh@gmx.net>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/>. 44, 555
- [300] Knut LICKERT. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for people in associations: minutes.sty*, March 2007.
<mailto:knut@lickert.net> et <http://tex.lickert.net/packages/minutes/index.html>.
Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/minutes.pdf>.
224, 297, 407
- [301] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005.
<mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 53, 75, 88, 217, 254, 275
- [302] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001.
<mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.pdf>. 30, 54, 88, 164, 217, 257, 270, 278, 629
- [303] Bernice Sacks LIPKIN. *L^AT_EX for Linux: A Vade Mecum*. Springer, January 2000.

- [304] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997.
<mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy.
 Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 54, 76, 88, 237, 254, 276
- [305] Tristan LORINO. *Du respect de certaines règles typographiques*, June 2006. Available from: <http://daedale.free.fr/doc/typo.pdf>.
- [306] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced L^AT_EX*, September 1994. latex-advanced.pdf, <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available from: http://www.moire.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/.
- [307] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>.
- [308] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur L^AT_EX sans jamais oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from: <http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>.
- [309] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 205, 212, 583
- [310] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”*, 1996. See [309]. Available from: <ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 205, 212
- [311] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999.
- [312] Jean-François MACÉ. *Le Japon est-il chinois? L'Histoire*, Special issue (333):20–25, July-August 2008.
- [313] Pascal MARCHAND and Cyrille SUSS. *Atlas géopolitique de la Russie: puissance d'hier, puissance de demain?* In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, October 2007.
- [314] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. 60, 237
- [315] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of Bib_TE_X)*, June 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: http://mirror.ctan.org/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf. 205, 210
- [316] Alan MARSHALL. *La composition typographique*. Cahiers GUTenberg, 8:3–9, March 2007.
- [317] Éric MARTINI. *Petit guide de typographie*. Éditions Glyphe, second edition, February 2008. <mailto:eric.martini@editions-glyphe.com>. Available from: <http://www.editions-glyphe.com>.
- [318] Sven MATTISSON. *S^AT_EX: Swedish speaking version of L^AT_EX* [online], November 1989. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>, Department of Applied Electronics, University of Lund, Box 118, S-221 00 Lund, Sweden. 44, 237, 551

- [319] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package* v2.0.2, April 2002.
<mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 53, 70, 88, 129, 236, 252, 275
- [320] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. Find `thai.dtx` in `thailatex-0.4.0.tar.gz`, <mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from:
<ftp://linux.thai.net/pub/ThaiLinux/software/thailatex/>. 238, 552
- [321] Frank MITTELBACH. ϵ -T_EX: *Guidelines for future T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>.
- [322] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts”* [42]. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>.
- [323] Frank MITTELBACH. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Encoding Interfaces*, June 1995. Available from:
<http://www.latex-project.org/papers/encoding-concepts.pdf>. 215, 229
- [324] Frank MITTELBACH. *Producing slides with L^AT_EX 2_ε*, August 1997. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/slides.dtx>. 213
- [325] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000.
<mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 91, 115, 229
- [326] Frank MITTELBACH. *The varioref package*, April 2003. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/varioref.pdf>. 140
- [327] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>. 21
- [328] Frank MITTELBACH. *The dblaccnt package*, April 2005.
<mailto:frank.mittelbach@latex-project.org>, The current maintainer is
Werner LEMBERG, <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/language/vietnamese/vntex/tex/latex/vntex/dblaccnt.sty>. 214, 617
- [329] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>.
- [330] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The L^AT_EX Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 30, 145, 205, 222, 228, 234, 441
- [331] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Der L^AT_EX-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version.

- [332] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David P. CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *LaTeX Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 612
- [333] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. TUGboat, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>.
- [334] Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, Alan JEFFREY, and David P. CARLISLE. *The main structure of documents*, January 2004. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/ltxclass.dtx>.
- [335] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>.
- [336] Florence MORGIENSZTERN, Josiane GONTHIER, Monique PONTAULT, and Alexandre WOLFF. *OIF*. In Christian VALANTIN, editor, *La Francophonie dans le monde 2006–2007*, Paris, March 2007. Organisation Internationale de la Francophonie, Nathan.
- [337] Lapo Filippo MORI. *LaTeXpedia: the future of LaTeX documentation*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori2/mori2.pdf>.
- [338] Lapo Filippo MORI. *Tables in LaTeX 2_ε: Packages and Methods*. *The PracTeX Journal*, 1, February 2007. <mailto:mori@northwestern.edu> and <http://www.lapomori.com/>, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Northwestern University, Evanston, Illinois. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/mori/mori.pdf>.
- [339] Michael A. MORRISON. *LaTeX Links* [online], December 1999. Available from: <http://www.nhn.ou.edu/~morrison/LaTeX/index.shtml>. <mailto:morrison@mail.nhn.ou.edu>, Department of Physics & Astronomy, University of Oklahoma.
- [340] NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY. *Atlas of China*, November 2007.
- [341] National Institute of the Korean. *Writing Korean for Beginners*, March 2006.
- [342] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2_ε support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/textsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 544
- [343] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, a versatile LaTeX 2_ε bundle*, December 2007. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 41, 50, 62, 75, 88, 141, 142, 162, 205, 210, 220, 228, 236, 253, 254, 415, 616
- [344] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares LaTeX 2_ε-Paket*, December 2007. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 41, 50, 62, 75, 88, 141, 142, 162, 205, 210, 220, 228, 236, 253, 254, 415, 616

- [345] Elke NIEDERMAIR and Michael NIEDERMAIR. *ℒ_TE_X Das Praxisbuch*. Franzis Verlag GmbH, January 2006. See http://www.franzis.de/images/optfiles/p_dateien/1787_latex_praxisbuch_source.zip.
- [346] Tim NULL. `\begin{here}` % getting started: A ℒ_TE_X Survivor's Guide. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(2), April 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-2/null-bh02/null-bh02.pdf>.
- [347] Tim NULL. `\begin{here}` % getting started: Topic #1: Creating my first ℒ_TE_X article, Part 3. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(3), July 2005. <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-3/null-bh03/null-bh03.pdf>.
- [348] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfT_EX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT_EX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 88
- [349] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The ifpdf package*, February 2006. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/ifpdf.pdf>.
- [350] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The makerobust package*, March 2006. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/makerobust.pdf>. 149
- [351] Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hypcap package*, April 2007. <mailto:oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/hypcap.pdf>.
- [352] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *ChangeLog for the hyperref bundle*, May 2007. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/ChangeLog.pdf>. 88
- [353] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *Hypertext marks in ℒ_TE_X*, May 2007. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.pdf>. 88
- [354] Heiko OBERDIEK and Sebastian RAHTZ. *README for the hyperref bundle*, February 2007. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/README.pdf>. 88
- [355] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à ℒ_TE_X 2_ε. Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [356] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 205
- [356] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to ℒ_TE_X 2_ε*, May 2006. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 205, 213, 221, 586
- [357] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *Pakiet POLSKI (wersja 1.3.3)*. In polish and english; see also <http://www.tug.org/tetex/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html>, February 2008. <mailto:M.Olko@Litterae.com.pl> and <mailto:wolinski@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/polski/polski.dtx>. 44, 234, 537
- [358] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *ℒ_TE_X à 200%*. O'Reilly France, September 2007.

- [359] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your L^AT_EX Package*, November 2004.
<mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/info/dtxtut/dtxtut.pdf>.
- [360] Scott PAKIN. *The Comprehensive L^AT_EX Symbols List*, September 2005.
<mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/info/symbols/comprehensive/>.
- [361] Scott PAKIN. *The newcommand.py utility*, January 2005. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>.
 Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/support/newcommand/newcommand.pdf>.
- [362] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T_EX/L^AT_EX systems* [online], January 2001. Available from:
<http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>.
<mailto:pbpal@theory.saha.ernet.in>. 44, 210, 472, 478
- [363] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):119–126, 1999.
<mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>.
- [364] Anshuman PANDEY, John SMITH, Dominik WUJASTYK, Zdeněk WAGNER, and Kevin CARMODY. *Devanāgarī for T_EX*, May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>,
<mailto:jds10@cam.ac.uk>, <mailto:d.wujastyk@ucl.ac.uk>,
<mailto:zdenek.wagner@gmail.com> and <mailto:i@kevincarmody.org>, home page:
<http://devnag.sarovar.org/>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/generic/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 44,
 215, 218, 472, 489, 510
- [365] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*.
 Maison-Neuve & Larose, 15 rue Victor-Cousin, 70005 Paris, September 2003. 505,
 507, 508
- [366] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibT_EXing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT_EX users.
 Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 210
- [367] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibT_EX Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibT_EX's
 documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 210
- [368] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK
 Support* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [370].
- [369] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT.
Document Encoding [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [370].
- [370] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile
 Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 587, 588
- [371] Kasper PEETERS. *HyperT_EX FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from:
<http://arxiv.org/hypertext/>. 219, 240

- [372] Manuel PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD. *L'extension xargs*, March 2008. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/xargs/>.
- [373] Manuel PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD. *The xargs package*, March 2008. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/xargs/>.
- [374] Philippe PELLETIER. *Japon: crise d'une modernité*. In *Asie plurielle*. Belin, January 2003.
- [375] Philippe PELLETIER. *Le Japon*. In *Idées reçues*. Le Cavalier Bleu, November 2004.
- [376] Philippe PELLETIER. *Le Japon: géographie, géopolitique et géohistoire*. In *Impulsion*. Sedes, June 2007.
- [377] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>.
- [378] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in Ω* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: <http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 232
- [379] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in Ω* . In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 232
- [380] Yves PLASSERAUD, COLLECTIVE, Cécile MARIN, Yves TERNON, and Henri GIORDAN. *Atlas des minorités en Europe: de l'Atlantique à l'Oural, diversité culturelle*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, May 2005.
- [381] Ariane POISSONNIER, Gérard SOUMIA, and Fabrice LE GOFF. *Atlas mondial de la francophonie*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, March 2006.
- [382] Philippe PONS and Pierre-François SOUYRI. *Le Japon des Japonais*. In *L'autre guide*. Liana Levi, March 2007.
- [383] Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The Linux Thai HOWTO* [online], August 1998. Available from: <http://www.fedu.uec.ac.jp/Zzzthai/Thai-HOWTO>.
<mailto:uecthai@fedu.uec.ac.jp>, <mailto:poon-v@fedu.uec.ac.jp>.
- [384] Hilmar PREUSSE, Christian FAULHAMMER, and Ulrich SCHWARTZ. *What is a minimal working example?*, May 2006. version 0.4.1e. Available from: <http://www.latex-einfuehrung.de/mini-en.pdf>. 57, 222
- [385] Glanville PRICE, editor. *Encyclopedia of the Languages of Europe*. Wiley-Blackwell, May 2005.
- [386] C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN and E. KRISHNAN. *L^AT_EX Tutorial, A Primer*. Indian T_EX Users Group, September 2003. Floor III, SJP Buildings, Cotton Hills, Trivandrum 695014, India. Available from: <http://www.tug.org.in/tutorials.html>.
- [387] Sebastian RAHTZ. *hyperref package options*, September 2006. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/options.pdf>. 88
- [388] Sebastian RAHTZ. *Section name references in L^AT_EX*, May 2007. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/nameref.pdf>.

- [389] Sebastian RAHTZ and LEONOR BARROCA. *A style option for rotated objects in \LaTeX* , September 1997. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/rotating/rotating.dtx>. 236
- [390] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 21, 62, 72, 88, 219, 224, 240, 241, 250, 274, 420
- [391] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in \LaTeX : a manual for hyperref*, September 2006. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 88, 116
- [392] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem \TeX und DANTE, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung \TeX e.V.*, September 2003. Version 72. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>.
- [393] Claude RAIMOND. *L'anglais correct pour les nuls*. In *Pour les Nuls Classic Pratique*. First Editions, August 2007. <mailto:firstinfo@efirst.com>. Available from:
<http://www.efirst.com>.
- [394] S. Robert RAMSEY. *The Languages of China*. Princeton University Press, October 1989.
- [395] Paul RASCOE. *Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection* [online], November 2007. Available from: <http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/>. Mail via:
<http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/email.html>. 471
- [396] Arthur REUTENAUER. *A brief history of \TeX , volume II*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):68–72, February 2008. Available from:
<https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb91reutenauer.pdf>.
- [397] Adrian REZUŞ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian \TeX* , October 1996. <mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 538, 539
- [398] François RICHARDEAU and Olivier BINISTI. *Manuel de typographie et de mise en page (Du papier à l'écran)*. Éditions Retz, second edition, October 2005. Available from:
<http://www.editions-retz.com>.
- [399] Yuri ROBBERS, Markus KOHM, and Rasmus Pank ROULUND. *Replacing \LaTeX 2_ε standard classes by KOMA-Script*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 3, August 2006. <mailto:yuri.robbers@gmail.com>, mailto:rasmus_pank@yahoo.dk and <http://www.komascript.de>. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robbers/robbers.pdf>. 41, 50, 62, 75, 88, 141, 142, 162, 210, 220, 228, 236, 253, 254, 415, 616
- [400] Will ROBERTSON. *Productivity with macros and packages*. *The Prac \TeX Journal*, 2(3), August 2006. <mailto:wspr81@gmail.com>, School of Mechanical Engineering, University of Adelaide, SA, Australia, 5005. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/robertson/robertson.pdf>.

- [401] Christian ROLLAND. *ETEX par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999.
<mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanafoo.fr>.
- [402] Chris A. ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-3/tb64rowl.pdf>.
- [403] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 35, 239
- [404] Thierry SANJUAN, Élisabeth ALLÈS, Jean-Pierre CABESTAN, Yves CITOLEUX, and COLLECTIVE. *Dictionnaire de la Chine contemporaine*. In *Dictionnaire*. Armand Colin, November 2006.
- [405] Thierry SANJUAN and Madeleine BENOÎT-GUYOT. *Atlas de la Chine: les mutations accélérées*. In *Atlas/Monde*. Éditions Autrement, September 2007.
- [406] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec ETEX 2_ε*, June 2001.
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>.
- [407] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005.
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>.
- [408] Petra SCHLAGER and Manfred THIBUD. *Wissenschaftlicht mit ETEX arbeiten*. Pearson Education Deutschland GmbH (Verlag Pearson Studium), Martin-Kollar-Str. 10-12, D-81829 München, Germany, second edition, September 2007.
- [409] Walter SCHMIDT. *Using common PostScript fonts with ETEX*. *PSNFSS Version 9.2*, September 2004. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/psnfss/psnfss2e.pdf>.
- [410] Walter SCHMIDT. *Font selection in LaTeX: The most frequently asked questions*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 2(1), February 2006. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-1/schmidt/schmidt.pdf>.
- [411] Walter SCHMIDT. *Fonts für TEX* [online], June 2007. Available from:
<http://home.vr-web.de/was/fonts.html>.
- [412] Thomas A. SCHMITZ. *Mastering texmf-trees*. *The PracTEX Journal*, 3(1), February 2007. <mailto:thomas.schmitz@uni-bonn.de>,
<http://www.uni-bonn.de/www/Philologie/Personnal/Schmitz.html>, Classics Department, Bonn University. Available from:
<http://tug.org/pracjourn/2007-1/schmitz/schmitz.pdf>.
- [413] Joachim SCHROD. *International ETEX is ready to use*. *TUGboat*, 11(1):87–90, April 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-1/tb27schrod.pdf>.
- [414] Martin SCHRÖDER. *The multitoc package*, June 1999.
<mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx>. 93, 229
- [415] Martin SCHRÖDER. *pdfTEX 1.40: What's new*. *TUGboat*, 29(1):143–145, February 2008. Available from: <https://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-1/tb91schroeder.pdf>.

- [416] Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Lianyi SONG, and Charles GREYER. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006.
- [417] Michael SHELL and David HOADLEY. *BibT_EX Tips and FAQ*, January 2007.
<http://www.michaelshell.org/>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf>. 210
- [418] Bai SHOU[†]. *An outline history of China*. Foreign Language Press, 24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China, revised edition, 2002. <mailto:info@flp.com.cn> and <mailto:sales@flp.com.cn>; distributed by China International Book Trading Corporation. 35 Chegongzuang Xilu, Beijing 100044, China, P.O. Box 399, Beijing, China. Available from: <http://www.flp.com.cn>. 487
- [419] Sindhu SINGH. *Our Introduction to L^AT_EX*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/singh/singh.pdf>.
- [420] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The rotfloat package*, January 2004.
<mailto:rotfloat@sommerfeldt.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/rotfloat/rotfloat.pdf>. 54, 88, 164, 217, 236, 257, 270, 278, 629
- [421] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Customizing captions in floating environments*, December 2007.
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-eng.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277
- [422] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The implementation of the caption package*, December 2007.
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277
- [423] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The (obsolete) caption2 package*, November 2007.
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277
- [424] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, October 2007. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption-deu.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 210, 277
- [425] Pierre-François SOUYRI. *Le monde à l'envers: la dynamique de la société médiévale*. In *Histoire du Japon*. Maisonneuve & Larose, December 1999.
- [426] D. P. STORY. *Using L^AT_EX to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from:
<http://www.math.uakron.edu/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>.
- [427] Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Writing Greek with the greek option of the babel package*.
<http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/babel/usage.tex>, October 1997. 501
- [428] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using L^AT_EX*. Springer, October 2002. Available from:
<http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>.

- [429] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a PDF document using PDF \LaTeX* , July 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/pdfdoc/pdfdoc-a4.pdf>.
- [430] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *\LaTeX for UEA Administrative Work*, September 2004. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/admin/admin_a4.pdf.
- [431] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Using \LaTeX to Write a PhD Thesis*, July 2006. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/thesis/thesis_a4.pdf.
- [432] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating a \LaTeX Minimal Example*, June 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/minexample/minexample.pdf>. 57, 222
- [433] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/>. 79, 88, 217, 256, 420, 629
- [434] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Creating Flow Frames for Posters, Brochures or Magazines using flowfram.sty v 1.07*, March 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/flowfram/doc/>. 79, 88, 217, 256, 420, 629
- [435] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *Writing a Thesis in \LaTeX : hints, tips and advice*, November 2007. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: <http://theoval.sys.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/lms/lms.pdf>.
- [436] Nicola L. C. TALBOT. *\LaTeX for Complete Novices*, January 2008. <mailto:nlct@cmp.uea.ac.uk>, School of Computing Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich. NR4 7TJ, United Kingdom. Available from: http://theoval.cmp.uea.ac.uk/~nlct/latex/novices/novices_a4.pdf.
- [437] Daniel TAUPIN[†]. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 53, 73, 88, 240, 253, 275
- [438] Philip TAYLOR. *Computer Typesetting or Electronic Publishing? New trends in scientific publication*. *TUGboat*, 17(4):367–381, February 1996. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-4/tb53tayl.pdf>.
- [439] Harold THIMBLEBY. “See also” indexing with *Makeindex*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):290–290, June 1991. Also check [440]. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32thim.pdf>. 593

- [440] Harold THIMBLEBY. *Erratum: “See also” indexing with Makeindex. TUGboat*, 13(1):95–95, April 1992. Erratum to [439]. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34thim.pdf>. 592
- [441] Kresten Krab THORUP, Frank JENSEN, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The calc package (Infix notation arithmetic in L^AT_EX)*, August 2005. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/tools/calc.dtx>. 21, 210
- [442] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. <mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/quotchap.pdf>. 53, 75, 88, 235, 254, 276
- [443] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de L^AT_EX 2_ε (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>.
- [444] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to L^AT_EX 2_ε usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>.
- [445] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS⁵². *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers T_EX*, June 2004. French translation of [446] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <ftp://gutenberg.eu.org/pub/gut/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 238, 245
- [446] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A T_EX DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for T_EX Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 238, 245, 593
- [447] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 115, 218
- [448] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 215
- [449] Christian VALANTIN, Florence MORGIENSZTERN, and COLLECTIVE. *OIF*. In *La Francophonie dans le monde 2002–2003*, Paris, July 2003. Organisation Internationale de la Francophonie, Larousse.
- [450] Piet VAN OOSTRUM. *T_EX Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>.
- [451] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec BibT_EX*, 2003. Available from: http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz.

⁵²TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a T_EX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).

- [452] Timothy VAN ZANDT. *Documentation for fancybox.sty: Box tips and tricks for L^AT_EX*, September 2000. <mailto:tvz@Princeton.EDU>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/fancybox/fancybox.pdf>.
- [453] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting (Wuhan, China). 505
- [454] Didier VERNA, Bernd JAEHNE, and Tony ROBERTS. *The minitoc-hyper package*, May 1999. **This package is obsolete, use now the minitoc package [157]**, <mailto:verna@inf.enst.fr>, <mailto:Bernd.Jaehne@aeon.de>, <mailto:aroberts@usq.edu.au>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/>. 62, 224, 250
- [455] Boris VEYTSMAN. *Notes on principles and T_EX implementation*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 2(4), October 2006. <mailto:borisv@lk.net>, Computational Material Science Center, MS 5A2, George Mason University, Fairfax, VA 22030. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-4/veytsman-design/veytsman-design.pdf>.
- [456] Boris VEYTSMAN, Bernd SCHANDL, Lee NETHERTON, and C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN. *nomencl A Package to create a Nomenclature*, September 2005. <http://sarovar.org/projects/nomencl>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/nomencl/nomencl.pdf>. 51, 136, 228, 404
- [457] Carl F. VOGELIN and Florence M. VOGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977.
- [458] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in L^AT_EX*, March 1999. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 205
- [459] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>.
- [460] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T_EX in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
1. Basics.
 2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
 3. Tokens, Macros.
 4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T_EX). 280
- [461] Herbert VOSS. *L^AT_EX in Naturwissenschaften & Mathematik*. Franzis Verlag GmbH, June 2006.
- [462] Douglas WAUD and Tim NULL. *\begin{here}*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 1(1), January 2005. <mailto:douglas.waud@umassmed.edu>, <http://users.umassmed.edu/douglas.waud/>, and <mailto:tim@timnull.com>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2005-1/waud/waud.pdf>.
- [463] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P_ET_EX i pdfP_ET_EX*. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>, May 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/teTeX/tetex-texmfdist/doc/latex/platex/platex.html>. 44, 234, 537

- [464] Daphne WEST and Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006.
- [465] Graham WILLIAMS. *Graham Williams' T_EX Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000. Last version at: <http://mirror.ctan.org/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>.
- [466] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 235, 237
- [467] Peter R. WILSON. *The chngpage package*, August 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/chngpage.sty>. 257, 630
- [468] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 58, 229
- [469] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 44, 64, 71, 78, 88, 115, 129, 227, 228, 238, 416
- [470] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 53, 70, 88, 207, 252, 419
- [471] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 64, 88, 208, 251, 415
- [472] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 50, 88, 96, 100, 104, 144, 226, 228, 238, 251, 415
- [473] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>.
- [474] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 54, 72, 88, 211, 277
- [475] Peter R. WILSON. *Critical editions and arabic typesetting: the ledarab and afoot packages*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledarab.pdf>.
- [476] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>.

- [477] Peter R. WILSON. *ledmac, a presumptuous attempt to port EDMAC, TABMAC and EDSTANZA to L^AT_EX*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledmac.pdf>.
- [478] Peter R. WILSON. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the ledpar package*, April 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledpar.pdf>.
- [479] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 279, 288, 418
- [480] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>. 54, 76, 88, 235, 254, 276
- [481] Peter R. WILSON. *The memoir standard class*. *The PracT_EX Journal*, 3, August 2006. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://tug.org/pracjourn/2006-3/wilson/wilson.pdf>. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 279, 288, 418
- [482] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2007. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 64, 65, 72, 88, 223, 251, 253, 279, 288, 418
- [483] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 219, 279
- [484] Joseph A. WRIGHT. *Quick floats in L^AT_EX*, June 2007. <mailto:joseph.wright@morningstar2.co.uk>. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/trivfloat/trivfloat.pdf>. 54, 88, 164, 239, 257, 270, 278, 629
- [485] C. S. YOGANANDA and K. K. SUBRAMANIAM. *KannadaT_EX* [online], April 2004. Available from: <http://sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex/>. <mailto:yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in>, <mailto:yogacs@users.sarovar.org>, <mailto:subbuk@users.sarovar.org>. 220, 517
- [486] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L^AT_EX Cheat Sheet*, March 2007. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: <http://dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>.
- [487] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV and Vadim MASLOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available from: <http://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/lhcyr/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>, <mailto:vadik@cs.umd.edu>. 544, 545

Changes history

★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
 - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
 - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate `toc-file-name` automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
 - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
 - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
 - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
 - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
 - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyes` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
 - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
 - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
 - At least three passes (3) of \LaTeX are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
 - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).
 - Some mods added to work with `xr` (external references). `xr` version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ version 02

- 1993/07/05
 - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`.

W00092

※ version 03

- 1993/07/09
 - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ version 04

- 1993/07/09
 - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
 - The package mtcoff allows you to use a \LaTeX document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

★ version 05

- 1993/07/13
 - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ version 06

- 1993/07/15
 - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [155] package).

★ version 07

- 1993/07/22
 - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David P. CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

★ version 08

- 1993/07/29
 - Spacing adjustments.

★ version 09

- 1993/08/04
 - Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ version 10

- 1993/08/05
 - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ version 11

- 1993/08/18
 - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ version 12

- 1993/12/16
 - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
 - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
 - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ version 13

- 1993/12/17
 - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ version 14

- 1994/01/03
 - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
 - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
 - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
 - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
 - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ version 15

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

★ version 16

- 1994/02/02
 - Bug fixes (typos).

★ version 17

- 1994/06/23
 - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
 - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).

★ version 18

- 1994/06/26
 - Make minitoc really compatible with $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$.
 - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes L. BRAAMS).

★ version 19

- 1994/08/16
 - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
 - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
 - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
 - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michael RYNNING).
 - Corrected appendix in articles.

★ version 20

- 1994/08/25
 - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
 - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.

- Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
- Corrected vertical spacing.
- Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.

★ version 21

- 1994/09/07
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

★ version 22

- 1994/10/10
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

★ version 23

- 1994/11/08
 - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
 - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
 - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
 - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
 - Removed appendix stuff.

★ version 24

- 1994/12/21
 - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the \LaTeX 2 ϵ release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

★ version 25

- 1996/09/13
 - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

★ version 26

- 1996/11/14
 - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing names of the form `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
 - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

★ version 27

- 1996/12/20
 - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
 - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
 - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
 - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

★ version 28

- 1997/10/29
 - Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
 - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
 - Added the `shorttext` package option.
 - Added *coffee* stuff.
 - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
 - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
 - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU:

$$\{\let@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline\}\}$$
 should probably be

$$\{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline\}\}$$
 (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
 - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
 - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.

★ version 29

- 1999/03/16
 - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
- 1999/06/28
 - Added the armenian language (from `ArmTeX` [142]).
- 1999/07/23
 - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
- 1999/07/29
 - Added `lithuanian.mld`.

★ version 30

- 1999/12/06
 - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
 - Corrected a bug in `\sltnam` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).

★ version 31

- 2000/04/04
 - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.

★ version 32

- 2000/08/08
 - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
 - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
 - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
 - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
 - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
 - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
 - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

I0046

★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
 - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
 - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
 - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
 - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
 - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
 - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
 - Added the `interlingua` language.

★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
 - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
 - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
 - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19
 - Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
 - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
 - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
 - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.

※ version 37

- 2003/01/24
 - Version #37 dropped.

★ version 38

- 2003/01/24
 - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
 - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L^AT_EX).
 - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
 - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
 - Changed the test for empty titles.
 - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
 - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
 - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
 - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
 - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).

- Corrected secttocs, at least.
- 2003/03/18
 - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.

★ version 39

- 2003/04/09
 - Modern font commands for compatibility with the memoir class.
 - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and memoir class.
- 2003/06/08
 - Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the notoccite package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the notoccite package option (loads the notoccite package).
- 2004/09/08
 - Added language options and .mld files for dialects: canadian (english), acadian, acadien, canadien (french), naustrian, ngerman (ngermanb).
 - Added comments in .mld files using special fonts.
 - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
 - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
 - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
 - Removed the test on the presence of the multicol package in `minitoc.tex`, because multicol is a required package.
 - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
 - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
 - Added a paragraph about a problem with the appendix package.
- 2004/12/13
 - Updated `minitoc-fr.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
 - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
 - Added `minitoc-fr.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
 - Corrections in documentation.
 - Message added if some sectioning commands are not available.
 - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
 - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
 - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11
 - $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
 - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
 - Added `\mtcsetttitle`.
 - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
 - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
 - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
 - Added a hint about using short extensions with more that 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
 - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
 - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
 - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
 - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03

- Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
 - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
 - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
 - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
 - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
 - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ version 42

- 2005/02/14
 - Version 42 not released.
 - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
 - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
 - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ version 43

- 2005/02/21
 - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
 - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
 - Fixed a bug in `mtcoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
 - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
 - Moved history to the end of package code.
 - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
 - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
 - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

- 2005/03/08
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
 - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
 - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
 - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
 - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
 - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
 - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/18
 - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
 - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
 - Added a hint for the abstract package.
- 2005/04/07
 - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
 - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
 - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
 - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
 - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
 - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
 - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
 - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
 - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26

- Fixed rules in parttocs, partlofs and partlots.
- 2005/05/30
 - Fixed chapter-level entries in parttocs, when page numbers must be removed.
 - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
 - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
 - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
 - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
 - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
 - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
 - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
 - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06
 - Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
 - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
 - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
 - Added `minitoc-fr.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
 - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
 - The file `minitoc-fr.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
 - Added “OUT”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
 - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
 - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
 - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29

- Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
 - Added `castillian.mld`.
 - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
 - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
 - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
 - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
 - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
 - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21
 - Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
 - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
 - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
 - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
 - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitocs`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
 - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending on the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
 - The memoir class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
 - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
 - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
 - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
 - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.

- Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
- Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
 - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
 - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
 - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
 - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
 - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
 - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
 - Added a note about the `rubber` tool.
- 2005/09/15
 - Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
 - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
 - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
 - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
 - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
 - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
 - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
 - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
 - Corrected typos.
 - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
 - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
 - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.

- Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.
- 2005/10/04
 - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
 - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
 - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
 - Added the french L^AT_EX Companion [332].
- 2005/11/09
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
 - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
 - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.

- 2005/11/16
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
 - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Reordering a long sequence of citations.

- Added “mailto:” in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
 - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
 - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
 - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
 - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.
- 2005/12/08
 - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
 - Corrections of french quotes.
 - Added some PDF options.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected an URL to the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
 - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
 - Correction of typos.
 - Added some labels.
 - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
 - The documentation needs 4 \LaTeX runs.
- 2005/12/22
 - Made some messages shorter.
 - Corrections in the list of messages.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
 - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
 - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04

- Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
 - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
 - Added “*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected the bibliography entry about BangTeX.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Used the `afterpage` package [15] in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the bahasam language.
 - Added the albanian language.
 - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
 - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
 - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
 - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
 - Renamed the bahasa language as `bahasai`; bahasa is synonym of `bahasai`.
 - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of `bahasam`.
 - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of `bahasai`.
- 2006/01/12
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgements.
 - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
 - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
 - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
 - Added `magyar3.mld`.
 - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.

- 2006/01/16
 - Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
 - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
 - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
 - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
 - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23
 - Corrected the table about default titles.
 - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
 - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
 - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
 - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [343, 344, 399], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
 - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
 - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
 - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02

- Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added package `dblacont` [328] for the “The pdfTeX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN); je l’ai aussi utilisé pour composer d’autres mots vietnamiens.
- 2006/02/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13
 - Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
 - Added `kannada.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
 - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
 - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgments.
- 2006/02/17
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
 - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
 - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8.ml[d|o]` and `hanja-u8.ml[d|o]`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22

- Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
 - Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
 - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `polski.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
 - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.
- 2006/03/02
 - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [196].
- 2006/03/06
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
 - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
 - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
 - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
 - The messages are now numbered.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20

W0029

W0025

- Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
 - Added FAQ 37 about .mld files and babel.
 - Added french1.mld and french2.mld.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
 - Added english1.mld and english2.mld.

★ version 45

- 2006/03/31
 - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.
 - Added arab2.mld, bicig3.mld, buryat2.mld, xalx2.mld, and xalx3.mld.
- 2006/04/03
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
 - Added swedish2.mld.
 - The `insection` package option loads also the `flatter` package.
- 2006/04/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
 - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
 - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12

- Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13
 - In the `insection` package option, load the `flatter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
 - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
 - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - Added comments about the `insection` option.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
 - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
 - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03
 - Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
 - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0086
 - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0087
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0088
 - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0089
 - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`). W0090
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
 - Update the bibliography.

- Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- Corrections in the documentation.
- Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
 - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
 - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
 - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/08
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.

★ version 46

- 2006/06/09
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
- 2006/06/21
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
- 2006/06/22
 - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
 - Added chapter “Example files”.
- 2006/06/23
 - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
 - Use the `lipsum` package [212] in some of the examples of documents.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/06/27

- Update the examples of documents.
 - Added the `second.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/29
 - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
- 2006/06/30
 - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/03
 - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
 - Corrections about the depth of minilofs, minilots and siblings.
- 2006/07/04
 - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
- 2006/07/07
 - Corrections of typos.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
 - Correction in `french2.mld`.
- 2006/07/10
 - Correction in minilots and minilofs (and siblings) about depth.
 - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
 - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
 - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
 - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
 - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
 - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
 - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc0` in the list of files.
 - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
 - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.

★ version 47

- 2006/07/26
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
 - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Arabi` system [243]).
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
 - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
 - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
 - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.
 - Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
 - Minor correction in warning message `F0008`.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).

★ version 48

- 2006/08/04
 - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
 - Update the bibliography.
 - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
 - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
 - Increasing `\textwidth`.
 - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
 - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
 - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
 - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).

- 2006/08/28
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
 - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
 - Update the bibliography.
 - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
 - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
 - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
 - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
 - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
 - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
 - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
 - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
 - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
 - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
 - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
 - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
 - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
 - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
 - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
 - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
 - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
 - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
 - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.

E0036

- Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
- Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
- Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
- Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
- Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsf.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
 - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
 - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
 - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
 - Added a figure about systems derived from \TeX and \LaTeX .
- 2006/09/13
 - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
 - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
 - Simplifications in the scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
 - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Fixed typos.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
 - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
 - Improving some tables.
 - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.

- Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
 - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with minitoc.
 - Added a hint about the hangcaption package (must be loaded *before* minitoc).
- 2006/11/06
 - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
 - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the .mld and .mlo files.
 - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the english.mld file.
- 2006/11/13
 - The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

W0092

E0036

★ version 50

- 2006/11/17
 - Removed old examples of documents: mtc-adds.tex, mtc-amem.tex, mtc-book.tex, mtc-gaps.tex, mtc-mem1.tex, mtc-subf.tex, and mtc-tsfc.tex.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the tmk script and a table describing a TDS structure for minitoc.
 - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
 - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
 - Added the warning message W0094 with the list of the missing minitoc languages files (.mld and .mlo).
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Updated the INSTALL file and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the file minitoc.tds.zip (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

★ version 51

- 2006/12/18
 - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.

- 2006/12/20
 - Improving the index: names.
 - Updated some `.mld` files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
 - Miscellaneous corrections.
 - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
 - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
 - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
 - Indexing the files.
 - Renamed the file “catalog” into “CATALOG”.
 - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
 - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

★ version 52

- 2007/01/11
 - Correction of index ordering.
 - Default option in boldface in the index.
 - Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
 - Added fake sections in the “Examples of documents” chapter.
 - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
 - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
 - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
 - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
 - Corrected the name `Thế Thành HÀN` (first name before last name, the english way).
 - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
 - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
 - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
 - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
 - Trying to use a recent version of the `cite [16]` package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with `hyperref`.
- 2007/01/26
 - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29

- Correction of the indexing of the environments.
- 2007/01/31
 - Improving the index layout.
 - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
 - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
 - Indexing the names of authors.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
 - Updated the acknowledgements.

★ version 53

- 2007/02/13
 - Added the example file `mtc-fko.tex`.
 - Corrected `\kernafterminitoc` and `siblings`.
- 2007/02/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Bibliographic references for packages and classes in the index.
- 2007/03/02
 - Added a header to the index, to explain notations.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Changed the style of page and line numbers in the index.
 - Updated `kannada.mld`.
 - Dangerous bend symbols are now in the right margin.
- 2007/03/06
 - Improved the presentation of example files.
 - Using the `natbib` package [145, 146] to sort the sequences of citations.
- 2007/03/09
 - Correction in table 7.5 on page 247.
 - Renamed `minitoc-texmf.zip` into `minitoc-tds.zip`.
- 2007/03/19
 - Use the `sort&compress` option of the `natbib` package [145, 146] to compress the sequences of citations; the `hypernat` package must also be loaded (after `natbib` and `hyperref`).
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/03/22
 - Added changing the title of the `parttoc` for appendices in `mtc-apx.tex`.

★ version 54

- 2007/03/27
 - Added the “open” and “close” features.
 - Indexing the features.
 - Added the `mtc-ocf.tex` example file.
- 2007/04/06
 - Added the “`\mtcfixnomenclature`” command.
 - Added the `mtc-nom.tex` example file.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrected the last argument of `\mtcsetfeature` and siblings, using `\mtc@toks`.
 - Some mini-tables are set on two columns in the manual.
 - Indexing the messages. Messages noted in the right margin.
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Added `latinc.mld` and `latinc2.mld` for classical latin.
- 2007/04/12
 - Added internal hyperlinks for messages.
 - Load the `hypcap` package for hyperlinks in the documentation.
- 2007/06/06
 - Added `\mtcoffset` and `co.` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table.
 - Added `\mtcsetoffset` for an horizontal offset of a mini-table type.
 - Added the `mtc-ofs.tex` example file.
 - Added flagging of macros in example files.
 - The 2007 section in the “Postface” chapter was garbled.
 - More internal links in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a clickable table of all messages.
 - Improved column breaks in the index.
 - Added a local minitoc in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added `lithuanian2.mld`.
 - Added `latvian2.mld` and `letton2.mld`.
 - Grouped `.mld/.mlo` pairs in tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244.

★ version 55

- 2007/06/12
 - Added a hint (warning W0097) about the `flowfram` [433, 434] package (incompatible). W0097
 - Added a *hint* (I0053) about the `float` [302], `floatrow` [285], `trivfloat` [484], and `rotfloat` [420] packages. I0053
- 2007/06/22
 - Regrouping some marginal notes about messages; improving their positions.
 - Improve page breaks in the documentation.

- Updated the bibliography.
- Corrected a bug about minitocs in appendices for the memoir class.
- 2007/06/29
 - Changed the color of hyperlinks.
 - Revised the format of the headers.
 - Corrected some `\mtcset...` commands to use `\edef` to correctly evaluate `\mtc@toks`.

★ version 56

- 2007/07/02
 - Added `swahili.mld`.
- 2007/08/03
 - Page headers modified in documentation.
 - Added stuff (files) for figures (maps) for many language areas.
 - Removed the `.eps` files.
 - Added the `bengali` language synonym of `bangla`.
 - Split the list of files into two tables (tables 7.1 to 7.2 on pages 243–244).
- 2007/12/04
 - Many minor typo fixes.
 - Darker colors for hyperlinks.
 - Updated and corrected the bibliography.
 - Corrected a typo in the `ptc@verse` environment (thanks to François PÉTIARD).
 - Corrections of typos in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments (thanks to Andrew BOWDEN).
 - Replaced the `.mtc1` extension by `.mtc0` in the auto-configuration test (to avoid erasing the `(\jobname.mtc1)` file).
 - Corrected a problem with `\nofiles` (Andreas DEININGER).
 - The acknowledgements are moved to the “Complements” part.
 - Added a hint (warning W0099) about the `titlesec` [46] package.
 - Complete indexing of the messages.
 - Updated `lithuanian2.mld`.
 - Using the `chnpage` package [467] to increase the width of the pages of the bibliography.
 - Renamed `\if@longextensions@` as `\if@mtc@longext@`.
 - Updated `czech.mld`.
 - Removed `\l@xsection`.
 - Graphic files are indexed separately.
 - Updated `galician.mld`.
 - Added a specific directory for image files in the TDS hierarchy.
 - Updated `lsorbian.mld`, `ukraineb.mld`, and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `malayalam-b.mld`, `malayalam-keli2.mld`, `malayalam-mr.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana3.mld`.
 - Updated `malayalam-omega.mlo`.

- Suppressed parasite entries from the index.

★ version 57

- 2007/12/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/12/18
 - Corrections in examples of documents.
 - Added occitan.mld.
 - Updated croatian.mld, danish.mld, dutch.mld, galician.mld, germanb2.mld, greek.mld, icelandic.mld, interlingua.mld, polish.mld, scottish.mld, and turkish.mld.
- 2008/01/15
 - Corrected polski.mld.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added table 6.10 on page 231.
 - Added maps of Manchuria.
- 2008/04/03
 - Better captions for maps. Added maps for Italy, Karnataka, Germany, Mongols and China.
 - Added occitan2.mld and mexican.mld.
 - Added a map of czech dialects.
 - Added maps of danish dialects.
 - Added a map of the dutch language.
 - Added a map of french dialects.
 - Added a map of galician dialects.
 - Added maps of german dialects.
 - Added maps of hindi dialects.
 - Added maps of portugese dialects.
 - Added a map of the turkish language.
 - Added a map of the vietnamese language.
 - Added a map of the armenian diaspora.
 - Added a map of the sami dialects.
 - Added a map of the nationalities in ex-Yugoslavia.
 - Added a map of countries where spanish is an official language.
 - Added a map of the sorbian area.
 - Added an entry for the Wikipedia in the jargon.
 - Added a map of the minorities in Poland.
 - Added a map of the bengali diaspora.
 - Split the TDS hierarchy into three tables 7.3 to 7.5 on pages 244–247.
 - Added maps of the basque dialects.
 - Added maps of the latvian dialects.
 - Added a map for the swahili language.
 - Added the turkish alphabet.

- The page numbers in the index are now hyperlinks (thanks to François PÉTIARD).
- Colors added in figure [1.1 on page 31](#).
- Added maps of the languages in Europe.
- Added maps of Kosovo.
- Added a map of the languages in Africa.
- Corrected an error of message number.
- Added maps for Russia.
- Added a map of the districts of Slovakia.
- Added maps about Islam.
- Added a figure about hànzì characters.
- Added a figure about chinese characters usage in the world.
- Added a figure about chinese dialects.
- Added maps about writing systems.
- Added a map of the regions where Finnish is spoken.
- Shortened the “Installation” chapter.
- Updated from the babel package version v3.8j of 2008/03/16.
- Files `lamed.pdf` and `lamed.tex` replaced by `lamed3.png`.
- Added maps of the indigenous languages of México.

★ version 58

- 2008/06/26
 - Renamed `minitoc-tds.zip` into `minitoc.tds.zip`.
 - Added a simplified linguistic map of Europe.
 - Added a map of polish dialects.
 - Added a figure about the russian alphabet.
 - Added a map about the russian alphabet.
 - Added a figure about the serbian alphabets.
 - Added a map of the provinces of Vietnam.
 - Used `\vrefrange` to compress ranges of internal cross-references.
 - Added a map of albanian dialects.
 - Added a map of Norway.
 - Added flags for many countries. Added a light gray frame around the flags.
 - Added a figure about lusophonia.
 - Added a figure about germanophonia.
 - Added a figure about hispanophonia.
 - Added a figure about italophonia.
 - Added a minitoc in the index to make it easier to consult.
 - Added figures about francophones countries.
 - Added a figure about swahili-speaking countries.
 - Added a figure about arabic-speaking countries.
 - Added a figure about russian-speaking countries.
 - Added a figure about english-speaking countries.

- Added flags `\ifinparttoc`, `\ifinpartlof`, `\ifinpartlot`. `\ifinminitoc`, `\ifinminilof`, `\ifinminilot`, `\ifinsecttoc`, `\ifinsectlof`, and `\ifinsectlot`.
- Added example document `mtc-vti.tex`, section 4.36 on page 148.
- Added a figure about dutch-speaking countries.
- Renamed `fminitoc.dtx` and consorts as `minitoc-fr.dtx` and consorts.

※ **version 59**: corrupted PDF files.

★ **version 60**

- 2008/07/16
 - Minor correction in figure.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added missing flag files (thanks to Morten HØGHOLM).
 - Replaced many `.pdf` image files (most of them are flag files) by the original `.png` file because they were corrupted during the conversion by ImageMagick (xpdf didnt see the problem but Acrobat Reader refuses to show the file); many thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK and Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ.
 - Back to standard colors and default hyperref color options.

★ **version 61**

- 2015/07/13
 - Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert passed away in 2009. So this package is now looking for a maintainer.
 - Reduce size of documentation, by eliminating flags and other images, from 25+mb to less than 2mb.
 - Remove the CATALOG file, as it was redundant and stale.
 - Use mirror.ctan.org for CTAN references.
 - Done by Nils Ole Tippenhauer (`nils_tippenhauer` at `sutd.edu.sg`) and Karl Berry (`karl` at `freefriends.org`). They are not prospective future maintainers.
 - No functional changes.

★ **version 62**

- 2018/07/12
 - sources moved to githib <https://github.com/minitoc/minitoc>
 - Correction to `\@ifundefined` usage that generates errors in current latex (and didn't work previously)
 - Repository set up by David carlisle but permanent maintainers still required

Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples⁵³, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups⁵⁴, and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Stéphane AICARDI, Vartan AKOPIAN, A.J. ALEX, Élisabeth ALLÈS, Mark ALFORD, Viviane ALLETON, Jacques ANDRÉ, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Walter APPEL, Achod André ARADIAN, Patrick ANDRIES, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Jouko ARPONEN, Donald ARSENEAU, Helmer ASLASKEN, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN, Philipp BACHMANN, Gonçal BADENES, Guillaume BALAVOINE, Jason BALDRIDGE, Marin BALGARENSKY, Leonor BARROCA, Giancarlo BASSI, Pierre BASSO, Dorjgotov BATMUNKH, Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI, Beebe NELSON H. F., Emmanuel BEFFARA, Benoît BELET, Rachid BELMOUHOUB, Madeleine BENOÎT-GUYOT, József BÉRCES, Alexander BERDNIKOV, Jens BERGER, Tobias BERNDT, Karl BERRY, Berhanu BEYENE, Javier BEZOS, Giuseppe BILOTTA, Olivier BINISTI, Árpád BÍRÓ, Justin K. BISANWA, Denis BITOUZÉ, Dr. Barbara BLANKENSHIP, Laurent BLOCH, Aurélie BOISSIÈRE, Patrick BOMAN, Onofre BONVILA, Georgi N. BOSHPANOV, Patrice BOUGETTE, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Andrew BOWDEN, Victor BOYKO, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN, Jim BREEN, Peter BREITENLOHNER, Roland BRETON, Catherine BRICOUT, William BRIGHT, Gyöngyi BUJDOSÓ, Mimi BURBANK, Mustafa BURC, Patrick BURGEL, Alexey BURYKIN, Jean-Pierre CABESTAN, Philippe CADÈNE, Olivier CARDI, Samuele CARCAGNO, David CARELLA, David P. CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, Waldemar CELES, Raymond CHABBERT[†], Winston CHANG, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Pascal CHAUVET, Pehong CHEN, Céline CHEVALIER, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Otfried CHEONG, Jin-Hwan CHO, Pai H. CHOU, Pierre CHUVIN, Yves CITOLEUX, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, Bernard COMRIE, David B. COOK, Emmanuel CORNET, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Olivier DABÈNE, Sergueï DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Peter T. DANIELS, Holger DANIELSSON, Alice DAVISON, Luiz Henrique DE FIGUEIRO, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Andreas DEININGER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Bernard DESGRAUPES, Cécile DESPRAIRES, Sébastien DESREUX, Christine DETIG, Antoni R. DILLER, Gérard DOREL, Dorjpalam DORJ, Ivars DRIKIS, Matthew S. DRYER, Denys DUCHIER, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ĒHAJA, Ta Quang DUNG, Patrick EGAN, Victor EIJKHOUT, Brian ELMEGAARD, Danie ELS, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Gilhooly ETIENNE, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN,

⁵³ And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

⁵⁴ Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or in english).

Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Christian FAULHAMMER, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Michael J. FERGUSON,
 Jeff FESSLER, Ulrike FISCHER, Joshua-A. FISHMAN, Jean-Julien FLECK, Daniel FLIPO,
 Peter L. FLOM, Peter FLYNN, Jim FOX, Louis FRÉDÉRIC, Danny M. FÜRNISS, Tetsuo FURUKAWA,
 Federico GARCIA, Diego GARCÍA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Bernard GAULLE[†],
 Maarten GELDERMAN, Chuck GENSCHTE, Jacques GERNET, Mohammad GHODSI,
 Helen GILHOOLY, Henri GIORDAN Aleksas Stanislovas GIRDENIS, François GIRON,
 Markus GLEISZNER, Josiane GONTHIER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS,
 Raymond G. GORDON, Jr., Mathieu GOUTELLE, Bruce K. GRANT, Fraser GRANT,
 George GRÄTZER, Norman GRAY, George D. GREENWADE, Enrico GREGORIO, Loïc GRENON,
 Charles GRETHER, Barbara F. GRIMES, Olga A. GRINEVA, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD,
 Marion GUNN, Guntermann KLAUS, Eitan M. GURARI, Thomas HAFNER, Hans HAGEN,
 Reinhard F. HAHN, Boumediene HAMZI, Thế Thành HÀN, Thorsten HANSEN, Patrick HAPPEL,
 Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Kathryn A. HARGREAVES, Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS,
 Michael A. HARRISON, Stephen HARTKE, Danny HEAP, Jim HEFFERON, André HEIDER,
 Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Håvard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Hartmut HENKEL,
 Thomas HENLICH, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Jörg HESOLL,
 Pr. Thomas J. HINNENBUSH, David HOADLEY, Taco HOEKWATER, Alan HOENIG, Joe HOGG,
 Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Klaus HÖPPNER, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK,
 Yufan HU, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, Dave W. HUSEBY, Helene HYNA, Roberto IERUSALIMSKY,
 Hiroya IKEDA, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Victor IVRII, Tetsuo IWAKUMA,
 Zumbeltz IZAOLA AZKONA, Youssef JABRI, Paweł JACKOWSKI, Roland JACQUES,
 Christophe JACQUET, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Frank JENSEN,
 Alan JEFFREY, Regnor JERNsLETTEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES,
 Christophe JORSSSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Jean-Joseph JULAUD, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY,
 Akira KAKUTO, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP,
 Ronan KERYELL, Jonathan KEW, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG,
 Rune KLEVELAND, Ingo KLÖCKL, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald E. KNUTH, Markus KOHM,
 Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOVIAK, Kai KRATT,
 Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Siep KROONENBERG, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Manfred KUDLEK,
 Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Olaf KUMMER, Frank KÜSTER,
 Stéphane LABORDE, Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI,
 Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES,
 Andris LASIS, Christian LAUCOU, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY,
 Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Olivier LECARME, Jacques LECLERC, Iksop LEE,
 Fabrice LE GOFF, Jeanne LEGRAND, Philipp LEHMAN, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT,
 Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, René LÉTOILE, Adam LEWENBERG,
 Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Bernice Sacks LIPKIN, Pierre LOBEL,
 Miloš V. LOKAJČEK, Stoffel LOMBARD, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE,
 Vincent LOZANO, Daniel H. LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Jean-François MACÉ,
 Pierre A. MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Pierre MALECKI,
 Pascal MARCHAND, Bob MARGOLIS, Cécile MARIN, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR,
 Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Alan MARSHALL, Terry MART, Éric MARTINI, Vadim MASLOV,
 Henri MASSIAS, Stephen MATTHEWS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Krystyna MAZOYER,
 Rowland McDONNELL, Ben MCKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN,
 Jochen METZINGER, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBAACH, Young Joon MOON, Ross MOORE,
 Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Florence MORGIEŃSZTERN, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON,
 Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Andrei NACU,
 NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC SOCIETY, NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF THE KOREAN, Sergei O. NAUMOV,
 Lee NETHERTON, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Elke NIEDERMAIR,
 Michael NIEDERMAIR, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Tim NULL, Heiko OBERDIEK,

Tobias OETIKER, Haruhito OKAMURA, Mariusz OLKO, Tanguy ORTOLO, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Minje Byeng-sen PARK, Hubert PARTL, Oren PATASHNIK, Jonathan PECHTA, Kasper PEETERS, Manuel PÉGOURIÉ-GONNARD, Matthias PELGER, Philippe PELLETIER, François PÉTIARD, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Sébastien PEYROUSE, Paul PICHAUREAU, Éric PICHERAL, Bruno PIGUET, Karel PŠKA, John PLAICE, Yves PLASSEREAU, Ariane POISSONNIER, Maria POLINSKY, Philippe PONS, Monique PONTAULT, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Fabrice POPINEAU, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hilmar PREUSSE, Glanville PRICE, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Claude RAIMOND, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, S. Robert RAMSEY, Paul RASCOE, Keranen REINO, Arthur REUTENAUER, Adrian REZUŞ, Alexandre DE RHODES[†], François RICHAUDEAU, Luis RIVERA, Yuri ROBBERS, A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS, Will ROBERTSON, Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Rasmus Pank ROULUND, Chris A. ROWLEY, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michael RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Larry SANGER, Morgan SANGEUX, Thierry SANJUAN, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, Bernd SCHANDL, Elisabeth SCHLEGL, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Walter SCHMIDT, Thomas A. SCHMITZ, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Rainer SCHÖPF, Joachim SCHROD, Martin SCHRÖDER, Ulrich SCHWARTZ, Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Michael SHELL, JUNGSHIK Shin, Bai SHOUYI[†], Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Sindhu SINGH, Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Petra SCHLAGER, Kristian SLIMAK, Janković SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Nick SOFRONIOU, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Lianyi SONG, Yves SOULET, Gérard SOURNIA, Pierre-François SOUYRI, Arjen STEINER, D. P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, K. K. SUBRAMANIAM, Cyrille SUSS, Robert S. SUTOR, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Raffaella TABACCO, Nicola L. C. TALBOT, Daniel TAUPIN[†], Philip TAYLOR, Michel TÉTU, Yves TERNON, Manfred THIBUD, Christina THIELE, Harold THIMBLEBY, Kresten Krab THORUP, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Josef TKADLEC, Ton 'T LAM, Sigita TOLUŠIS, Cezare TOMCZAK, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Hideo UMEKI, Un KOAUNGHI, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Christian VALANTIN, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Timothy VAN ZANDT, Vincent VAQUIN, Suki K. VENKATESAN, Didier VERNÉ, Sylvain VESCO, Boris VEYTSMAN, Alexandre VIAL, Carl F. VOEGELIN, Florence M. VOEGELIN, Martin VOGEL, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, David WALDEN, Jimmy WALES, Nigel WARD, John WARNOCK, Douglas WAUD Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Daphne WEST, Ferenc WETTL, Graham WILLIAMS, Peter R. WILSON, Jeroen WIJNHOUT, Alexandre WOLF, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Mark WOODING, Joseph A. WRIGHT, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C. S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Ludwig Lejzer ZAMENHOF[†], Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŹELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Federico ZENITH, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.